

PROJECT MANUAL  
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

**El Monte High School  
HVAC Project**  
El Monte High School

El Monte, California

El Monte Union High School District

El Monte, CA 91731

DSA Submittal

Prepared by



**DLR Group**

Architecture  
Engineering  
Planning  
Interiors

1650 Spruce Street, Suite 300  
Riverside California 92507  
T: 951.682.0457

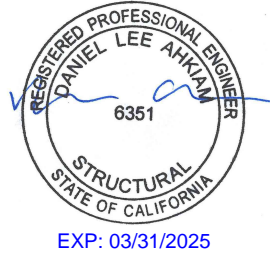
DLR Group Project No. 75-22201-01

**NOTICE:** These documents are instruments of professional service, and information contained therein is incomplete unless used in conjunction with DLR Group's interpretations, decisions, observations and administrations. Use or reproduction of these documents in whole or in part without DLR Group's consent is in violation of common law, copyrights, statutory and other reserved rights, which preempts state and local public records act.

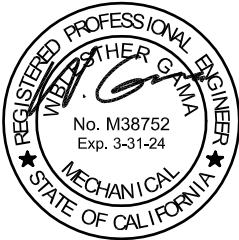
**Architect**



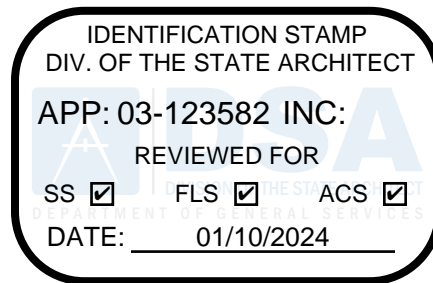
**Structural**



**Mechanical / Plumbing**



**Electrical**



## **DIVISION 00 – TABLE OF CONTENTS**

00 01 01	El Monte High School Spec Cover
00 01 02	Professional Signatures
00 01 10	Table of Contents

## **DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

01 10 00	Summary
01 25 00	Substitution Procedures
01 26 00	Contract Modification procedures
01 29 00	Payment Procedures
01 31 00	Project Management and Coordination
01 32 00	Construction Progress Documentation
01 33 00	Submittal Procedures
01 40 00	Quality Requirements
01 41 00	Testing and Inspection
01 42 00	References
01 45 29	Testing Lab Services
01 50 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 60 00	Product Requirements
01 73 00	Execution
01 74 19	Construction Waste Management and Disposal
01 77 00	Closeout Procedures
01 78 23	Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 39	Project Record Documents
01 79 00	Demonstration and Training
01 91 13	General Commissioning Requirements

## **DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS**

02 41 19	Selective Demolition
----------	----------------------

## **DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE**

03 10 00	Concrete Forming and Accessories
03 20 00	Concrete Reinforcing
03 30 00	Cast-in-Place Concrete

## **DIVISION 04 – MASONRY – NOT USED**

## **DIVISION 05 – METALS**

05 12 00	Structural Steel Framing
05 50 00	Metal Fabrications

## **DIVISION 06 – WOODS, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES**

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

00 01 10 - 1

06 10 00      Rough Carpentry  
06 16 00      Sheathing

#### **DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

07 01 50.19      Preparation for Re-Roofing  
07 01 50.61      Roof Coating for Restoring Aged Metal Roofing Systems  
07 13 26      Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing  
07 21 00      Thermal Insulation  
07 25 00      Weather Barriers  
07 54 30      Adhered Thermoplastic (PVC) Feltback Membrane Roofing  
07 62 00      Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim  
07 72 00      Roof Accessories  
07 84 13      Penetration Firestopping  
07 92 00      Joint Sealants

#### **DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS**

08 31 13      Access Doors and Frames  
08 71 00      Door Hardware  
08 91 19      Fixed Louvers

#### **DIVISION 09 – FINISHES**

09 24 00      Cement Plastering  
09 29 00      Gypsum Board  
09 30 13      Ceramic Tiling  
09 51 13      Acoustical Panel Ceilings  
09 91 13      Exterior Painting  
09 91 23      Interior Painting

#### **DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES**

10 21 13.19      Plastic Toilet Compartments  
10 28 00      Restroom Accessories

#### **DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT – NOT USED**

#### **DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS – NOT USED**

#### **DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING**

22 00 00      Common Work Results For Plumbing  
22 05 23      General-Duty Valves For Plumbing Piping  
22 05 29      Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment

22 05 48	Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment
22 05 53	Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment
22 11 16	Domestic Water Piping
22 11 19	Domestic Water Piping Specialties
22 11 23	Facility Natural Gas Piping
22 13 16	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
22 13 19	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
22 14 13	Facility Storm Drainage Piping
22 14 23	Storm Drainage Piping Specialties

## **DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

23 05 00	Common Work Results For HVAC
23 05 13	Common Motor Requirements For HVAC Equipment
23 05 29	Hangers And Supports For HVAC Piping And Equipment
23 05 48	Vibration And Seismic Controls For HVAC Piping And Equipment
23 05 53	Identification For HVAC Piping And Equipment
23 05 93	Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing For HVAC
23 07 13	Duct Insulation
23 09 00	Building Management And Control Systems
23 31 13	Metal Ducts
23 33 00	Air Duct Accessories
23 34 23	HVAC Power Ventilators
23 37 13	Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles
23 41 00	Particulate Air Filtration
23 81 19	Rooftop Air Conditioners
23 81 27	Variable Flow Split-System Heat Pump, Branch Controller & Fan Coil Units

## **DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL**

26 01 00	Basic Electrical Requirements
26 01 11	Conduit
26 01 30	Boxes
26 01 60	Cabinets And Enclosures
26 04 40	Disconnect Switches
26 05 00	Common Work Results For Electrical
26 05 19	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables
26 05 26	Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems
26 05 29	Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems
26 05 32	Identification For Electrical Systems
26 05 48	Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems
26 24 16	Panelboards
26 27 26	Wiring Devices
26 28 13	Fuses
26 51 00	Interior Lighting

## **DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS – NOT USED**

## **DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

28 31 00          Voice Evacuation Fire Detection And Alarm

**DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK**

31 10 00          Site Clearing  
31 22 00          Grading  
31 23 33          Trenching and Backfill

**DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

32 13 13          Concrete Paving

**DIVISION 33 – SITE UTILITIES – NOT USED**

**END TABLE OF CONTENTS**

## SECTION 01 10 00 - SUMMARY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Project information.
- 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
- 3. Phased construction.
- 4. Owner-furnished products.
- 5. Contractor-furnished, Owner-installed products.
- 6. Access to site.
- 7. Work restrictions.
- 8. Specification and Drawing conventions.
- 9. Miscellaneous provisions.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

#### 1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: El Monte High School HVAC Project

- 1. Project Location: 3048 Tyler Avenue, El Monte, CA 91731.

- B. Owner: El Monte Union High School District.

- C. Architect: DLR Group.

- D. Architect's Consultants: Architect has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:

- 1. Fire Alarm: DCGA Engineers
- 2. Electrical Engineer: DCGA Engineers
- 3. Structural Engineer: DLR Group
- 4. Mechanical / Plumbing Engineer: DCGA Engineers

#### 1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents.
- B. Type of Contract:
  - 1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compliance to Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1. California Building Standards Code (California Code of Regulations, - Title 24), Parts 1-6 and 9.
  - 2. Copies of Title 24. Parts 1-5 shall be kept available on-site during construction.
  - 3. When conflicts or inconsistencies exist between the specifications and the drawings including the general notes, the more stringent requirements shall take precedence.
  - 4. All Addenda must be signed by the Architect and approved by DSA (Section 4-338. Part1).
  - 5. All substitutions affecting DSA regulated items shall be considered a Construction Change Document (CCD) or Addenda and shall be approved by DSA prior to fabrication and installation. (IR A-6 and Section 4-338(c), Part 1).

#### 1.6 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

- A. Owner will furnish products indicated. The Work includes receiving, unloading, handling, storing, protecting, and installing Owner-furnished products and making building services connections.
- B. Owner-Furnished Products:
  - 1. As indicated on drawings.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR-FURNISHED, OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Contractor shall furnish products indicated. The Work includes unloading, handling, storing, and protecting Contractor-furnished products as directed and turning them over to Owner at Project closeout.
- B. Contractor-Furnished, Owner-Installed Products:
  - 1. As indicated on drawings.



## 1.8 ACCESS TO SITE

- A. General: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.
- B. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.
- C. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

## 1.9 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
  - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work in the existing buildings to normal business working hours of 7:00 a.m. to 5:30 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated. The District's school calendar is posted on the District's website and is updated periodically.
  - 1. Work outside regular hours: Work outside regular working hours requires owner approval and is subject to the following restrictions:
    - a. Weekend Hours: Comply with applicable city ordinances.
    - b. Work after dark: Obtain approval from owner's representative for location of any lights that are used outside.
- C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.
- D. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
  - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
  - 2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
- E. Restricted Substances: Use of controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.
  - 1. Smoking is not permitted within the building(s) or within 25 feet of entrances, operable windows, or outdoor-air intakes.
- F. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Always require personnel to use identification tags.
- G. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.

1. Maintain list of approved screened personnel with Owner's representative.

#### 1.10 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used situations. These conventions are as follows:
  1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
  1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations and scheduled on Drawings.
  3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

#### 1.11 INDEMNIFICATION

- A. Any contractor using these drawings or using these specifications agrees to defend, indemnify and hold harmless Architect from any claim, demand, lawsuit, cost, fees (including attorney feed), and/or liability arising from or related to the use of these drawings or specifications or the construction of the project depicted or described therein.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 10 00

## SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of form provided in Project Manual.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size,

- durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
  - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
  - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project.
  - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Contractor agrees to compensate Architect, at Architect's current billing rates, for substitution requests that require modification to the contract documents. Compensation shall be made by an adjustment to the contract amount.
- a. Where required by Division of the State Architect (DSA) approvals, the Contractor shall pay all plan check fees. Or fees required to obtain approval.
  - b. The Contractor shall pay the Architect and his Consultants for all services rendered for the drawings, calculations, review time, and/or DSA plan check time for each substituted item(s) for approval.
4. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within a reasonable period after the Architect receives final documentation.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

## 1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

## 1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Substitutions may be considered when a product becomes unavailable through no fault of the Contractor. Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 30 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

- B. Substitutions for Convenience: **Requests are restricted to before bid opening.**

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 25 00

## SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

#### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710.

#### 1.4 AGENCY REQUIREMENTS

- A. All addenda must be signed by the Architect and approved by DSA (Section 4-338, Part 1)

#### 1.5 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Construction Manager will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Construction Manager are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within 10 days after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.

- d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Construction Manager.
1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
  4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
  5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  6. Comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

#### 1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Construction Manager will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

#### 1.7 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Work Change Directive: Construction Manager may issue a Work Change Directive on EJCDC Document C-940. Work Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
1. Work Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Work Change Directive.
1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

El Monte High School HVAC Project  
El Monte Union High School District  
El Monte, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22201-01  
DSA Submittal

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 26 00



## SECTION 01 29 00 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
  - 2. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect through Construction Manager at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
  - 3. Subschedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each phase of payment.
  - 4. Subschedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each element.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one-line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:

- a. Project name and location.
  - b. Name of Architect.
  - c. Architect's Project number.
  - d. Contractor's name and address.
  - e. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
  - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
  - b. Description of the Work.
  - c. Name of subcontractor.
  - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
  - e. Name of supplier.
  - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
  - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent. Round dollar amounts to whole dollars, with total equal to Contract Sum.
    - 1) Labor.
    - 2) Materials.
    - 3) Equipment.
3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
4. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
  - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
5. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
6. Purchase Contracts: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each purchase contract. Show line-item value of purchase contract. Indicate Owner payments or deposits, if any, and balance to be paid by Contractor.
7. Overhead Costs: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
8. Overhead Costs: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
9. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
10. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

## 1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and Construction Manager and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use forms acceptable to Owner for Applications for Payment. Submit forms for approval with initial submittal of schedule of values.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Construction Manager will return incomplete applications without action.
  - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  - 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
  - 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
  - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Construction Manager by a method ensuring receipt. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
  - 1. List of subcontractors.
  - 2. Schedule of values.

3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Combined Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) incorporating Work of multiple contracts, with indication of acceptance of schedule by each Contractor.
  5. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  6. Sustainable design action plans, including preliminary project materials cost data.
  7. Schedule of unit prices.
  8. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  9. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  10. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  11. Copies of building permits.
  12. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  13. Initial progress report.
  14. Report of preconstruction conference.
  15. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  16. Performance and payment bonds.
  17. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- H. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, apply for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- I. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. AIA Document G706.
  5. AIA Document G706A.
  6. AIA Document G707.
  7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 29 00

## SECTION 01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. RFIs.
  - 4. Digital project management procedures.
  - 5. Project meetings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
  - 3. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.
  - 4. Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements" for coordinating the Work with Owner's Commissioning Authority.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Construction Manager, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 AGENCY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Title 24 Part 1-5 must be kept on site during construction.

#### 1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  5. Progress meetings.
  6. Preinstallation conferences.
  7. Project closeout activities.
  8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- C. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the work. See other sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

## 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
    - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
    - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
    - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
    - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
    - f. Indicate required installation sequences.

- g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.

B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:

1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
2. Plenum Space: Indicate sub framing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
  - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
  - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
  - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
  - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
  - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
  - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
  - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes dimensioned from column center lines.
8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
  - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in enough scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures."

- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.
  2. File Preparation Format: DWG, Version AutoCAD 2016, operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
  3. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
  4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
    - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
    - b. Digital Data Software Program: Drawings are available in Revit 2016 and AutoCAD 2016.
    - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.

#### 1.7 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Project number.
  3. Date.
  4. Name of Contractor.
  5. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
  6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  7. RFI subject.
  8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  12. Contractor's signature.
  13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.



- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
  - 1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's and Construction Manager's Action: Architect and Construction Manager will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
  - 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  - 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect or Construction Manager of additional information.
  - 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect and Construction Manager in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Software log with not less than the following:
  - 1. Project name.
  - 2. Name and address of Contractor.
  - 3. Name and address of Architect and Construction Manager.
  - 4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  - 5. RFI description.
  - 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  - 7. Date Architect's and Construction Manager's response was received.
  - 8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
  - 9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's and Construction Manager's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect and Construction Manager within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

## 1.8 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's CAD drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.
1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project record Drawings.
  2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
  3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in AutoCAD 2016.
  4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106 Digital Data Licensing Agreement.
    - a. Subcontractors, and other parties granted access by Contractor to Architect's digital data files shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106.
  5. The following digital data files will be furnished for each appropriate discipline:
    - a. Floor plans.
    - b. Reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Web-Based Project Software: Use Owner's or Construction Manager's web-based Project software site for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion.
1. Web-based Project software site includes, at a minimum, the following features:
    - a. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.
    - b. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
    - c. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
    - d. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
    - e. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.
    - f. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
    - g. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
    - h. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
    - i. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
    - j. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.
    - k. Management of construction progress photographs.
    - l. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.
- C. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:

1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

## 1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of 10 working days prior to meeting.
  2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner, Construction Manager, and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, DSA, Construction Manager, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
    - b. Tentative construction schedule.
    - c. Phasing.
    - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - f. Lines of communications.
    - g. Use of web-based Project software.
    - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - i. Procedures for RFIs.
    - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - m. Submittal procedures.
    - n. Sustainable design requirements.
    - o. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - p. Use of the premises and existing building.
    - q. Work restrictions.
    - r. Working hours.
    - s. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    - t. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - u. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
    - v. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
    - w. Construction waste management and recycling.
    - x. Parking availability.

- y. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - z. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - aa. First aid.
    - bb. Security.
    - cc. Progress cleaning.
  - 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
- 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner's Commissioning Authority of scheduled meeting dates.
  - 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.
    - f. Deliveries.
    - g. Submittals.
    - h. Sustainable design requirements.
    - i. Review of mockups.
    - j. Possible conflicts.
    - k. Compatibility requirements.
    - l. Time schedules.
    - m. Weather limitations.
    - n. Manufacturer's written instructions.
    - o. Warranty requirements.
    - p. Compatibility of materials.
    - q. Acceptability of substrates.
    - r. Temporary facilities and controls.
    - s. Space and access limitations.
    - t. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - u. Testing and inspecting requirements.
    - v. Installation procedures.
    - w. Coordination with other work.
    - x. Required performance results.
    - y. Protection of adjacent work.
    - z. Protection of construction and personnel.
  - 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  - 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  - 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

- D. Project Closeout Conference: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
  2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, DSA, Construction Manager, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
    - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
    - d. Submittal of written warranties.
    - e. Requirements for completing sustainable design documentation.
    - f. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
    - g. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
    - h. Requirements for demonstration and training.
    - i. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
    - j. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
    - k. Submittal procedures.
    - l. Coordination of separate contracts.
    - m. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
    - n. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
    - o. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. Progress Meetings: Construction Manager will conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority], Construction Manager, and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.

- b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
  - 1) Interface requirements.
  - 2) Sequence of operations.
  - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
  - 4) Status of submittals.
  - 5) Status of sustainable design documentation.
  - 6) Deliveries.
  - 7) Off-site fabrication.
  - 8) Access.
  - 9) Site use.
  - 10) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 11) Progress cleaning.
  - 12) Quality and work standards.
  - 13) Status of correction of deficient items.
  - 14) Field observations.
  - 15) Status of RFIs.
  - 16) Status of Proposal Requests.
  - 17) Pending changes.
  - 18) Status of Change Orders.
  - 19) Pending claims and disputes.
  - 20) Documentation of information for payment requests.
- 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
  - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Coordination Meetings: Construction Manager will conduct Project coordination meetings at weekly intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
  - 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority], Construction Manager, and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.

- c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
  - 1) Interface requirements.
  - 2) Sequence of operations.
  - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
  - 4) Status of submittals.
  - 5) Deliveries.
  - 6) Off-site fabrication.
  - 7) Access.
  - 8) Site use.
  - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 10) Work hours.
  - 11) Hazards and risks.
  - 12) Progress cleaning.
  - 13) Quality and work standards.
  - 14) Status of RFIs.
  - 15) Proposal Requests.
  - 16) Change Orders.
  - 17) Pending changes.
- 3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 31 00

## SECTION 01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Startup construction schedule.
  - 2. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
  - 4. Daily construction reports.
  - 5. Material location reports.
  - 6. Site condition reports.
  - 7. Unusual event reports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for completing an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.



1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
  2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
  3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
- G. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for completing an activity as scheduled.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
- B. Startup construction schedule.
1. Submittal of cost-loaded, startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.
- C. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.
- D. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
1. Submit a working digital copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals.
- E. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- F. Material Location Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- G. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- H. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.
- I. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.
- B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's Construction Schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
3. Discuss constraints, including work stages and interim milestones.
4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures, including commissioning activities.
10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of final completion.
1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
  2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
  3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
  4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
  5. Commissioning Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for commissioning.
  6. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion and allow time for Architect's and Construction Manager's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  7. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.

- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
  2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
  3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
  4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
    - a. Coordination with existing construction.
    - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
    - c. Uninterruptible services.
    - d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
    - e. Use-of-premises restrictions.
    - f. Provisions for future construction.
    - g. Seasonal variations.
    - h. Environmental control.
  7. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Subcontract awards.
    - b. Submittals.
    - c. Purchases.
    - d. Mockups.
    - e. Fabrication.
    - f. Sample testing.
    - g. Deliveries.
    - h. Installation.
    - i. Tests and inspections.
    - j. Adjusting.
    - k. Curing.
    - l. Building flush-out.
    - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
    - n. Commissioning.
  8. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
    - a. Structural completion.
    - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
    - c. Permanent space enclosure.
    - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
    - e. Completion of electrical installation.
    - f. Substantial Completion.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.

- E. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
  - 1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
  - 1. Unresolved issues.
  - 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
  - 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
  - 4. Notations on returned submittals.
  - 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- G. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- H. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

#### 1.8 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit startup, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type construction schedule within seven days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

#### 1.9 CPM SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a cost- and resource-loaded, time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
  - 1. Develop network diagram in enough time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
    - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates.
  - 2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
  - 3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.

4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- C. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall Project schedule.
- D. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
  1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
  2. Description of activity.
  3. Main events of activity.
  4. Immediately preceding and succeeding activities.
  5. Early and late start dates.
  6. Early and late finish dates.
  7. Activity duration in workdays.
  8. Total float or slack time.
  9. Average size of workforce.
  10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).
- E. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with revising schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
  1. Identification of activities that have changed.
  2. Changes in early and late start dates.
  3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
  4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
  5. Changes in the critical path.
  6. Changes in total float or slack time.
  7. Changes in the Contract Time.
- F. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.
  1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
  2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
  3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
  4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.
    - a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
    - b. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

#### 1.10 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:

1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
  3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  4. Equipment at Project site.
  5. Material deliveries.
  6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
  7. Testing and inspection.
  8. Accidents.
  9. Meetings and significant decisions.
  10. Unusual events.
  11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  13. Emergency procedures.
  14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  15. Change Orders received and implemented.
  16. Work Change Directives received and implemented.
  17. Services connected and disconnected.
  18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
  19. Partial completions and occupancies.
  20. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
  2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
  3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
- C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- D. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 32 00

## SECTION 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
  - 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
  - 2. Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list and for requirements for web-based Project software.
  - 3. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 4. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports, and schedule of tests and inspections.
  - 5. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
  - 6. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 7. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
  - 8. Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's and Construction Manager's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's and Construction Manager's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

#### 1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and Construction Manager and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
  3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
  4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - b. Specification Section number and title.
    - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
    - d. Name of subcontractor.
    - e. Description of the Work covered.
    - f. Scheduled date for Architect's and Construction Manager's final release or approval.
    - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
    - h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
    - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
    - j. Activity or event number.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

- A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:
1. Project name.
  2. Date.
  3. Name of Architect.
  4. Name of Construction Manager.
  5. Name of Contractor.
  6. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  7. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
  8. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier; and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
  9. Category and type of submittal.
  10. Submittal purpose and description.
  11. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
  12. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  13. Indication of full or partial submittal.



14. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
15. Other necessary identification.
16. Remarks.
17. Signature of transmitter.

- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect and Construction Manager on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. PDF Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.
- E. Submittals for Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files, or other format indicated by Project software website.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect and Construction Manager reserve the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Construction Manager's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Construction Manager will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.

2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
  4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
  5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Construction Manager, through Architect, before being returned to Contractor.
    - a. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect and Construction Manager.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's and Construction Manager's action stamp.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's and Construction Manager's action stamp.

## 1.7 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.

- c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  - 5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrent with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
  - 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
  - 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  - 2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.
    - b. Generic description of Sample.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.
    - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  - 3. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
  - 4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  - 5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return submittal with options selected.

6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
  - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect and Construction Manager will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
    - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
    - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
  1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  3. Number and name of room or space.
  4. Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
  1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
  2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
  3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
  4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

H. Test and Research Reports:

1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - a. Name of evaluation organization.
  - b. Date of evaluation.
  - c. Time period when report is in effect.
  - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - e. Description of product.
  - f. Test procedures and results.
  - g. Limitations of use.

1.8 DEFERRED APPROVALS

- A. Where shown on drawings and as specified in individual sections, submit documentation as required to obtain DSA approval of all deferred work.
- B. Architect will submit documents to DSA reviewing authority for review and comment. Architect will return documents to Contractor following DSA review.
- C. Where required, Contractor shall make all changes or corrections required by DSA reviewing authority. Contractor shall pay all fees and provide all coordination and management necessary to obtain approval, including all meeting, correspondence and communications. Once corrections are made, Contractor shall return to Architect for resubmittal.
- D. After receiving DSA final approval, Architect will furnish Contractor one complete set of DSA approved documents for Architects use in construction.

- E. Submit deferred approval documentation under the provisions of section 01 33 00 and as specified in the respective Sections.
1. Comply with the requirements of Section 4-3 17(g), Chapter 7, Part 1, title 24, CCR. All deferred approvals shall be stamped and sealed by the responsible engineer, licensed as specified. Architect will review and mark with notation indicating that the deferred submittal documents have been reviewed and that they have been found to be in general conformance with the design of the project.
  2. Submit documentation prepared under the supervision of a California licensed Engineer in the applicable discipline. All structural deferred approvals shall be prepared by California licensed Structural Engineer.
  3. Provide Deferred Approval Number and DSA Project Number and File number on the cover of each submittal.
  4. Provide document format with sufficient space for Architect and DSA agency review stamps.
  5. Clearly identify all deviations and proposed alternates to materials and systems shown on drawings and specified in the Project Manual.
  6. Drawings: Produce drawings on substantial bond paper using media of archive quality. Indicate dimensional locations of the various parts of the construction, sizes and type of members, connections, attachments, and openings.
  7. Structural Calculations: Produce calculations in booklet form, 8-112 x 11 inch size, minimum of 3 wet signed and sealed copies.
  8. Provide sufficient information with respect to design criteria, analysis methodology and material capacity to adequately evaluate documentation for compliance with applicable sections Title 24, CCR.
  9. Where required by Section 4-336, provide verified reports for work done under deferred approvals.

#### 1.9 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

#### 1.10 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect and Construction Manager.

- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with indication in web-based Project software. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Architect and Construction Manager will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

#### 1.11 ARCHITECT'S AND CONSTRUCTION MANAGER'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect and Construction Manager will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it.
  - 1. PDF Submittals: Architect and Construction Manager will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action.
  - 2. Submittals by Web-Based Project Software: Architect and Construction Manager will indicate, on Project software website, the appropriate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect and Construction Manager will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect and Construction Manager will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect and Construction Manager.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect and Construction Manager will discard submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 33 00

## SECTION 01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
  - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site either as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities



of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed and tested at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
  2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope constructed on-site as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
  3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes; doors; windows; millwork; casework; specialties; furnishings and equipment; and lighting.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source; for example, plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect or Construction Manager.

#### 1.4 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
1. If criteria indicated are not enough to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

#### 1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent

requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for direction before proceeding.

- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

## 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For integrated exterior mockups.
  - 1. Include plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  - 3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
  - 1. Specification Section number and title.
  - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  - 3. Description of test and inspection.
  - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
  - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.

6. Number of tests and inspections required.
7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

- F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

#### 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including Subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
  2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
  3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents, including tests and inspections indicated to be performed by Commissioning Authority.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.9 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Date of issue.
  2. Project title and number.
  3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
  4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  8. Complete test or inspection data.
  9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspection.
  11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
  2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

## 1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

- B. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems like those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as enough production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. **Fabricator Qualifications:** A firm experienced in producing products like those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as enough production capacity to produce required units.
- D. **Installer Qualifications:** A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. **Professional Engineer Qualifications:** A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. **Specialists:** Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. **Testing Agency Qualifications:** An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. **Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications:** An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. **Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:** An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. **Preconstruction Testing:** Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
  - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
    - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
    - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
    - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.

- d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
      - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
      - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
    2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, through Construction Manager, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  - K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
    1. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect or Construction Manager.
    2. Notify Architect and Construction Manager seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
    3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
    4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
    5. Obtain Architect's and Construction Manager's approval of mockups before starting corresponding work, fabrication, or construction.
      - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
    6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
    7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
  - L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup according to approved Shop Drawings. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials. Comply with requirements in "Mockups" Paragraph.
  - M. Room Mockups: Construct room mockups according to approved Shop Drawings incorporating required materials and assemblies, finished according to requirements. Provide required lighting and additional lighting where required to enable Architect to evaluate quality of the Work. Comply with requirements in "Mockups" Paragraph.
- 1.11 QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
    1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
    2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances, as authorized by Change Orders.

3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
  4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and

conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.

- G. Associated Contractor Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

#### 1.12 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.



- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's, Commissioning Authority's, and Construction Manager's reference during normal working hours.

- 1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

### 3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 01 73 00 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 01 40 00

## SECTION 01 41 00 - TESTING AND INSPECTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Observation and Inspection of Construction: Comply with applicable requirements of CAC Section 4-333.
  - 2. Structural Tests and Special Inspections: Comply with applicable requirements of CAC Section 4-335.
  - 3. Testing and inspection services to meet requirements of the CBC as indicated in Contract Documents.
    - a. One or more DSA certified inspectors employed by the Owner in accordance with the requirements of CAC will be assigned to the Work with their duties as specifically defined in CAC Sections 4-333(b), 4-333(c), and 4-342 and in DSA IR A-8, "Project Inspector and Assistant Inspector Duties and Performance: 2016, 2013, 2010, and 2007 CAC."
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation".
  - 2. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures".
  - 3. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements".
  - 4. Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls".
  - 5. Section 01 73 00 "Execution Requirements".
  - 6. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures".
  - 7. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition".

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. DSA: State of California, Division of the State Architect.
- B. OAR: Owner's Authorized Representative(s).

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: In accordance with CBC Section 1704A.4, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to DSA before starting work on the following systems.

1. Seismic-force resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality assurance plan prepared by the Architect or the Structural Engineer of Record.
2. Main wind-force resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality assurance plan prepared by the Architect or the Structural Engineer of Record.

## 1.5 TESTING COSTS

- A. OWNER will pay special inspections and testing identified in the Statement of Structural Tests and Special Inspections (DSA FORM 103) except CONTRACTOR shall reimburse the OWNER for retesting and show-up time for cancelled inspections. The costs will be a minimum of 4 hours per event, per engineer's wage rate sheet. Re-testing caused by failure of materials to pass initial tests. CONTRACTOR shall arrange and pay for all other testing that are specified in other specification sections.
1. Reimbursement of Inspection Costs: The CONTRACTOR shall reimburse to the OWNER all retesting of failed inspections, last minute canceled inspections, as the OWNER may deem just and proper, of the actual excessive inspection costs incurred by the OWNER due to any or all of the following:
    - i. CONTRACTOR'S failure to complete the Work within the Contract Time stated in the Agreement, and any previously authorized extensions thereof.
    - ii. Claims between separate contractors.
    - iii. Covering of any of the Work before the required inspections of tests are performed.
    - iv. Extra inspections required for CONTRACTOR'S correction of defective Work.
    - v. Overtime costs for acceleration of Work done for CONTRACTOR'S convenience.

## 1.6 CONTRACTOR-FURNISHED ASSISTANCE

- A. When requested, CONTRACTOR shall furnish access, facilities, and labor assistance as necessary for duties to be performed at the site by Test Laboratory, and Inspector, including ladders, hoisting, temporary lighting, water, and like services.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Observation and Inspection of Construction:
1. Observation by Architect or Registered Engineer: The Act requires that the observation of the work of construction, reconstruction, rehabilitation, alteration, or addition shall be under the general responsible charge of an architect, structural engineer, or under certain

conditions a professional engineer registered in that branch of engineering applicable to the work per CAC Section 4-333(a).

- a. The responsible geotechnical engineer, or his or her qualified representative, shall perform all testing and special inspection of all earth materials, the placement and compaction of engineered fills, and the geotechnical aspects of foundations, retaining walls, and foundation anchors. The responsible geotechnical engineer shall submit verified reports in accordance with CAC Section 4-336 and CBC Section 1704A.7.1.
2. Inspection by a Project Inspector: Owner to provide for and require competent, adequate, and continuous inspection by an inspector satisfactory to the architect or registered engineer in general responsible charge of observation of the work of construction; to any registered engineer delegated responsibility for a portion of the work; and to DSA per CAC Section 4-333(b).
  - a. The cost of project inspection shall be paid for by the Owner. An inspector shall not have any current employment relationship with any entity which is a contracting party for the construction or any entity providing any services for the school district except for services directly related to project inspection.
  - b. Project inspectors are prohibited from any activities involving the actual performance of construction, or the scheduling, coordination, or supervision of construction contractors for the project.
  - c. For every project there shall be a project inspector who shall have personal knowledge as defined in Sections 17309 and 81141 of the Education Code of all work done on the project or its parts as defined in CAC Section 4-316. No work shall be carried on except under the inspection of an inspector approved by DSA. On large projects adequate inspection may require the employment of one or more approved assistant inspectors in accordance with CAC Section 4-333(d). The employment of special inspectors or assistant inspectors shall not be construed as relieving project inspector of his or her duties and responsibilities under Section 17309 and 81141 of the Education Code and CAC Sections 4-336 and 4-342.
  - d. The project inspector shall be capable of performing all essential functions of the job.
  - e. The project inspector and any assistant inspector must be approved by DSA for each individual project. Prior to being eligible for approval, any project inspector or any assistant inspector shall establish, to the satisfaction of DSA that he or she:
    - 1) Is appropriately certified by DSA per CAC Section 4-333.1.
    - 2) Has adequate knowledge and experience to perform the required duties for the project. He or she shall have at least three years experience in inspection or construction work on building projects of a type similar to the project.
    - 3) Will provide sufficient time on the project to fulfill all inspection responsibilities required by these regulations.
  - f. An approved project inspector may be replaced in accordance with the process outlined in CAC Section 4-341(d). The school district shall ensure that a replacement inspector is provided prior to continuation of construction work. DSA may withhold approval of the replacement inspector until a verified report by the previous project inspector is submitted in accordance with CAC Section 4-336(c)5.
  - g. DSA may withdraw the inspector's approval for the project due to failure of the project inspector to comply with the requirements contained in CAC Section 4-342(b). DSA shall communicate the withdrawal of the project inspector's approval

- in writing to the school district and the architect or registered engineer in general responsible charge. The school district shall ensure that a replacement inspector is provided prior to continuation of the construction work.
- h. The project inspector may perform special inspections if the project inspector has been specially approved by DSA for such purpose and has the time available to complete the special inspections in addition to project inspection work.
  - i. The detailed inspection of all work, as specified in CAC Section 4-335(f), is the responsibility of the project inspector when a special inspector is not provided.
3. Special Inspection: Special inspection by qualified inspectors shall be in accordance with CBC Chapter 17A per CAC Section 4-333(c).
- a. DSA may require special inspectors for types of construction in addition to those listed in CBC Chapter 17A, if found necessary because of the special use of materials or methods of construction.
4. Assistant Inspectors: Assistant inspectors are approved by DSA to assist the project inspector with the inspection of one or more aspects of the construction. Assistant inspectors must work under the supervision of a Class 1 certified project inspector per CAC Section 4-333(d).
- a. On large projects DSA may require the employment of assistant inspectors when the project inspector is not able to provide continuous inspection of all aspects of the construction in a timely manner. When assistant inspectors are required by DSA the project inspector shall remain on-site providing supervision of all assistants during all construction.
  - b. All assistant inspectors must be approved by DSA prior to performing any inspection work in accordance with CAC Section 4-341(d). Prior to being approved by DSA as an assistant inspector the individual must satisfy all of the following requirements:
    - 1) Be certified as a Class 1 inspector in accordance with CAC Section 4-333.1.
    - 2) Must possess adequate experience for the type of construction that the assistant will be assigned to inspect.
    - 3) Document at least three years of experience in the types of construction that the assistant will inspect. Experience must be obtained in construction or inspection of buildings similar to the buildings for which the individual is applying.
  - c. The assistant inspector shall establish, to the satisfaction of DSA that he or she meets all of the requirements established in CAC Section 4-333(b)5.
  - d. Failure of the assistant inspector to perform any of the duties specified in these regulations may be cause for DSA to take action as outlined in CAC Section 4-342(c).
- B. Structural Tests and Special Inspections:
1. General: Structural tests and inspections are required as set forth in the CAC and the CBC per CAC Section 4-335(a).
- a. Whenever there is insufficient evidence of compliance with any of the provisions of Title 24, California Code of Regulations, or evidence that any material or construction does not conform to the requirements of Title 24, California Code of

- Regulations, DSA may require tests/inspections as proof of compliance to be made at no expense to DSA.
- b. Test/inspection methods shall be as specified by Title 24, California Code of Regulations, and by applicable referenced standards, as listed in CBC Chapter 35. If there are no recognized and accepted test/inspection methods, the responsible architect or structural engineer shall submit written alternate test/inspection procedures for review and acceptance by DSA.
  - c. The Owner shall, with the advice of the architect or registered engineer in general responsible charge, select the laboratory of record, acceptable to DSA in accordance with CAC Section 4-335.1, to conduct all required tests for the project, and special inspections which are contracted to the laboratory of record. The laboratory of record shall be directly employed by the Owner and not be in the employ of any other agency or individual.
  - d. All tests shall be made by a laboratory acceptable to DSA, as described in CAC Section 4-335.1. Where job conditions warrant, the architect or registered engineer in general responsible charge may waive certain tests with the approval of DSA. The responsible architect or structural engineer shall prepare a statement of structural tests and special inspections, obtain DSA approval and provide a copy of the approved statement of structural tests and special inspections to the laboratory of record and the project inspector prior to the start of construction.
2. Payments: The Owner shall pay for all tests/inspections, but if so specified the amount or a portion thereof may be collected from the contractor by the Owner. When in the opinion of the architect or registered engineer, additional tests/inspections are required because of the manner in which the contractor executes his or her work, such tests/inspections shall be paid for by the schoolboard, but if so specified the amount paid may be collected from the contractor by the Owner. Examples of such tests/inspection are: tests of material substituted for previously accepted materials, retests or re-inspections made necessary by the failure of material to comply with the requirements of the approved construction documents and specifications, and load tests necessary because certain portions of the structure have not fully met specification or plan requirements per CAC Section 4-335(b).
3. Sampling and Testing of Materials: Samples or specimens of material for testing shall be taken by a qualified representative of the laboratory of record. For a minor scope of work, the project inspector may, if qualified and other duties permit, be authorized in writing by DSA to obtain, handle, prepare, protect, transport, and/or store test specimens per CAC Section 4-335(c).
- a. In general, samples may be selected at random; however, if there is reason to believe that specific materials may be defective, sample locations may be selected by the project inspector, responsible architect or structural engineer or DSA representative. In no case shall the contractor or vendor select the sample location or obtain specimens.
  - b. Obtaining, handling, preparing, protecting, transporting, or storing of samples and testing shall be in accordance with the standards as provided for in the approved plans, specifications, and in the applicable building regulations.
  - c. In cases where a tested sample has failed to meet the requirements of the DSA approve documents, the responsible architect or structural engineer, subject to the approval of DSA, may permit retest of the material or in-place work.
4. Test Reporting Requirements: Per CAC Section 4-335(d).
- a. The laboratory of record shall complete detailed test reports outlining all structural material tests. Report format shall be as prescribed by DSA.

- b. Reports shall include all tests made, regardless of whether such tests indicate that the material is satisfactory or nonconforming.
  - c. The reports shall clearly state that the material or materials were sampled and tested in accordance with the requirements of these regulations and the approved plans and specifications. Reports shall also clearly state whether or not the material or materials tested met the requirements of the DSA approved documents.
  - d. All reports of tests performed on-site shall be submitted to the project inspector within one work day of the day the tests were performed.
  - e. Within 7 calendar days of the date of any material test, the laboratory of record shall submit all such test reports to the design professional in general responsible charge, the structural engineer, the project inspector, the contractor, and the school district. DSA may request test reports as proof of compliance.
  - f. Reports of material tests not conforming with the requirements of the DSA approved documents shall be forwarded immediately to DSA, the design professional in general responsible charge, the structural engineer, the project inspector, the contractor, and the school district.
5. Verified Reports by the Laboratory of Record: The laboratory of record shall submit a verified report to DSA, and provide a copy to the architect or registered engineer in general responsible charge, the Owner, and the project inspector, covering all of the tests and special inspections that were required to be made by that laboratory. Such report shall be furnished within 14 days of the completion of the testing/special inspection program, whenever required by DSA, or any time that work on the project is suspended, or services of the laboratory of record are terminated. The report shall cover the tests and special inspections completed at that time per CAC Section 4-335(e).
- a. The verified report shall be signed, under penalty of perjury, by the California registered civil engineer charged with engineering managerial responsibility for the laboratory of record. The verified report shall state that the structural tests and special inspections required by the DSA approved documents were made. The report shall include a list of any noncompliant material or inspected work that has not been resolved by the date of the verified report. Any required tests or special inspection work that was not conducted by the laboratory of record shall be listed on the verified report, with an explanation why they were not performed.

C. Verified Reports:

- 1. General: As the work of construction progresses, the architect or registered engineer in general responsible charge of observation of construction of the work, each architect or registered engineer delegated responsibility for a portion of observation of construction of the work, the project inspector, the geotechnical engineer, the laboratory of record, approved special inspectors contracting individually and directly with the Owner, and the contractor shall each make and sign under penalty of perjury, a duly verified report to DSA and provide a copy of the same report to the project inspector per CAC Section 4-336(a).
- a. The verified report shall be made upon a prescribed form or forms attesting that of his or her own personal knowledge the work during the period covered by the report has been performed and materials have been used and installed in every material respect in compliance with the duly approved plans and specifications, and setting forth such detailed statements of fact as shall be required.
- b. The term "personal knowledge" as applied to an architect or registered engineer means the personal knowledge that is obtained from periodic visits of reasonable

frequency to the project site for the purpose of general observation of the work, and that is obtained from the reporting of others on the progress of the work, testing of materials, inspection and superintendence of the work. The exercise of reasonable diligence to obtain the facts is required.

- c. The term "personal knowledge" as applied to the project inspector means the actual personal knowledge that is obtained from the inspector's personal continuous inspection of the work in all stages of its progress. For work performed away from the site, the project inspector may obtain personal knowledge from the reporting of testing or inspection of materials and workmanship for compliance with approved plans, specifications, and applicable standards. The exercise of reasonable diligence to obtain the facts is required.
  - d. The term "personal knowledge" as applied to a special inspector means the actual personal knowledge which is obtained from the inspector's personal inspection of the work assigned. The verified report shall clearly describe the work assigned to each individual special inspector. The exercise of reasonable diligence to obtain the facts is required.
  - e. The term "personal knowledge" as applied to the contractor means the personal knowledge gained from constructing the building. The exercise of reasonable diligence to obtain the facts is required.
2. Verified Report Form: Verified reports shall be made on specific forms prescribed by DSA per CAC Section 4-336(b).
  3. Required Filing: Verified reports shall be made as follows:
    - a. By each contractor having a contract with the Owner, at the completion of the contract.
    - b. By the architect, registered engineers, and project inspector at the completion of the project.
    - c. By the architect, registered engineers, engineering manager of the laboratory of record, as required by CAC Section 4-335(e), project inspector, and approved special inspectors contracting individually and directly with the Owner, at the suspension of all work for a period of more than one month and identified milestones of completed construction prescribed by DSA.
    - d. By the project inspector when any building included in the scope of the project is occupied or re-occupied.
    - e. By any of the following, whenever their services in connection with the project have been terminated for any reason: the architect or registered engineer in general responsible charge, engineering manager of the laboratory of record, project inspector, approved special inspector contracting individually and directly with the Owner, or the contractor. By the responsible geotechnical engineer, as required by CAC Section 4-333(a), upon completion of his or her duties.
    - f. By the engineering manager of the laboratory of record, as required by CAC Section 4-335(e), at the completion of the testing program.
    - g. By the approved special inspector contracting individually and directly with the Owner at the conclusion of the work requiring special inspection.
    - h. By any party listed above at any time a verified report is requested by DSA.

D. Duties of the Project Inspector:

1. General: The project inspector shall act under the direction of the architect or registered engineer in general responsible charge. The project inspector is also subject to supervision by DSA per CAC Section 4-342(a).
2. Duties: The general duties of the project inspector in fulfilling his or her responsibilities are as follows:



- a. Continuous Inspection Requirement: The project inspector must have actual personal knowledge, obtained by personal and continuous inspection of the work of construction in all stages of its progress, that the requirements of the approved plans and specifications are being completely executed.
  - 1) Continuous inspection means complete inspection of every part of the work. Work, such as concrete work or masonry work which can be inspected only as it is placed, shall require the constant presence of the inspector. Other types of work which can be completely inspected after the work is installed may be carried on while the inspector is not present. In any case, the inspector must personally inspect every part of the work. In no case shall the inspector have or assume any duties that will prevent the inspector from giving continuous inspection. DSA may require verification from the project inspector of time spent at the construction site during all phases of the work. The project inspector may obtain personal knowledge of the work of construction, either on-site or off-site, performed under the inspection of special inspectors and/or assistant inspectors (CAC Section 4-333). The project inspector may obtain personal knowledge that materials used in the construction conform to the DSA approved documents by verifying test reports performed by DSA accepted testing facilities, verifying materials certifications shipped with the materials, or other means as specified in the DSA approved documents and referenced codes and standards. The project inspector shall verify that special inspectors possess valid certifications for the work being inspected. The project inspector shall be responsible for monitoring the work of the special inspectors and testing laboratories to ensure that the testing program is satisfactorily completed. The project inspector shall be responsible for supervising the work of all assistant inspectors in accordance with CAC Section 4-333(d). The exercise of reasonable diligence to obtain the facts shall be required.
- b. Relations with the Architect or Engineer: Any uncertainties in the inspector's comprehension of the plans and specifications or inconsistencies or seeming errors in the approved construction documents shall be reported promptly to the architect or registered engineer in general responsible charge for interpretation and instructions. In no case shall the instruction of the architect or registered engineer be construed to cause work to be done which is not in conformity with the DSA approved documents.
- c. Job File: The project inspector shall keep and maintain a file on the job at all times with all of the following:
  - 1) DSA approved plans and specifications including DSA approved addenda and all construction change documents.
  - 2) Applicable parts of the edition of Title 24, California Code of Regulations, referred to in the plans and specifications, and any pertinent reference standards.
  - 3) DSA approved statement of structural tests and special inspections.
  - 4) Copies of the inspector's semi-monthly reports.
  - 5) Copies of all deviation notices and a log of all deviation notices. The log shall reference all applicable details and specification sections related to nonconforming materials and workmanship including construction change documents, addenda, and deferred submittals. The log shall describe all corrective actions taken whether performed in accordance with DSA approved documents or not, the current status of each deviation issue and the resolution for each issue.

- 6) Log documenting all significant communications with the design professionals, contractors, DSA representatives, and other persons involved in the project. Significant communications include, but are not limited to, interpretations, clarifications or directions from the design professionals, issues identified by DSA representatives, directives from the school district, and start notices from the contractor.
  - 7) Laboratory tests and inspection reports.
  - 8) Contractor's request for information (RFI) and responses to the RFIs.
  - 9) Interpretations and clarifications from the design professional in general responsible charge.
  - 10) Special inspection reports.
  - 11) Concrete placing operation records showing the time and date of placing concrete and the time and date of removal of forms in each portion of the structure.
  - 12) Welding operation records including identification marks of welders, lists of defective welds, manner of correction of defects, etc.
  - 13) Pile driving operation records including penetration under the last 10 blows for each pile when piles are driven for foundations.
  - 14) Verified reports for all persons required by this code to file verified reports.
  - 15) Any other applicable documents required to provide a complete record of construction.
  - 16) The job file shall be kept on the job site until the completion of the project and shall be readily accessible to DSA personnel during site visits. A copy of the job file shall be made available to DSA upon request. The job file, with the exception of building codes and reference standards, shall be made part of the permanent school district records.
- d. Project Inspector's Semimonthly Reports: The project inspector shall keep the architect or registered engineer in general responsible charge thoroughly informed as to the progress of the work by making semimonthly reports in writing as required in CAC Section 4-337.
- e. Notifications to DSA: The project inspectors shall notify DSA by email at the following times:
- 1) When construction work on the project is started, or restarted if previously suspended per Item 4 below.
  - 2) At least 48 hours in advance of the time when foundation trenches will be complete, ready for footing forms.
  - 3) At least 48 hours in advance of the first placement of foundation concrete and first grout placement for masonry construction and, when requested by the enforcement agency, 24 hours in advance of any subsequent and significant concrete placement, or grout placement for masonry construction.
  - 4) When all work on the project is suspended for a period of more than one month.
- f. Deviations: The project inspector shall notify the contractor, in writing, of any deviations from the approved plans and specifications which are not immediately corrected by the contractor when brought to the contractor's attention. Copies of such notice shall be forwarded immediately to the architect or registered engineer, and to DSA.
- 1) Failure on the part of the project inspector to notify the contractor of deviations from the approved plans and specifications shall in no way

relieve the contractor of any responsibility to complete the work covered by his or her contract in accordance with the approved plans and specifications and all laws and regulations.

- g. Inspector Verified Report: The project inspector shall make and submit directly to DSA verified reports (see CAC Section 4-336). The project inspector shall prepare and deliver to DSA detailed statements of fact regarding materials, operations, etc., when requested.
    - h. Performance of Duties: The inspector shall perform all duties and render all services with honesty. Inspectors who fail to carry out their duties in an ethical manner or who engage in illegal activities may be subject to disciplinary action as defined in CAC Section 4-342(d)
- E. Special Inspections and Tests: In addition to the project inspector required by the California Administrative Code (CCR, Title 24, Part 1), Section 4-333, the owner shall employ one or more approved agencies to provide special inspections and tests as required by the enforcement agency during construction on the types of work listed under CBC Chapters 17A, 18A, 19A, 20, 21A, 22A, 23, and 25 and the California Existing Building Code and noted in the special test, inspection, and observation plan required by Section 4-335 of the California Administrative Code per CBC Section 1701A.4.
- F. Approved Agency: An approved agency shall provide all information necessary for the building official to determine that the agency meets the applicable requirements specified in CBC Sections 1703A.1.1 through 1703A.1.3 per CBC Section 1703A.1.
  - 1. Independence: An approved agency shall be objective, competent, and independent from the contractor responsible for the work being inspected. The agency shall also disclose to the building official and the registered design professional in responsible charge possible conflicts of interest so that objectivity can be confirmed per CBC Section 1703A.1.1.
  - 2. Equipment: An approved agency shall have adequate equipment to perform the required tests. The equipment shall be periodically calibrated per CBC Section 1703A.1.2.
  - 3. Personnel: An approved agency shall employ experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising, and evaluating tests and special inspections per CBC Section 1703.1.3.
- G. Special Inspector Qualifications: Prior to the start of construction, the approved agencies shall provide written documentation to the building official demonstrating the competence and relevant experience or training of the special inspectors who will perform the special inspections and tests during construction. Experience or training shall be considered relevant where the documented experience or training is related in complexity to the same type of special inspection or testing activities for projects of similar complexity and material qualities. These qualifications are in addition to qualifications specified in other sections of this code per CBC Section 1704A.2.1.
  - 1. The registered design professional in responsible charge and engineers of record involved in the design of the project are permitted to act as the approved agency and their personnel are permitted to act as special inspectors for the work designed by them, provided they qualify as special inspectors.
- H. Contractor Responsibility: Each contractor responsible for the construction of a main wind- or seismic force-resisting system, installation of equipment/components requiring special seismic certification or a wind- or seismic force-resisting component listed in the statement of special inspections shall submit a written statement of responsibility to the building official and the owner or the owner's authorized agent prior to the commencement of work on the system or

component. The contractor's statement of responsibility shall contain acknowledgement of awareness of the special requirements contained in the statement of special inspections per CBC Section 1704A.4.

- I. Structural Observations: The Owner shall employ a registered design professional to perform structural observations. Structural observation does not include or waive the responsibility for the inspections in CAC Section 110 or the special inspections in CBC Section 1705A or other sections of this code per CBC Section 1704A.6.
  1. Prior to the commencement of observations, the structural observer shall submit to the building official a written statement identifying the frequency and extent of structural observations.
  2. At the conclusion of the work included in the permit, the structural observer shall submit to the building official a written statement that the site visits have been made and identify any reported deficiencies that, to the best of the structural observer's knowledge, have not been resolved.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 TESTS

- A. Owner will select an independent testing agency to conduct tests, sampling, and testing of materials. Selection of material to be tested shall be by the agency or the OAR and not by Contractor.
  1. Procedural and acceptance criteria shall be as set forth in CAC Section 4-335.
  2. Comply with applicable requirements of CBC Section 1703A.1.
- B. Owner will directly reimburse testing agency all costs for all DSA required tests and inspections, but may be reimbursed by Contractor for such costs as noted in related sections of the Contract Documents.
  1. Contractor will reimburse Owner or directly reimburse testing agency all costs for retesting required by failed tests as set forth in CAC Sections 4-333(c) and 4-335(c).
- C. Independent testing agency is not authorized to release, revoke, alter, or enlarge requirements of the Contract Documents or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
- D. Independent testing agency shall not perform any duties of Contractor.
- E. Contractor shall notify the OAR a sufficient time in advance of the manufacture of material to be supplied by him under the Contract Documents, which must by terms of the Contract Documents be tested, in order that the Owner may arrange for the testing of same at the source of supply.
- F. Any material shipped by Contractor from source of supply prior to having satisfactorily passed such required testing and inspection or prior to receipt of notice from IOR such testing and inspection is not required shall not be incorporated into the Work.
- G. Contractor shall provide an insulated curing box with capacity for not less than 20 concrete cylinders and relocate said box and cylinders as rapidly as required in order to provide for progress of the Work.

### 3.2 TEST REPORTS

- A. One copy of each test report shall be forwarded directly to DSA by the testing agency. Additional copies of each test report shall be forwarded directly to Owner, Architect, Contractor, Project Inspector, and structural engineer by the testing agency. Such reports shall include all tests made, regardless of whether such tests indicate that the material is satisfactory or unsatisfactory. Samples taken but not tested shall also be reported. Records of special sampling operations as required shall also be reported. The reports shall show that the material or materials were sampled and tested in accordance with the requirements of CBC and with the approved Contract Documents. Test reports shall show the specified design strength. Test reports shall also definitely state whether or not material or materials tested comply with the specified requirements.
  - 1. Comply with applicable requirements of CAC Section 4-335(d).

### 3.3 VERIFICATION OF TEST REPORTS

- A. Testing agency shall submit to DSA a verified report, in duplicate, covering tests that were performed by that agency during the progress of the Work. Additional copies of each test report shall be forwarded directly to Owner, Architect, Contractor, Project Inspector, and structural engineer by the testing agency. Such report shall be furnished each time construction on the Work is suspended, covering tests up to that time, and prior to Final Completion of the Work, covering all tests.
  - 1. Comply with applicable requirements of CAC Sections 4-335(e) and 4-336 and in DSA PR 13-01 "Procedure: Construction Oversight Process."

### 3.4 INSPECTION BY OWNER

- A. Owner and OAR shall at all times have access, for purpose of inspection, to all parts of the Work and to all shops wherein the Work is in preparation. Contractor shall at all times maintain proper facilities and provide safe access for such inspection.
- B. Owner and OAR shall have the right to reject materials and workmanship deemed defective Work, and to require their correction. Rejected workmanship shall be corrected in a satisfactory manner and rejected materials shall be removed from the premises and legally disposed of, all without charge to Owner. If Contractor does not correct such rejected Work within a reasonable time, fixed by written notice and in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract Documents, Owner may correct such rejected Work and proceed in accordance with related Articles of the Contract Documents.
- C. Should it be considered necessary or advisable by the Owner at any time prior to Final Acceptance of the entire Work to make an examination of the Work already completed by removing or tearing out the same, the Contractor shall, on request, promptly furnish all necessary facilities, labor, and materials. If such work is found to be defective in any respect due to the fault of the Contractor or any of his subcontractors, he shall defray all expenses of such examinations and of satisfactory reconstruction. If, however, such work is found to meet the requirements of Contract Documents, the additional cost of labor and material necessarily involved in the examination and replacement shall be allowed the Contractor.
- D. Contractor is responsible for compliance with all applicable local, state, and federal codes, regulations, ordinances, restrictions, and requirements.

### 3.5 STRUCTURAL OBSERVATIONS

- A. The Owner shall employ a registered design professional to perform structural observations per CBC Section 1704A.6.

### 3.6 PROJECT INSPECTOR

- A. Project Inspector, employed by the Owner in accordance with requirements of California Code of Regulations, Title 24, will be assigned to the work.
  - 1. Project Inspector shall be approved by Architect, Structural Engineer, and DSA.
  - 2. Comply with applicable requirements of CAC Section 4-333(b).
  - 3. Duties of Project Inspector are specifically defined in CAC Section 4-342 and in DSA IR A-8, "Project Inspector and Assistant Inspector Duties and Performance: 2016, 2013, 2010, and 2007 CAC."
- B. The work of construction in all stages of progress shall be subject to the personal continuous observation of the Project Inspector. He shall have free access to any or all parts of the Work at any time. The Contractor shall furnish the Project Inspector reasonable facilities for obtaining such information as may be necessary to keep him fully informed respecting the progress and manner of the Work and the character of the materials.
- C. Inspection of Work shall not relieve Contractor from any obligation to fulfill all of the terms and conditions of the Contract Documents.
- D. Contractor shall be responsible for scheduling times of inspection, tests, sample taking, and similar activities of the Work.

### 3.7 SPECIAL INSPECTOR

- A. Special Inspector:
  - 1. Comply with applicable requirements of CAC Section 4-333(c).
  - 2. Comply with applicable requirements of CBC Sections 1701A.4 and 1704A.2.1.

### 3.8 PROJECT INSPECTOR - FIELD OFFICE

- A. The Contractor shall provide for the use of the Project Inspector a temporary office to be located as directed by the Project Inspector and to be maintained until removal is authorized by the Owner. This office shall be of substantial waterproof construction with adequate natural light and ventilation by means of stock design windows. The door shall have a lock. A table satisfactory for the study of plans and two chairs shall be provided by the Contractor. The Contractor shall provide and pay for adequate electric lights, private local telephone service with a loud exterior bell, and adequate heat for this field office until the completion of the Contract.

### 3.9 ATTACHMENTS

- A. Appendix A: DSA Form 103 "Statement of Structural Tests and Special Inspections."

El Monte High School HVAC Project  
El Monte Union High School District  
El Monte, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22201-01  
DSA Submittal

END OF SECTION 01 41 00

## SECTION 01 42 00 - REFERENCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

#### 1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.



- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.

1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

#### 1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."
- B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. AABC - Associated Air Balance Council; [www.aabc.com](http://www.aabc.com).
2. AAMA - American Architectural Manufacturers Association; [www.aamanet.org](http://www.aamanet.org).
3. AAPFCO - Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; [www.aapfco.org](http://www.aapfco.org).
4. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; [www.transportation.org](http://www.transportation.org).
5. AATCC - American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; [www.aatcc.org](http://www.aatcc.org).
6. ABMA - American Bearing Manufacturers Association; [www.americanbearings.org](http://www.americanbearings.org).
7. ABMA - American Boiler Manufacturers Association; [www.abma.com](http://www.abma.com).
8. ACI - American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); [www.concrete.org](http://www.concrete.org)
9. ACPA - American Concrete Pipe Association; [www.concrete-pipe.org](http://www.concrete-pipe.org).
10. AEIC - Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); [www.aeic.org](http://www.aeic.org).
11. AF&PA - American Forest & Paper Association; [www.afandpa.org](http://www.afandpa.org).
12. AGA - American Gas Association; [www.aga.org](http://www.aga.org).
13. AHAM - Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; [www.aham.org](http://www.aham.org).
14. AHRI - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); [www.ahrinet.org](http://www.ahrinet.org).
15. AI - Asphalt Institute; [www.asphaltinstitute.org](http://www.asphaltinstitute.org).
16. AIA - American Institute of Architects (The); [www.aia.org](http://www.aia.org).
17. AISC - American Institute of Steel Construction; [www.aisc.org](http://www.aisc.org).
18. AISI - American Iron and Steel Institute; [www.steel.org](http://www.steel.org).
19. AITC - American Institute of Timber Construction; [www.aitc-glulam.org](http://www.aitc-glulam.org).
20. AMCA - Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; [www.amca.org](http://www.amca.org).
21. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; [www.ansi.org](http://www.ansi.org).
22. AOSA - Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.; [www.aosaseed.com](http://www.aosaseed.com).
23. APA - APA - The Engineered Wood Association; [www.apawood.org](http://www.apawood.org).
24. APA - Architectural Precast Association; [www.archprecast.org](http://www.archprecast.org).
25. API - American Petroleum Institute; [www.api.org](http://www.api.org).
26. ARI - Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
27. ARI - American Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
28. ARMA - Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; [www.asphaltroofing.org](http://www.asphaltroofing.org).
29. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers; [www.asce.org](http://www.asce.org).
30. ASCE/SEI - American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
31. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; [www.ashrae.org](http://www.ashrae.org).

32. ASME - ASME International; (American Society of Mechanical Engineers); [www.asme.org](http://www.asme.org).
33. ASSE - American Society of Safety Engineers (The); [www.asse.org](http://www.asse.org).
34. ASSE - American Society of Sanitary Engineering; [www.asse-plumbing.org](http://www.asse-plumbing.org).
35. ASTM - ASTM International; [www.astm.org](http://www.astm.org).
36. ATIS - Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; [www.atis.org](http://www.atis.org).
37. AWEA - American Wind Energy Association; [www.awea.org](http://www.awea.org).
38. AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute; [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
39. AWMAC - Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; [www.awmac.com](http://www.awmac.com).
40. AWPAA - American Wood Protection Association; [www.awpa.com](http://www.awpa.com).
41. AWS - American Welding Society; [www.aws.org](http://www.aws.org).
42. AWWA - American Water Works Association; [www.awwa.org](http://www.awwa.org).
43. BHMA - Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; [www.buildershardware.com](http://www.buildershardware.com).
44. BIA - Brick Industry Association (The); [www.gobrick.com](http://www.gobrick.com).
45. BICSI - BICSI, Inc.; [www.bicsi.org](http://www.bicsi.org).
46. BIFMA - BIFMA International; (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association); [www.bifma.org](http://www.bifma.org).
47. BISSC - Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
48. BWF - Badminton World Federation; (Formerly: International Badminton Federation); [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
49. CDA - Copper Development Association; [www.copper.org](http://www.copper.org).
50. CE - Conformite Europeenne; <http://ec.europa.eu/growth/single-market/ce-marking/>
51. CEA - Canadian Electricity Association; [www.electricity.ca](http://www.electricity.ca).
52. CEA - Consumer Electronics Association; [www.ce.org](http://www.ce.org).
53. CFFA - Chemical Fabrics and Film Association, Inc.; [www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com](http://www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com).
54. CFSEI - Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; [www.cfsei.org](http://www.cfsei.org).
55. CGA - Compressed Gas Association; [www.cganet.com](http://www.cganet.com).
56. CIMA - Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.cellulose.org](http://www.cellulose.org).
57. CISCA - Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; [www.cisca.org](http://www.cisca.org).
58. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; [www.cispi.org](http://www.cispi.org).
59. CLFMI - Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; [www.chainlinkinfo.org](http://www.chainlinkinfo.org).
60. CPA - Composite Panel Association; [www.pbmdf.com](http://www.pbmdf.com).
61. CRI - Carpet and Rug Institute (The); [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org).
62. CRRC - Cool Roof Rating Council; [www.coolroofs.org](http://www.coolroofs.org).
63. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; [www.crsi.org](http://www.crsi.org).
64. CSA - Canadian Standards Association; [www.csa.ca](http://www.csa.ca).
65. CSA - CSA International; (Formerly: IAS - International Approval Services); [www.csa-international.org](http://www.csa-international.org).
66. CSI - Construction Specifications Institute (The); [www.csinet.org](http://www.csinet.org).
67. CSSB - Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; [www.cedarbureau.org](http://www.cedarbureau.org).
68. CTI - Cooling Technology Institute; (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute); [www.cti.org](http://www.cti.org).
69. CWC - Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).
70. DASMA - Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; [www.dasma.com](http://www.dasma.com).
71. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute; [www.dhi.org](http://www.dhi.org).
72. ECA - Electronic Components Association; (See ECIA).
73. ECAMA - Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association; (See ECIA).
74. ECIA - Electronic Components Industry Association; [www.eciaonline.org](http://www.eciaonline.org).
75. EIA - Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
76. EIMA - EIFS Industry Members Association; [www.eima.com](http://www.eima.com).
77. EJMA - Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.ejma.org](http://www.ejma.org).
78. ESD - ESD Association; (Electrostatic Discharge Association); [www.esda.org](http://www.esda.org).
79. ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association; (See PLASA).
80. ETL - Intertek (See Intertek); [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
81. EVO - Efficiency Valuation Organization; [www.evo-world.org](http://www.evo-world.org).

82. FCI - Fluid Controls Institute; [www.fluidcontrolsinstitute.org](http://www.fluidcontrolsinstitute.org).
83. FIBA - Federation Internationale de Basketball; (The International Basketball Federation); [www.fiba.com](http://www.fiba.com).
84. FIVB - Federation Internationale de Volleyball; (The International Volleyball Federation); [www.fivb.org](http://www.fivb.org).
85. FM Approvals - FM Approvals LLC; [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
86. FM Global - FM Global; (Formerly: FMG - FM Global); [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
87. FRSA - Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.; [www.floridarooft.com](http://www.floridarooft.com).
88. FSA - Fluid Sealing Association; [www.fluidsealing.com](http://www.fluidsealing.com).
89. FSC - Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; [www.fscus.org](http://www.fscus.org).
90. GA - Gypsum Association; [www.gypsum.org](http://www.gypsum.org).
91. GANA - Glass Association of North America; [www.glasswebsite.com](http://www.glasswebsite.com).
92. GS - Green Seal; [www.greenseal.org](http://www.greenseal.org).
93. HI - Hydraulic Institute; [www.pumps.org](http://www.pumps.org).
94. HI/GAMA - Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association; (See AHRI).
95. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (See NAAMM).
96. HPVA - Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; [www.hpva.org](http://www.hpva.org).
97. HPW - H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.; [www.hpwhite.com](http://www.hpwhite.com).
98. IAPSC - International Association of Professional Security Consultants; [www.iapsc.org](http://www.iapsc.org).
99. IAS - International Accreditation Service; [www.iasonline.org](http://www.iasonline.org).
100. IAS - International Approval Services; (See CSA).
101. ICBO - International Conference of Building Officials; (See ICC).
102. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
103. ICEA - Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; [www.icea.net](http://www.icea.net).
104. ICPA - International Cast Polymer Alliance; [www.icpa-hq.org](http://www.icpa-hq.org).
105. ICRI - International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; [www.icri.org](http://www.icri.org).
106. IEC - International Electrotechnical Commission; [www.iec.ch](http://www.iec.ch).
107. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); [www.ieee.org](http://www.ieee.org).
108. IES - Illuminating Engineering Society; (Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America); [www.ies.org](http://www.ies.org).
109. IESNA - Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; (See IES).
110. IEST - Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; [www.iest.org](http://www.iest.org).
111. IGMA - Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; [www.igmaonline.org](http://www.igmaonline.org).
112. IGSHPA - International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; [www.igshpa.okstate.edu](http://www.igshpa.okstate.edu).
113. ILI - Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; [www.ili.ai](http://www.ili.ai).
114. Intertek - Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
115. ISA - International Society of Automation (The); (Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society); [www.isa.org](http://www.isa.org).
116. ISAS - Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The); (See ISA).
117. ISFA - International Surface Fabricators Association; (Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association); [www.isfanow.org](http://www.isfanow.org).
118. ISO - International Organization for Standardization; [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
119. ISSFA - International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; (See ISFA).
120. ITU - International Telecommunication Union; [www.itu.int/home](http://www.itu.int/home).
121. KCMA - Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; [www.kcma.org](http://www.kcma.org).
122. LMA - Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
123. LPI - Lightning Protection Institute; [www.lightning.org](http://www.lightning.org).
124. MBMA - Metal Building Manufacturers Association; [www.mbma.com](http://www.mbma.com).
125. MCA - Metal Construction Association; [www.metalconstruction.org](http://www.metalconstruction.org).
126. MFMA - Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.maplefloor.org](http://www.maplefloor.org).
127. MFMA - Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.metalframingmfg.org](http://www.metalframingmfg.org).
128. MHIA - Material Handling Industry of America; [www.mhia.org](http://www.mhia.org).
129. MIA - Marble Institute of America; [www.marble-institute.com](http://www.marble-institute.com).

130. MMPA - Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; [www.wmmpa.com](http://www.wmmpa.com).
131. MPI - Master Painters Institute; [www.paintinfo.com](http://www.paintinfo.com).
132. MSS - Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.; [www.mss-hq.org](http://www.mss-hq.org).
133. NAAMM - National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; [www.naamm.org](http://www.naamm.org).
134. NACE - NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); [www.nace.org](http://www.nace.org).
135. NADCA - National Air Duct Cleaners Association; [www.nadca.com](http://www.nadca.com).
136. NAIMA - North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.naima.org](http://www.naima.org).
137. NBGQA - National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; [www.nbgqa.com](http://www.nbgqa.com).
138. NBI - New Buildings Institute; [www.newbuildings.org](http://www.newbuildings.org).
139. NCAA - National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); [www.ncaa.org](http://www.ncaa.org).
140. NCMA - National Concrete Masonry Association; [www.ncma.org](http://www.ncma.org).
141. NEBB - National Environmental Balancing Bureau; [www.nebb.org](http://www.nebb.org).
142. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association; [www.necanet.org](http://www.necanet.org).
143. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; [www.nelma.org](http://www.nelma.org).
144. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association; [www.nema.org](http://www.nema.org).
145. NETA - InterNational Electrical Testing Association; [www.netaworld.org](http://www.netaworld.org).
146. NFHS - National Federation of State High School Associations; [www.nfhs.org](http://www.nfhs.org).
147. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association; [www.nfpa.org](http://www.nfpa.org).
148. NFPA - NFPA International; (See NFPA).
149. NFRC - National Fenestration Rating Council; [www.nfrc.org](http://www.nfrc.org).
150. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association; [www.nhla.com](http://www.nhla.com).
151. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority; [www.nlga.org](http://www.nlga.org).
152. NOFMA - National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (See NWFA).
153. NOMMA - National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; [www.nomma.org](http://www.nomma.org).
154. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association; [www.nrca.net](http://www.nrca.net).
155. NRMCA - National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; [www.nrmca.org](http://www.nrmca.org).
156. NSF - NSF International; [www.nsf.org](http://www.nsf.org).
157. NSPE - National Society of Professional Engineers; [www.nspe.org](http://www.nspe.org).
158. NSSGA - National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; [www.nssga.org](http://www.nssga.org).
159. NTMA - National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); [www.ntma.com](http://www.ntma.com).
160. NWFA - National Wood Flooring Association; [www.nwfa.org](http://www.nwfa.org).
161. PCI - Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; [www.pci.org](http://www.pci.org).
162. PDI - Plumbing & Drainage Institute; [www.pdionline.org](http://www.pdionline.org).
163. PLASA - PLASA; (Formerly: ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association); <http://www.plasa.org>.
164. RCSC - Research Council on Structural Connections; [www.boltcouncil.org](http://www.boltcouncil.org).
165. RFCI - Resilient Floor Covering Institute; [www.rfci.com](http://www.rfci.com).
166. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service; [www.redwoodinspection.com](http://www.redwoodinspection.com).
167. SAE - SAE International; [www.sae.org](http://www.sae.org).
168. SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; [www.scte.org](http://www.scte.org).
169. SDI - Steel Deck Institute; [www.sdi.org](http://www.sdi.org).
170. SDI - Steel Door Institute; [www.steeldoor.org](http://www.steeldoor.org).
171. SEFA - Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association (The); [www.sefalabs.com](http://www.sefalabs.com).
172. SEI/ASCE - Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
173. SIA - Security Industry Association; [www.siaonline.org](http://www.siaonline.org).
174. SJI - Steel Joist Institute; [www.steeljoist.org](http://www.steeljoist.org).
175. SMA - Screen Manufacturers Association; [www.smainfo.org](http://www.smainfo.org).
176. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; [www.smacna.org](http://www.smacna.org).
177. SMPTE - Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; [www.smpte.org](http://www.smpte.org).
178. SPFA - Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; [www.sprayfoam.org](http://www.sprayfoam.org).
179. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; [www.spib.org](http://www.spib.org).

180. SPRI - Single Ply Roofing Industry; [www.spri.org](http://www.spri.org).
181. SRCC - Solar Rating & Certification Corporation; [www.solar-rating.org](http://www.solar-rating.org).
182. SSINA - Specialty Steel Industry of North America; [www.ssina.com](http://www.ssina.com).
183. SSPC - SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; [www.sspc.org](http://www.sspc.org).
184. STI - Steel Tank Institute; [www.steeltank.com](http://www.steeltank.com).
185. SWI - Steel Window Institute; [www.steelwindows.com](http://www.steelwindows.com).
186. SWPA - Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; [www.swpa.org](http://www.swpa.org).
187. TCA - Tilt-Up Concrete Association; [www.tilt-up.org](http://www.tilt-up.org).
188. TCNA - Tile Council of North America, Inc.; [www.tileusa.com](http://www.tileusa.com).
189. TEMA - Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.tema.org](http://www.tema.org).
190. TIA - Telecommunications Industry Association (The); (Formerly: TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance); [www.tiaonline.org](http://www.tiaonline.org).
191. TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
192. TMS - The Masonry Society; [www.masonrysociety.org](http://www.masonrysociety.org).
193. TPI - Truss Plate Institute; [www.tpinst.org](http://www.tpinst.org).
194. TPI - Turfgrass Producers International; [www.turfgrasssod.org](http://www.turfgrasssod.org).
195. TRI - Tile Roofing Institute; [www.tilerroofing.org](http://www.tilerroofing.org).
196. UL - Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; <http://www.ul.com>.
197. UNI - Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; [www.uni-bell.org](http://www.uni-bell.org).
198. USAV - USA Volleyball; [www.usavolleyball.org](http://www.usavolleyball.org).
199. USGBC - U.S. Green Building Council; [www.usgbc.org](http://www.usgbc.org).
200. USITT - United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; [www.usitt.org](http://www.usitt.org).
201. WASTEC - Waste Equipment Technology Association; [www.wastec.org](http://www.wastec.org).
202. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; [www.wclib.org](http://www.wclib.org).
203. WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association; [www.wcmanet.org](http://www.wcmanet.org).
204. WDMA - Window & Door Manufacturers Association; [www.wdma.com](http://www.wdma.com).
205. WI - Woodwork Institute; [www.wicnet.org](http://www.wicnet.org).
206. WSRCA - Western States Roofing Contractors Association; [www.wsrca.com](http://www.wsrca.com).
207. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association; [www.wwpa.org](http://www.wwpa.org).

C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. DIN - Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V.; [www.din.de](http://www.din.de).
2. IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; [www.iapmo.org](http://www.iapmo.org).
3. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
4. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; [www.icc-es.org](http://www.icc-es.org).

D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. COE - Army Corps of Engineers; [www.usace.army.mil](http://www.usace.army.mil).
2. CPSC - Consumer Product Safety Commission; [www.cpsc.gov](http://www.cpsc.gov).
3. DOC - Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; [www.nist.gov](http://www.nist.gov).
4. DOD - Department of Defense; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
5. DOE - Department of Energy; [www.energy.gov](http://www.energy.gov).
6. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency; [www.epa.gov](http://www.epa.gov).
7. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).
8. FG - Federal Government Publications; [www.gpo.gov/fdsys](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys).



9. GSA - General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
  10. HUD - Department of Housing and Urban Development; [www.hud.gov](http://www.hud.gov).
  11. LBL - Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; [www.eetd.lbl.gov](http://www.eetd.lbl.gov).
  12. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; [www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov).
  13. SD - Department of State; [www.state.gov](http://www.state.gov).
  14. TRB - Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; [www.trb.org](http://www.trb.org).
  15. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; [www.ars.usda.gov](http://www.ars.usda.gov).
  16. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; [www.usda.gov](http://www.usda.gov).
  17. USDOJ - Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; [www.ojp.usdoj.gov](http://www.ojp.usdoj.gov).
  18. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; [www.usp.org](http://www.usp.org).
  19. USPS - United States Postal Service; [www.usps.com](http://www.usps.com).
- E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. CFR - Code of Federal Regulations; Available from Government Printing Office; [www.gpo.gov/fdsys](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys).
  2. DOD - Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
  3. DSCC - Defense Supply Center Columbus; (See FS).
  4. FED-STD - Federal Standard; (See FS).
  5. FS - Federal Specification; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
    - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; [www.dsp.dla.mil](http://www.dsp.dla.mil).
    - b. Available from General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
    - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; [www.wbdg.org/ccb](http://www.wbdg.org/ccb).
  6. MILSPEC - Military Specification and Standards; (See DOD).
  7. USAB - United States Access Board; [www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov).
  8. USATBCB - U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (See USAB).
- F. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. CBHF; State of California; Department of Consumer Affairs; Bureau of Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation; [www.bearhfti.ca.gov](http://www.bearhfti.ca.gov).
  2. CCR; California Code of Regulations; Office of Administrative Law; California Title 24 Energy Code; [www.calregs.com](http://www.calregs.com).
  3. CDHS; California Department of Health Services; (See CDPH).
  4. CDPH; California Department of Public Health; Indoor Air Quality Program; [www.cal-iaq.org](http://www.cal-iaq.org).
  5. CPUC; California Public Utilities Commission; [www.cpuc.ca.gov](http://www.cpuc.ca.gov).
  6. SCAQMD; South Coast Air Quality Management District; [www.aqmd.gov](http://www.aqmd.gov).

7. TFS; Texas A&M Forest Service; Sustainable Forestry and Economic Development;  
[www.txforestservation.tamu.edu](http://www.txforestservation.tamu.edu).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 42 00

## SECTION 01 45 29 - TESTING LAB SERVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes

1. Selection and payment.
2. Contractor submittals.
3. Laboratory responsibilities.
4. Laboratory reports.
5. Limits on testing laboratory authority
6. Contractor responsibilities.
7. Schedule of inspections and tests.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Title 24, CCR.
- B. ASTM D 3740 - Practice for Evaluation of Agencies in Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction.
- C. ASTM E 329 - Recommended Practice for Inspection and Testing Agencies for Concrete, Steel, and Bituminous Materials as Used in Construction.

#### 1.3 SELECTION AND PAYMENT

- A. Owner will employ and pay for services of an independent testing laboratory, approved by DSA, to perform inspection and testing as specified in this Section.
  1. Unless specified as the Owner's responsibility, all other testing, mix design preparation and related quality control and certification requirements shall be paid by the Contractor at no additional cost to Owner.
  2. All asphalt concrete mix designs shall be prepared at Contractor's cost and in compliance with Section 32 12 16.
- B. Only DSA, local legally constituted public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work, the Architect, and the Owner or their designated representatives shall be authorized to direct testing and inspection to determine compliance or non-compliance to the requirements of the Work.
  1. The Contractor shall reimburse the owner, through Contract adjustment, for inspection and testing costs caused by the following Contractor actions:
    - a. All testing costs incurred after initial test established non-conformance with contract requirements.
    - b. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's scheduling of work requiring inspections of less than 4 hours duration.



- c. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's failure to complete work requiring inspection within the scheduled duration period shown on Contractor's initial construction schedule.
- d. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's failure to order enough or required quantity of material.
- e. Inspection costs of items repaired following damage caused by Contractor.
- f. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's substitution of material, system or process, where such inspection and testing are required by the Architect, Owner or jurisdictional authority to demonstrate compliance with specified criteria.
- g. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's use of batch plant that does not comply with criteria waiving batch plant inspection.
- h. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's use of a supplier or subcontractor requiring inspection services to be performed at a location exceeding a 100-mile radius of project site.
- i. Inspection costs caused by Contractor's failure to complete work within normal hours and days, requiring overtime costs.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Laboratory: Authorized to operate in State in which Project is located, and currently approved by DSA.
- B. Laboratory Staff: Maintain a full-time registered Engineer on staff to review services.
- C. Testing Equipment: Calibrated at reasonable intervals with devices of an accuracy traceable to either National Bureau of Standards (NBS) Standards or accepted values of natural physical constants.
- D. Welding Inspectors shall be certified in accordance with AWS QC1 Standard for AWS Certification of Welding Inspectors.

#### 1.5 LABORATORY RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Perform specified inspection, sampling, and testing of Products in accordance with specified standards.
- B. Ascertain compliance of materials and mixes with requirements of Contract Documents.
- C. Promptly notify Architect of observed irregularities or non - conformance of Work or Products.
- D. Perform special inspections for areas of work as shown on drawings and specified in respective sections of the specifications in compliance with Section 4-333, Part 1, Title 24, CCR.
- E. Perform additional inspections and tests required by Architect.

#### 1.6 LABORATORY REPORTS

- A. After each inspection and test, promptly submit copies of laboratory report to Architect, Structural Engineer, Contractor, Owner, Project Inspector, DSA, and other parties as required by referenced sections and applicable regulations.

- B. Include:
  - 1. Date issued.
  - 2. Project title, project number and DSA Application Number
  - 3. Name of inspector.
  - 4. Date and time of sampling or inspection.
  - 5. Method of obtaining sample.
  - 6. Identification of product and Specifications section.
  - 7. Location in the Project.
  - 8. Type of inspection or test.
  - 9. Date of test.
  - 10. Results of tests.
  - 11. Conformance with Contract Documents.
  - 12. Indicate samples taken but not tested.
- C. When requested by Architect, provide interpretation of test results.
- D. Testing agency shall provide verified reports in compliance with Chapter 4, Part 1, Section 4-336 DSA, of Title 24, CCR.
  - 1. Provide such reports in duplicate, on approved form.
  - 2. Provide reports each time work on the project is suspended and at completion of project.
  - 3. Reports shall document actions taken, tests made, and other aspects of the construction operations for the period prescribed.

#### 1.7 LIMITS-ON TESTING LABORATORY AUTHORITY

- A. Laboratory may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on requirements of Contract Documents.
- B. Laboratory may not approve or accept any portion of the Work.
- C. Laboratory may not assume any duties of Contractor.
- D. Laboratory has no authority to stop the Work.

#### 1.8 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Deliver or make available to laboratory at designated location, adequate samples of materials proposed to be used which require testing, along with proposed mix designs.
- B. Do not incorporate material or products requiring compliance with specified testing and inspection criteria without receiving documentation of compliance from approved agency.
- C. Cooperate with laboratory personnel and provide access to the Work and to manufacturer's facilities.
- D. Provide incidental labor and facilities to provide access to Work to be tested, to assist testing laboratory in obtaining and handling samples, to obtain and handle samples at the site or at source of Products to be tested, to facilitate tests and inspections, storage and curing of test samples.
  - 1. Upon completion of inspection, testing, sample taking and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.

2. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities and protect repaired construction.
  3. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for inspection, testing, or similar services.
- E. Contractor shall prepare integrated schedule for the course of construction showing all required inspection and testing. Determine the time required for the laboratory to perform testing and to issue reports and findings. Provide all required testing and inspection time within the construction schedule.
1. Notify Architect, Project Inspector and laboratory minimum two working days prior to expected time for operations requiring inspection and testing services.
  2. Coordinate the sequence of activities to accommodate required services with a minimum of delay. Coordinate activities to avoid the necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate inspections and tests.
- F. Notify the Owner's representative an enough time in advance of the manufacture or material to be supplied by Owner under the Contract Documents, which must by terms of the Contract be tested, in order that the Owner may arrange for testing at the source of supply.

#### 1.9 SCHEDULE OF INSPECTIONS AND TESTS BY OWNER'S TESTING AGENCY

- A. Site Excavation, Fills and Foundation Preparation (Title 24, Part 2)
1. All earthwork, including earth fill compaction - 1705A.6
  2. Inspection of Excavation/fill Installation - 1705A.6
- B. Concrete (Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 19A)
1. Materials
    - a. Portland Cement - 1705A.3, 1903A, 1913A. 1
    - b. Concrete Aggregates - 1705A.3, 1903A, 1903A.6.
    - c. Reinforcing Bars - 1705A.3, 1705A.12.1, 1903A.8, 1913A.2
    - d. Admixtures- 1903A
  2. Concrete Quality
    - a. Proportions of Concrete - 1904A, 1905A. 1
    - b. Strength Tests - 1905A. 1.2, 19 13A. 1
  3. Concrete Inspection
    - a. Job Site Inspection - 1705A.3.5
    - b. Batch Plant Inspection - 1705A.3.2
    - c. Waiver of Batch Plant Inspection - 1705A.3.3
    - d. Reinforcing Bar Welding Inspection - 1705A.2.2.1.2
    - e. Post-Installed Anchors in Concrete - 191 3A.7
- C. Wood (Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 23)
1. Materials

- a. Lumber and Plywood – 2303.1
  - b. Glued Laminated Members – 2303.1.3
- 2. Inspection
  - a. Glued Laminated Fabrication – 1705A.5.4; 2303.1.3
  - b. Timber Connections – 1705A.5.6
  - c. Manufactured Trusses – 1705A.5.2; 1705A.5.3; 2303.4.7
- D. Structural Steel (Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 22A)
  - 1. Materials
    - a. Structural Steel - 2205A. 1
    - b. Cold Formed Steel 2210A
    - c. Material Identification - 2203A. 1
  - 2. Structural Steel Quality
    - a. High Strength Bolts, Nuts & Washers - 2213A.1
    - b. Tests of Structural & Cold Formed Steel - 1705A.2.2
    - c. Tests of End Welded Studs - 22 13A.2
  - 3. Structural Steel Inspection
    - a. Shop Fabrication Inspection - 1704A.2.5
    - b. High Strength Bolt Inspection - 1705A.2.1
    - c. Welding Inspection - 1705A.2.2.1, 1705A.2.2.5
    - d. Nelson Stud Welding - 22 13A.2
- E. Miscellaneous Fasteners
  - 1. Anchorage test methods as shown on drawings and specified in respective sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 014529

## SECTION 01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

#### 1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- C. Erosion and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- D. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- E. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold.
- F. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Include the following:

1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
4. Waste-handling procedures.
5. Other dust-control measures.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with CEC.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top rails.

## 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of enough size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  2. Conference room of enough size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack and marker boards.
  3. Drinking water and private toilet.
  4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
  5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.

- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
  - 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.3 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
  - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
  - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.

3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during Project.
  4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- C. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- D. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined enough to accommodate construction operations.
  2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- E. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- F. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
  2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
  3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  4. Remove standing water from decks.
  5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.



4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  5. Do not install material that is wet.
  6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
  3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
    - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
    - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
    - c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

### 3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 01 50 00

## SECTION 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
  - 2. Section 01 42 00 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved by Architect through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.
- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. If a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select

another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications. Submit a comparable product request, if applicable.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Request Submittal: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
  - 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    - a. Form of Architect's Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
    - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
  - 1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
  - 2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
  - 1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
  - 2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service-connected or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
    - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
    - b. Model and serial number.
    - c. Capacity.
    - d. Speed.

e. Ratings.

3. See individual identification sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional identification requirements.

## 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
  4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
  6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
  7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

## 1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.

1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and requirements for submitting special warranties.

C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.

1. Pursuant to 40 Code of Federal Regulations 763.99(a)(7), no asbestos containing materials are allowed in any building material for the project. Contractor to provide certifications that all materials are free from any asbestos-containing building materials.
2. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
3. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
4. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
5. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
6. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
7. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
  - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect through Construction Manager in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect; whose determination is final.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following: ..."
2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.

- a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following: ..."
  3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following: ..."
  4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, which complies with requirements.
    - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: ..."
  5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: ..."
  6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, which complies with requirements.
    - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: ..."
  7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
    - a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.

- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant product qualities include attributes such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
  2. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  3. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  4. Samples, if requested.
- B. Submittal Requirements: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 60 00

## SECTION 01 73 00 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
  - 3. Installation of the Work.
  - 4. Cutting and patching.
  - 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
  - 6. Progress cleaning.
  - 7. Starting and adjusting.
  - 8. Protection of installed construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for limits on use of Project site.
  - 2. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
  - 3. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
  - 4. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for demolition and removal of selected portions of the building.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Cutting and Patching Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Prior to commencing work requiring cutting and patching, review extent of cutting and patching anticipated and examine procedures for ensuring satisfactory result from cutting



and patching work. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cutting and patching to attend, including the following:

- a. Contractor's superintendent.
  - b. Trade supervisor responsible for cutting operations.
  - c. Trade supervisor(s) responsible for patching of each type of substrate.
  - d. Mechanical, electrical, and utilities subcontractors' supervisors, to the extent each trade is affecting by cutting and patching operations.
2. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor or professional engineer.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor or professional engineer certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Cutting and Patching Plan: Submit plan describing procedures at least 10 days prior to the time cutting and patching will be performed. Include the following information:
  1. Extent: Describe reason for and extent of each occurrence of cutting and patching.
  2. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building appearance and other significant visual elements.
  3. Products: List products to be used for patching and firms or entities that will perform patching work.
  4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
  5. Utilities and Mechanical and Electrical Systems: List services and systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services and systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate length of time permanent services and systems will be disrupted.
    - a. Include description of provisions for temporary services and systems during interruption of permanent services and systems.
- D. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.
- E. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor or professional engineer.
- F. Final Property Survey: Submit 10 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.

1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
  2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
    - b. Membranes and flashings.
    - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
    - d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
    - e. Equipment supports.
    - f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
    - g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
  4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with sustainable design requirements.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, fully use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces possible.
1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
  - 1. Description of the Work.
  - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
  - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
  - 4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.

- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect and Construction Manager promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor or professional engineer to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
  - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
  - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  - 6. Notify Architect and Construction Manager when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect and Construction Manager.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect or Construction Manager. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect and Construction Manager before proceeding.

2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points enough to locate the Work.
  3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Where possible, select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned

with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.

1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work.
1. Comply with Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for repairing or removing and replacing defective Work.

### 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching according to requirements in Section 01 10 00 "Summary."
- F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.
- G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.

1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

### 3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.

1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

### 3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.



- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### 3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

### 3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 01 73 00

## SECTION 01 74 19 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
  - 2. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
  - 3. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for disposition of waste resulting from partial demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
- C. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
- E. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- F. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Achieve end-of-Project rates for salvage/recycling of 50 percent by weight of total non-hazardous solid waste generated by the Work. Practice efficient waste management in the use of materials in the course of the Work. Use all reasonable means to divert construction and

demolition waste from landfills and incinerators. Facilitate recycling and salvage of materials, including the following:

1. Demolition Waste:

- a. Asphalt paving.
- b. Concrete.
- c. Concrete reinforcing steel.
- d. Brick.
- e. Concrete masonry units.
- f. Wood studs.
- g. Wood joists.
- h. Plywood and oriented strand board.
- i. Wood paneling.
- j. Wood trim.
- k. Structural and miscellaneous steel.
- l. Rough hardware.
- m. Roofing.
- n. Insulation.
- o. Doors and frames.
- p. Door hardware.
- q. Windows.
- r. Glazing.
- s. Metal studs.
- t. Gypsum board.
- u. Acoustical tile and panels.
- v. Carpet.
- w. Carpet pad.
- x. Demountable partitions.
- y. Equipment.
- z. Cabinets.
- aa. Plumbing fixtures.
- bb. Piping.
- cc. Supports and hangers.
- dd. Valves.
- ee. Sprinklers.
- ff. Mechanical equipment.
- gg. Refrigerants.
- hh. Electrical conduit.
- ii. Copper wiring.
- jj. Lighting fixtures.
- kk. Lamps.
- ll. Ballasts.
- mm. Electrical devices.

2. Construction Waste:

- a. Masonry and CMU.
- b. Lumber.
- c. Wood sheet materials.
- d. Wood trim.
- e. Metals.
- f. Roofing.
- g. Insulation.
- h. Carpet and pad.

- i. Gypsum board.
- j. Piping.
- k. Electrical conduit.
- l. Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated in "General" Paragraph above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
  - 1) Paper.
  - 2) Cardboard.
  - 3) Boxes.
  - 4) Plastic sheet and film.
  - 5) Polystyrene packaging.
  - 6) Wood crates.
  - 7) Plastic pails.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Reduction Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit report. Use Form CWM-7 for construction waste and Form CWM-8 for demolition waste. Include the following information:
  - 1. Material category.
  - 2. Generation point of waste.
  - 3. Total quantity of waste in tons.
  - 4. Quantity of waste salvaged, both estimated and actual in tons.
  - 5. Quantity of waste recycled, both estimated and actual in tons.
  - 6. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) in tons.
  - 7. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) as a percentage of total waste.
- B. Waste Reduction Calculations: Before request for Substantial Completion, submit calculated end-of-Project rates for salvage, recycling, and disposal as a percentage of total waste generated by the Work.
- C. Records of Donations: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste donated to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
- D. Records of Sales: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste sold to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
- E. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
- F. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

- G. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- H. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Waste Management Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of waste management coordinator.
  - 2. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
  - 3. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
  - 4. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
  - 5. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

#### 1.8 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. General: Develop a waste management plan according to ASTM E 1609 and requirements in this Section. Plan shall consist of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Distinguish between demolition and construction waste. Indicate quantities by weight or volume but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
- B. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of demolition and construction waste generated by the Work. Use Form CWM-1 for construction waste and Form CWM-2 for demolition waste. Include estimated quantities and assumptions for estimates.
- C. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Use Form CWM-3 for construction waste and Form CWM-4 for demolition waste. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.
  - 1. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in this Project, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporation into the Work.
  - 2. Salvaged Materials for Sale: For materials that will be sold to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.

3. Salvaged Materials for Donation: For materials that will be donated to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  4. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  5. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
  6. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Include method that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location where materials separation will be performed.
- D. Cost/Revenue Analysis: Indicate total cost of waste disposal as if there was no waste management plan and net additional cost or net savings resulting from implementing waste management plan. Use Form CWM-5 for construction waste and Form CWM-6 for demolition waste. Include the following:
1. Total quantity of waste.
  2. Estimated cost of disposal (cost per unit). Include hauling and tipping fees and cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
  3. Total cost of disposal (with no waste management).
  4. Revenue from salvaged materials.
  5. Revenue from recycled materials.
  6. Savings in hauling and tipping fees by donating materials.
  7. Savings in hauling and tipping fees that are avoided.
  8. Handling and transportation costs. Include cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
  9. Net additional cost or net savings from waste management plan.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan.
- C. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work.
1. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
  2. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.

- D. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
  - 2. Comply with Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

### 3.2 SALVAGING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Salvaged Items for Reuse in the Work: Salvage items for reuse and handle as follows:
  - 1. Clean salvaged items.
  - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers with label indicating elements, date of removal, quantity, and location where removed.
  - 3. Store items in a secure area until installation.
  - 4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  - 5. Install salvaged items to comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make items functional for use indicated.
- B. Salvaged Items for Donation: Permitted on Project site.
- C. Salvaged Items for Owner's Use: Salvage items for Owner's use and handle as follows:
  - 1. Clean salvaged items.
  - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers with label indicating elements, date of removal, quantity, and location where removed.
  - 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  - 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
  - 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Doors and Hardware: Brace open end of door frames. Except for removing door closers, leave door hardware attached to doors.
- E. Equipment: Drain tanks, piping, and fixtures. Seal openings with caps or plugs. Protect equipment from exposure to weather.
- F. Plumbing Fixtures: Separate by type and size.
- G. Lighting Fixtures: Separate lamps by type and protect from breakage.
- H. Electrical Devices: Separate switches, receptacles, switchgear, transformers, meters, panelboards, circuit breakers, and other devices by type.

### 3.3 RECYCLING DEMOLITION AND CONSTRUCTION WASTE, GENERAL

- A. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
- B. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Owner.

- C. Preparation of Waste: Prepare and maintain recyclable waste materials according to recycling or reuse facility requirements. Maintain materials free of dirt, adhesives, solvents, petroleum contamination, and other substances deleterious to the recycling process.
- D. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical according to approved construction waste management plan.
  - 1. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
    - a. Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
  - 2. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  - 3. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
  - 4. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
  - 5. Remove recyclable waste from Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.

### 3.4 RECYCLING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Asphalt Paving: Grind asphalt to maximum 4-inch size.
- B. Asphalt Paving: Break up and transport paving to asphalt-recycling facility.
- C. Concrete: Remove reinforcement and other metals from concrete and sort with other metals.
  - 1. Pulverize concrete to maximum 4-inch size.
- D. Masonry: Remove metal reinforcement, anchors, and ties from masonry and sort with other metals.
  - 1. Pulverize masonry to maximum 4-inch size.
    - a. Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Section 32 93 00 "Planting Operations" for use as mineral mulch.
  - 2. Clean and stack undamaged, whole masonry units on wood pallets.
- E. Wood Materials: Sort and stack members according to size, type, and length. Separate lumber, engineered wood products, panel products, and treated wood materials.
- F. Metals: Separate metals by type.
  - 1. Structural Steel: Stack members according to size, type of member, and length.
  - 2. Remove and dispose of bolts, nuts, washers, and other rough hardware.
- G. Asphalt Shingle Roofing: Separate organic and glass-fiber asphalt shingles and felts. Remove and dispose of nails, staples, and accessories.



- H. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets or in container and store in a dry location. Remove edge trim and sort with other metals. Remove and dispose of fasteners.
- I. Acoustical Ceiling Panels and Tile: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
- J. Metal Suspension System: Separate metal members including trim, and other metals from acoustical panels and tile and sort with other metals.
- K. Carpet and Pad: Roll large pieces tightly after removing debris, trash, adhesive, and tack strips.
  - 1. Store clean, dry carpet and pad in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
- L. Carpet Tile: Remove debris, trash, and adhesive.
  - 1. Stack tile on pallet and store clean, dry carpet in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
- M. Piping: Reduce piping to straight lengths and store by type and size. Separate supports, hangers, valves, sprinklers, and other components by type and size.
- N. Conduit: Reduce conduit to straight lengths and store by type and size.

### 3.5 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE

- A. Packaging:
  - 1. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
  - 2. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.
  - 3. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
  - 4. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
- B. Wood Materials:
  - 1. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into small pieces.
  - 2. Clean Sawdust: Bag sawdust that does not contain painted or treated wood.
    - a. Comply with requirements in Section 32 93 00 "Planting Operations" for use of clean sawdust as organic mulch.
- C. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets or in container and store in a dry location.
  - 1. Clean Gypsum Board: Grind scraps of clean gypsum board using small mobile chipper or hammer mill. Screen out paper after grinding.
    - a. Comply with requirements in Section 32 93 00 "Planting Operations" for use of clean ground gypsum board as inorganic soil amendment.

### 3.6 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- C. Burning: Burning of waste materials is permitted only at designated areas on Owner's property, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.
- D. Disposal: Remove waste materials and dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- E. Disposal: Remove waste materials from Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

### 3.7 ATTACHMENTS

- A. Form CWM-1 for construction waste identification.
- B. Form CWM-2 for demolition waste identification.
- C. Form CWM-3 for construction waste reduction work plan.
- D. Form CWM-4 for demolition waste reduction work plan.
- E. Form CWM-5 cost/revenue analysis of construction waste reduction work plan.
- F. Form CWM-6 cost/revenue analysis of demolition waste reduction work plan.
- G. Form CWM-7 for construction waste
- H. Form CWM-8 for demolition waste.

END OF SECTION 01 74 19

## SECTION 01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
  - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 2. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 3. Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain products, equipment, and systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

#### 1.5 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect Construction Manager. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
    - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Construction Manager's signature for receipt of submittals.
  5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
  6. Submit sustainable design submittals not previously submitted.
  7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
  5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
  6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
  7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
  10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect and Construction Manager will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

#### 1.6 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
  5. Submit final completion photographic documentation.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect and Construction Manager will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

#### 1.7 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order.
  2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Page number.
  4. Submit list of incomplete items in one of the following formats:
    - a. MS Excel electronic file. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return annotated file.

- b. PDF electronic file. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return annotated file.
- c. Web-based project software upload. Utilize software feature for creating and updating list of incomplete items (punch list).

## 1.8 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
  - 1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
- E. Warranties in Paper Form:
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
- F. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
    - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
    - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
    - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
    - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
    - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
    - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
    - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
    - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
      - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA ACR. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
    - p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
    - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair, or remove and replace, defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
  - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
  - 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
  - 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
  - 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 01 77 00



## SECTION 01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
  - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Product maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements" for verification and compilation of data into operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics like a system.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1. Architect and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
  - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:

1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- C. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will return copy with comments.
  1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.
- D. Comply with Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

#### 1.5 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
  1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

#### 1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  1. Title page.
  2. Table of contents.
  3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
  1. Subject matter included in manual.
  2. Name and address of Project.
  3. Name and address of Owner.
  4. Date of submittal.
  5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
  7. Name and contact information for Architect.
  8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.

9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

#### 1.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY MANUAL

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. List items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include the following:
1. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
  2. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
  3. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

#### 1.8 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
1. Type of emergency.
  2. Emergency instructions.
  3. Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
1. Fire.
  2. Flood.

3. Gas leak.
  4. Water leak.
  5. Power failure.
  6. Water outage.
  7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  8. Chemical release or spill.
- D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Instructions on stopping.
  2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

#### 1.9 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor have delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.
  7. Control diagrams.
  8. Piped system diagrams.
  9. Precautions against improper use.
  10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- C. Descriptions: Include the following:
1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  4. Equipment function.
  5. Operating characteristics.

6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed and identify color coding where required for identification.

#### 1.10 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.

C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:

1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify

each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.

- a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
  2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
1. Test and inspection instructions.
  2. Troubleshooting guide.
  3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.

#### 1.11 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4. Material and chemical composition.
  - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 78 23

## SECTION 01 78 39 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for final property survey.
  - 2. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 3. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints.
      - 2) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
    - b. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.



- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report weekly indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

#### 1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
  - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order or Work Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  - 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
  2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
  3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
  4. Architect will furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
    - a. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
    - b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- C. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
  2. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
  3. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

## 1.5 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
1. Give attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
  5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Specifications.

## 1.6 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
  - 1. Give attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  - 3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Product Data.
  - 1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

## 1.7 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up miscellaneous record submittals.
  - 1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store record documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 01 78 39

## SECTION 01 79 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Demonstration and training video recordings.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Qualification Data: For facilitator and instructor.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

- C. Pre-construction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
  - 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
  - 3. Review required content of instruction.
  - 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

#### 1.6 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
  - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.
    - e. Equipment function.
    - f. Operating characteristics.
    - g. Limiting conditions.
    - h. Performance curves.
  - 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    - a. Emergency manuals.
    - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
    - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
    - d. Product maintenance manuals.
    - e. Project Record Documents.

- f. Identification systems.
  - g. Warranties and bonds.
  - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
- 3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
  - b. Instructions on stopping.
  - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
  - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- 4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Startup procedures.
  - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - d. Regulation and control procedures.
  - e. Control sequences.
  - f. Safety procedures.
  - g. Instructions on stopping.
  - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- 5. Adjustments: Include the following:
  - a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
- 6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
- 7. Maintenance: Include the following:
  - a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
- 8. Repairs: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnosis instructions.

- b. Repair instructions.
- c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
- d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
- e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

## 1.7 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

## 1.8 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
  - 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
  - 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  - 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, , through Construction Manager, with at least seven days' advance notice.
- D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- E. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and remove from Project site. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 01 79 00

## SECTION 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. OPR and BoD documentation are included by reference for information only.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements that apply to implementation of commissioning without regard to specific systems, assemblies, or components.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230800 "Commissioning of HVAC" for commissioning process activities for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BoD: Basis of Design. A document that records concepts, calculations, decisions, and product selections used to meet the OPR and to satisfy applicable regulatory requirements, standards, and guidelines. The document includes both narrative descriptions and lists of individual items that support the design process.
- B. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.
- C. CxA: Commissioning Authority.
- D. OPR: Owner's Project Requirements. A document that details the functional requirements of a project and the expectations of how it will be used and operated. These include Project goals, measurable performance criteria, cost considerations, benchmarks, success criteria, and supporting information.
- E. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

#### 1.4 COMMISSIONING TEAM

- A. Members Appointed by Contractor(s): Individuals, each having the authority to act on behalf of the entity he or she represents, explicitly organized to implement the commissioning process through coordinated action. The commissioning team shall consist of, but not be limited to, representatives of Contractor, including Project superintendent and subcontractors, installers, suppliers, and specialists deemed appropriate by the CxA.



B. Members Appointed by Owner:

1. CxA: The designated person, company, or entity that plans, schedules, and coordinates the commissioning team to implement the commissioning process. Owner will engage the CxA under a separate contract.
2. Representatives of the facility user and operation and maintenance personnel.
3. Architect and engineering design professionals.

1.5 OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide the OPR documentation to the CxA and Contractor for information and use.
- B. Assign operation and maintenance personnel and schedule them to participate in commissioning team activities.
- C. Provide the BoD documentation, prepared by Architect and approved by Owner, to the CxA and Contractor for use in developing the commissioning plan, systems manual, and operation and maintenance training plan.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Contractor shall assign representatives with expertise and authority to act on its behalf and shall schedule them to participate in and perform commissioning process activities including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Evaluate performance deficiencies identified in test reports and, in collaboration with entity responsible for system and equipment installation, recommend corrective action.
  2. Cooperate with the CxA for resolution of issues recorded in the Issues Log.
  3. Attend commissioning team meetings held on a monthly basis.
  4. Integrate and coordinate commissioning process activities with construction schedule.
  5. Review and accept construction checklists provided by the CxA.
  6. Complete electronic construction checklists as Work is completed and provide to the Commissioning Authority on a weekly basis.
  7. Review and accept commissioning process test procedures provided by the Commissioning Authority.
  8. Complete commissioning process test procedures.

1.7 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Organize and lead the commissioning team.
- B. Provide commissioning plan.
- C. Convene commissioning team meetings.
- D. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures.
- E. Verify the execution of commissioning process activities using random sampling. The sampling rate may vary from 1 to 100 percent. Verification will include, but is not limited to, equipment submittals, construction checklists, training, operating and maintenance data, tests, and test

reports to verify compliance with the OPR. When a random sample does not meet the requirement, the CxA will report the failure in the Issues Log.

- F. Prepare and maintain the Issues Log.
- G. Prepare and maintain completed construction checklist log.
- H. Witness systems, assemblies, equipment, and component startup.
- I. Compile test data, inspection reports, and certificates; include them in the systems manual and commissioning process report.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 91 13

## SECTION 02 41 19 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
  - 2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
  - 3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
  - 2. Division 01 sections for cutting and patching procedures.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to a location designated by the District.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

## 1.5 PREDEMOLITION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  - 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
  - 3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
  - 5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Pre-demolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition operations.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of the campus and buildings immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials:
  - 1. Hazardous materials if present will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
  - 2. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.

## SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

02 41 19-2

- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.

- 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities and fire department access ways in service during selective demolition operations.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials and using approved contractors so as not to void existing warranties. Notify warrantor before proceeding.
- B. Notify warrantor on completion of selective demolition, and obtain documentation verifying that existing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

#### 1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.
- B. Obtain owner's approval of the selective demolition schedule prior to proceeding with the work.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards:
  - 1. Comply with ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.
  - 2. Comply with Title 24, Part 9, California Fire Code Fire Safety.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Utilities serving the site and buildings outside of the scope of Work or phase are to be maintained in full and continuous operation unless prior written approval of the Owner is obtained.
- B. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.

### SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

02 41 19-3

- C. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
- D. Perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective building demolition operations.
  - 1. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.
- E. Verify that hazardous materials have been remediated before proceeding with building demolition operations.
- F. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs or video.
  - 1. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs or video of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
  - 2. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
  - 2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
  - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building and site.
  - 4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
    - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
    - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
    - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.

### SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

02 41 19-4

- d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
- e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
- g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  - 3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  - 4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  - 5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Division 01 sections.
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  - 1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.
- C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  - 1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  - 2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  - 3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.

4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  5. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 72 hours after flame-cutting operations.
  6. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  7. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  8. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  9. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  10. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
1. Clean salvaged items.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
  5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.
- 3.6 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS
- A. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Using power-driven saw, cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch at junctures with construction to remain. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.
- B. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals using power-driven saw, and then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- C. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.



- D. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, and then break up and remove.

### 3.7 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and recycle or dispose of them according to requirements in Division 01 and in a manner complying with 2016 CAL Green.
  - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  - 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 02 41 19

## SECTION 03 10 00 - CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Form-facing material for cast-in-place and architectural concrete.
  - 2. Form liners.
  - 3. Shoring, bracing, and anchoring.
  - 4. Supply and installation of framework required for all cast-in-place concrete.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 014000 Quality Requirements.
  - 2. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place concrete" for concrete materials, mixture design, and placement procedures.
  - 3. Section 033001 "Site Cast-in-Place Concrete"
  - 4. Section 033361 "Ground Concrete Finish"
  - 5. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete pavement and walks.
- C. Reference Documents:
  - 1. Building Code: CBC – 2022 California Building Code.
  - 2. ACI - American Concrete Institute,
    - a. ACI 117 "Standard Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials".
    - b. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete for Buildings".
    - c. ACI 302.1R "Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction".
    - d. ACI 303.1 "Standard Specification for Cast-in-Place Architectural Concrete"
    - e. ACI 347.3R "Guide to Formed Concrete Surfaces".
  - 3. ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials, designations referenced herein.
  - 4. ICC-ES - International Code Council Evaluation Services, Evaluation Reports referenced herein.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Form-Facing Material: Temporary structure or mold for the support of concrete while the concrete is setting and gaining sufficient strength to be self-supporting.
- B. Formwork: The total system of support of freshly placed concrete, including the mold or sheathing that contacts the concrete, as well as supporting members, hardware, and necessary bracing.

## CONCRETE FORMWORK AND ACCESSORIES

03 10 00-1

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: See Section 033000 for preinstallation conference requirements.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each of the following:
  - 1. Exposed surface form-facing material.
  - 2. Concealed surface form-facing material.
  - 3. Forms for cylindrical columns.
  - 4. Pan-type forms.
  - 5. Void forms.
  - 6. Form liners.
  - 7. Insulating concrete forms.
  - 8. Form ties.
  - 9. Chamfer strips grooves and reveals.
  - 10. Waterstops.
  - 11. Pre-formed construction joints.
  - 12. Form-release agent.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepared by, and signed and sealed by, a qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation, detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of forms.
  - 1. For exposed vertical concrete walls, indicate dimensions and form tie locations.
  - 2. Indicate dimension and locations of construction and movement joints required to construct the structure in accordance with ACI 301, ACI 347, and ACI 303.1.
    - a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.
  - 3. Indicate location of waterstops.
  - 4. Indicate form liner layout and form line termination details.
  - 5. Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping of forms, shoring removal, and reshoring installation and removal.
- C. Samples:
  - 1. Waterstops.
  - 2. Form Liners: 12-inch by 12-inch (305-mm by 305-mm) sample, indicating texture.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Plans, sections and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Provide layout of all items to be embed in concrete including supports for mechanical, plumbing and electrical systems, architectural cladding and finishes, etc.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing and inspection agency.
- B. Research Reports: For insulating concrete forms indicating compliance with International Code Council Acceptance Criteria AC308.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

### CONCRETE FORMWORK AND ACCESSORIES

03 10 00-2

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing and Inspection Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Form materials: Protect materials from damage, weather and contamination such as rust, grease, oil and dirt. Contaminated formwork materials shall not be used or reused unless thoroughly cleaned and approved for use by the Architect.
- B. Form Liners: Store form liners under cover to protect from sunlight.
- C. Insulating Concrete Forms: Store forms off ground and under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.
- D. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Concrete Formwork: Design, engineer, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, shores, and reshores in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M), to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads, so that resulting concrete conforms to the required shapes, lines, and dimensions.
  - 1. Design wood panel forms in accordance with APA's "Concrete Forming Design/Construction Guide."
  - 2. Design formwork to limit deflection of form-facing material to 1/240 of center-to-center spacing of supports.
    - a. For architectural concrete specified in Section 033300 "Architectural Concrete," limit deflection of form-facing material, studs, and walers to 0.0025 times their respective clear spans (L/400).
- B. Design, engineer, erect, shore, brace, and maintain insulating concrete forms in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M), to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads, so that resulting concrete conforms to the required shapes, lines, and dimensions.
  - 1. Design cross ties to transfer the effects of the following loads to the cast-in-place concrete core:
    - a. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
      - 1) Horizontal Deflection Limit: Not more than 1/360 of the wall height.

### 2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. As-Cast Surface Form-Facing Material:
  - 1. Provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.

## CONCRETE FORMWORK AND ACCESSORIES

03 10 00-3

3. Acceptable Materials: As required to comply with Surface Finish designations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete, and as follows:
  - a. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
  - b. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
    - 1) APA HDO (high-density overlay).
    - 2) APA MDO (medium-density overlay); mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
    - 3) APA Structural 1 Plyform, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
    - 4) APA Plyform Class I, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
- B. Concealed Surface Form-Facing Material: Lumber, plywood, metal, plastic, or another approved material.
  1. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class.
  1. Provide forms with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
- D. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
- E. Void Forms:
  1. Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.
  2. Expanded polystyrene manufactured in accordance with ASTM C578

## 2.3 WATERSTOPS

- A. Flexible Rubber Waterstops: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers CRD-C 513, with factory-installed metal eyelets, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints, with factory fabricated corners, intersections, and directional changes.
  1. Profile: Flat dumbbell with center bulb
  2. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick
- B. Chemically Resistant Flexible Waterstops: Thermoplastic elastomer rubber waterstops with factory-installed metal eyelets, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints; resistant to oils, solvents, and chemicals, with factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
  1. Profile: Flat dumbbell with center bulb
  2. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick
- C. Flexible PVC Waterstops: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers CRD-C 572, with factory-installed metal eyelets, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints, with factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
  1. Profile: Flat dumbbell with center bulb
  2. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick
- D. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch

## CONCRETE FORMWORK AND ACCESSORIES

03 10 00-4

- E. Self-Expanding Rubber Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, bentonite-free hydrophilic polymer-modified chloroprene rubber, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/8 by 3/4 inch

## 2.4 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.022-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- B. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.034 inch (0.85 mm) thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- D. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
- E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
  - 2. Form release agent for form liners shall be acceptable to form liner manufacturer.
- F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
  - 1. Furnish units that leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch (25 mm) to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
  - 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, leave holes no larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter in concrete surface.
  - 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF FORMWORK

- A. Comply with ACI 301.
- B. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- C. Construct formwork, so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117 and to comply with the Surface Finish designations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" and Section 033543 "Polished Concrete Finishing."
- D. Limit concrete surface irregularities as follows:

## CONCRETE FORMWORK AND ACCESSORIES

03 10 00-5

1. Surface Finish-3.0: ACI 117 Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
  2. Surface Finish-2.0: ACI 117 Class B, 1/4 inch for standard-formed finished surfaces
  3. Surface Finish-1.0: ACI 117 Class D, 1 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- E. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
1. Minimize joints.
  2. Exposed Concrete: Symmetrically align joints in forms.
- F. Construct removable forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces.
1. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces.
  2. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
  3. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and other accessories, for easy removal.
- G. Do not use rust-stained, steel, form-facing material.
- H. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces.
1. Provide and secure units to support screed strips
  2. Use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- I. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible.
1. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
  2. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- J. Chamfer corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- K. At construction joints, overlap forms onto previously placed concrete not less than 12 inches.
- L. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work.
1. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
  2. Obtain written approval of Architect prior to forming openings not indicated on Drawings.
- M. Construction and Movement Joints:
1. Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
  2. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  3. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
  4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans.
    - a. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
- N. Provide temporary ports or openings in formwork where required to facilitate cleaning and inspection.
1. Locate ports and openings in bottom of vertical forms, in inconspicuous location, to allow flushing water to drain.

## CONCRETE FORMWORK AND ACCESSORIES

03 10 00-6

2. Close temporary ports and openings with tight-fitting panels, flush with inside face of form, and neatly fitted, so joints will not be apparent in exposed concrete surfaces.
- O. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- P. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- Q. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
- R. Formwork shall be new at the start of the job. Forms may be reused, provided they are thoroughly cleaned of dirt, mortar, oil, rust, and foreign materials, and are undamaged at edges and contact faces. Reuse of forms shall be subject to approval by the Architect.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
  1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.
  3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
  4. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures, as indicated on Drawings.
  5. Clean embedded items immediately prior to concrete placement.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF WATERSTOPS

- A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm.
  1. Install in longest lengths practicable.
  2. Locate waterstops in center of joint unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  3. Allow clearance between waterstop and reinforcing steel of not less than 2 times the largest concrete aggregate size specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete."
  4. Secure waterstops in correct position at 12 inches (305 mm) on center.
  5. Field fabricate joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions using heat welding.
    - a. Miter corners, intersections, and directional changes in waterstops.
    - b. Align center bulbs.
  6. Clean waterstops immediately prior to placement of concrete.
  7. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work.
- B. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated on Drawings, according to manufacturer's written instructions, by adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place.
  1. Install in longest lengths practicable.
  2. Locate waterstops in center of joint unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  3. Protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work.



### 3.4 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 36 hours after placing concrete. Concrete must be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
  - 1. Do not proceed with formwork removal until the concrete members have attained sufficient strength, minimum of 100 percent of 28-day strength and stiffness to safely support the imposed loads, unless noted otherwise on drawings. Confirmation of design strength shall be verified by breaking of field cured cylinders, taken in addition to those required for Owner's QA and shall be done at Contactor's expense. In addition, the minimum times for removal of formwork after concrete has been placed shall be as indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work.
  - 1. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are unacceptable for exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints.
  - 1. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets.
  - 2. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.
- D. Comply with ACI 318 section 26.11 for removal of formwork.

### 3.5 SHORING AND RESHORING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with ACI 318 and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
  - 1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
- B. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

### 3.6 TOLERANCES

- A. Formwork for standard and architectural concrete shall be constructed such that the shapes, sizes, lines, and dimensions of cast-in-place concrete shown on the Drawings conform to the tolerances listed in the Section entitled "Cast-In-Place Concrete".
- B. Offsets between adjacent formwork facing materials for rough finish, concealed surface concrete formwork shall conform to ACI 117 Class C requirements.
- C. Offsets between adjacent formwork facing materials for smooth finish, exposed surface concrete formwork shall conform to ACI 117 Class B requirements.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
- C. Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect formwork for shape, location, and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.
  - 2. Inspect insulating concrete forms for shape, location, and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.

END OF SECTION 03 10 00

## SECTION 03 20 00 - CONCRETE REINFORCING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Steel reinforcement bars.
  - 2. Welded-wire reinforcement.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 031000 "Concrete Formwork" for materials and construction of concrete forms.
  - 2. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete mix design and concrete strength testing of laboratory- and field-cured cylinders.
  - 3. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for reinforcing related to concrete pavement and walks.

- C. Reference Documents:

- 1. Building Code: CBC – 2022 California Building Code.
  - 2. ACI - American Concrete Institute,
    - a. ACI 117, "Standard Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials".
    - b. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete for Buildings".
    - c. ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement".
  - 3. ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials, designations referenced herein.
  - 4. AWS - American Welding Society,
    - a. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel".
    - b. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel".
  - 5. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute,
    - a. CRSI MSP-1, "Manual of Standard Practice".
    - b. CRSI, "Placing Reinforcing Bars".
  - 6. ICC-ES - International Code Council Evaluation Services, Evaluation Reports referenced herein.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: See Section 033000 for preinstallation conference requirements.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:

- 1. Each type of steel reinforcement.
- 2. Bar supports.
- 3. Mechanical splice couplers
- 4. Reinforcing bar terminators
- 5. Deformed bar anchors

- B. Shop Drawings: Comply with ACI SP-066:

- 1. Include placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.
- 2. Include bar sizes, lengths, materials, grades, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, location of splices, lengths of lap splices, details of mechanical splice couplers, details of welding splices, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- 3. Shop drawings shall include plan, elevation, and detail views with project grids accurately indicating bar material type, size, lengths, locations, bends, lap splice lengths and locations, welded splice locations, mechanical coupler locations and headed bar locations.
- 4. Layering and sequencing information for intersections shall be identified.
- 5. Coordinate and include placement diagrams of embedded items such as anchor bolts, inserts, etc.
- 6. Shop drawings shall not include copies of Contract Document details. References to Contract Document details in lieu of details prepared as part of placing drawing submittals will not be accepted.
- 7. Shop drawings shall list the structural materials included in the submittal. Reinforcement shown on placing drawings illustrating sequencing, layering, or intersections, but not included in the placing drawing bar lists, shall be identified as "previously submitted" or "to be submitted."

- C. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to build the structure.

- 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Statements: For testing and inspection agency.

- B. Welding certificates.

- 1. Reinforcement To Be Welded: Welding procedure specification in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M

- C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:

1. Steel Reinforcement:
    - a. For reinforcement to be welded, mill test analysis for chemical composition and carbon equivalent of the steel in accordance with ASTM A706/A706M.
  2. Mechanical splice couplers
  3. Reinforcing bar terminators
- D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
- B. The Testing Agency shall perform the required tests and inspections, prepare written summary reports of tests and inspections, and review submittals.
- C. The Testing Agency shall inspect material, size, spacing, arrangement, placement, and cover of reinforcing.
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.4/D 1.4M.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
  1. Store reinforcement to avoid contact with earth.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Low-Alloy Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A706/A706M, Grade 60, deformed.
- C. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 or ASTM A 706/A 706M deformed bars, as indicated on drawings, assembled with clips.
- D. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- E. Deformed-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, flat sheet.

## 2.2 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire or plastic according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," and as follows:
  - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
  - 2. Use precast concrete spacers of greater compressive strength than concrete at location in contact with ground.
- C. Mechanical Splice Couplers: ACI 318 Type 2, same material of reinforcing bar being spliced; mechanical-lap type, for standard, transition, position, and half-couplers. Type 2 couplers may be used in lieu of lap splices at Contractor's option.
- D. Headed Bars:
  - 1. Type I headed bars shall be used where indicated on the drawings and in lieu of hooked bar ends at the Contractor's option except where Type II headed bars are indicated. Terminations shall be capable of developing the specified yield strength of the reinforcing bar.
  - 2. Type II headed bars shall be used where indicated on the drawings. Terminations shall be capable of developing 160% of the specified yield strength of the reinforcing bar. Headed bars shown on the drawings shall be Type II, unless otherwise shown or indicated.
- E. Deformed Bar Anchors: ASTM A 496 deformed wire.
  - 1. Alternate: welded ASTM A 706 reinforcing bars may be used.
- F. Steel Tie Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, annealed steel, not less than 0.0508 inch in diameter.
  - 1. Finish: Galvanized.

## 2.3 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:
  - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder.
  - 2. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.

## CONCRETE REINFORCING

03 20 00-4

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement.
  - 1. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover.
  - 2. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- C. Preserve clearance between bars of not less than 1 inch, not less than one bar diameter, or not less than 1-1/3 times size of large aggregate, whichever is greater.
- D. Provide concrete coverage in accordance with ACI 318.
- E. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- F. Splices: Lap splices as indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Bars indicated to be continuous, and all vertical bars shall be lapped not less than 36 bar diameters at splices, or 24 inches, whichever is greater.
  - 2. Stagger splices in accordance with ACI 318.
  - 3. Mechanical Splice Couplers: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
    - a. Stagger mechanical couplers located on adjacent bars as shown on Drawings, but not less than 24 inches.
  - 4. Weld reinforcing bars in accordance with AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, where indicated on Drawings.
- G. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths.
  - 1. Support welded-wire reinforcement in accordance with CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice."
    - a. For reinforcement less than W4.0 or D4.0, continuous support spacing shall not exceed 12 inches.
  - 2. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least two wire spacing and 8 inches minimum for plain wire and deformed wire.
  - 3. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
  - 4. Lace overlaps with wire.

### 3.3 JOINTS

- A. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
  - 2. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
- B. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length, to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with ACI 117.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Inspections:
  - 1. Steel-reinforcement placement.
  - 2. Steel-reinforcement mechanical splice couplers.
  - 3. Steel-reinforcement welding.
  - 4. Embeds, headed bolts and studs.
  - 5. Mechanical couplers: Conduct tension load tests on Type II mechanical couplers at the frequency indicated on the Drawings, but not less than 1 test for each 100 mechanical couplers or fraction thereof. Perform tests on no less than 2 couplers of each type. Test specimens shall be selected at random. Tension tests shall be conducted to failure of the coupler or rupture of the bar in accordance with ASTM A 370.
    - a. Alternate: Where the supplier conducts tension load tests in conformance with ASTM A 370 at a frequency that meets or exceeds that stated above, the Owner's Testing Agency may observe tension load tests performed by the supplier in lieu of performing tension load tests.
  - 6. Threaded bars and couplers: Verify compliance with the manufacturer's recommended installation procedures on in-place mechanical couplers, and headed bars that utilize threaded connections, at the frequency indicated on the Drawings, but not less than 10%.
  - 7. Headed bars: Perform tension tests on Type II headed reinforcement at the frequency indicated on the Drawings, but not less than 1 test for each 100 headed bars or fraction thereof. Perform tests on no less than 2 headed bars. Test specimens shall be selected at random. Tension tests shall be conducted to failure of the head or rupture of the bar in accordance with ASTM A 970.

END OF SECTION 03 20 00



## SECTION 03 30 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cast-in-place concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, and placement procedures.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 031000 "Concrete Forming and Accessories" for form-facing materials, form liners, insulating concrete forms, and waterstops.
  - 2. Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing" for steel reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement.
  - 3. Section 033001 "Site Cast-in-Place Concrete"
  - 4. Section 033361 "Ground Concrete Finish"
  - 5. Section 051200 "Structural Steel" for grouting of base plates.
  - 6. Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings"
  - 7. Section 312323 "Fill" for filling, backfilling, and compacting under slabs-on-ground.
  - 8. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete pavement and walks.
- C. Reference Documents:
  - 1. Building Code: CBC – 2022 California Building Code.
  - 2. ACI - American Concrete Institute,
    - a. ACI 117 "Standard Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials".
    - b. ACI 211.1 "Recommended Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal and Heavy Weight Concrete".
    - c. ACI 211.2 "Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Structural Lightweight Concrete".
    - d. ACI 223R-10 "Guide for the Use of Shrinkage-Compensating Concrete".
    - e. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete for Buildings".
    - f. ACI 302.1R "Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction".
    - g. ACI 303.1 "Standard Specification for Cast-in-Place Architectural Concrete"
    - h. ACI 304R "Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing Concrete".
    - i. ACI 304.2R "Placing Concrete by Pumping Methods".
    - j. ACI 305.1 "Specification for Hot Weather Concreting".
    - k. ACI 306R "Cold Weather Concreting".
    - l. ACI 308R "Guide to Curing Concrete".
    - m. ACI 309R "Guide for Consolidation of Concrete".
    - n. ACI 318 "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete".

## CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

03 30 00-1

- o. ACI 347.3R "Guide to Formed Concrete Surfaces".
- 3. ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials, designations referenced herein.
- 4. ICC-ES - International Code Council Evaluation Services, Evaluation Reports referenced herein.
- 5. NRMCA - National Ready-Mix Concrete Association, Quality Control Manual – Section 3: Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Ordinary Portland Cement (OPC) alone or in combination with one or more of the following: Portland Limestone Cement (PLC), blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.
- C. High Volume Fly Ash Mixes (HVFA): Concrete mixes where fly ash or other pozzolans exceeds 25% of cementitious material.

### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    - d. Concrete Subcontractor.
    - e. Reinforcing subcontractor.
    - f. Concrete mix designer.
    - g. Special concrete finish Subcontractor.
  - 2. Review the following:
    - a. Special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
    - b. Ready-mix delivery and placement logistics.
    - c. Construction joints, control joints, isolation joints, and joint-filler strips.
    - d. Semirigid joint fillers.
    - e. Vapor-retarder installation.
    - f. Steel-reinforcement installation
    - g. Anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances.
    - h. Cold and hot weather concreting procedures.
    - i. Concrete finishes and finishing.
    - j. Curing procedures.
    - k. Forms and form-removal limitations.
    - l. Architectural Concrete
    - m. Shoring and reshoring procedures.
    - n. Methods for achieving specified floor and slab flatness and levelness.
    - o. Floor and slab flatness and levelness measurements.
    - p. Concrete repair procedures.
    - q. Concrete protection.
    - r. Initial curing and field curing of field test cylinders.

### CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

03 30 00-2

- s. Protection of field cured field test cylinders.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

### A. Product Data: For each of the following.

1. Portland cement.
2. Portland limestone cement.
3. Fly ash.
4. Slag cement.
5. Blended hydraulic cement.
6. Silica fume.
7. Performance-based hydraulic cement
8. Aggregates.
9. Color pigments.
10. Admixtures:
  - a. Include limitations of use, including restrictions on cementitious materials, supplementary cementitious materials, air entrainment, aggregates, temperature at time of concrete placement, relative humidity at time of concrete placement, curing conditions, and use of other admixtures.
11. Vapor retarders.
12. Floor and slab treatments.
13. Liquid floor treatments.
14. Curing materials.
  - a. Include documentation from color pigment manufacturer, indicating that proposed methods of curing are recommended by color pigment manufacturer.
15. Joint fillers.
16. Repair materials.

### B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, include the following:

1. Mixture identification.
2. Member types and specific placement locations for which the mix is intended.
3. Concrete class.
4. Durability exposure class.
5. Design compressive strength, age (in days) required to reach design compressive strength, and compressive strength historic data.
6. Cementitious Material quantities per cubic yard.
7. Maximum w/cm.
8. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site if permitted.
9. Calculated equilibrium unit weight, for lightweight concrete.
10. Design slump (or target slump range for self-consolidating mixes) at point of discharge from transit mix truck.
11. Air content.
12. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
13. Course and fine aggregate sources, types, sizes, and gradation.
14. Shrinkage historic data or trial batch test sample data, when required herein.]
15. Intended placement method.
16. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
17. Mixes shall be designed by a qualified testing laboratory and be sealed by a registered Professional Engineer in the authority having jurisdiction.

- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
    - a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.
- D. Concrete Schedule: For each location of each Class of concrete indicated in "Concrete Mixtures" Article, including the following:
  - 1. Concrete Class designation.
  - 2. Location within Project.
  - 3. Exposure Class designation.
  - 4. Formed Surface Finish designation and final finish.
  - 5. Final finish for floors.
  - 6. Curing process.
  - 7. Floor treatment if any.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product requiring color selections (minimum 12 by 12 inches)
- F. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed color.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For the following:
  - 1. Installer: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.
  - 2. Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer.
- B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
  - 1. Cementitious materials.
  - 2. Admixtures.
  - 3. Vapor retarders.
  - 4. Repair materials.
- C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
  - 1. Portland cement.
  - 2. Portland limestone cement.
  - 3. Fly ash.
  - 4. Slag cement.
  - 5. Blended hydraulic cement.
  - 6. Silica fume.
  - 7. Performance-based hydraulic cement.
  - 8. Aggregates.
    - a. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.
  - 9. Admixtures:
    - a. Permeability-Reducing Admixture: Include independent test reports, indicating compliance with specified requirements, including dosage rate used in test.
- D. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements report, indicating compliance with specified tolerances.
- E. Research Reports:

1. For concrete admixtures in accordance with ICC's Acceptance Criteria AC198.
2. For sheet vapor retarder/termite barrier, showing compliance with ICC AC380.
- F. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each mix design.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Weighmaster Batch Tickets: Provide copies of each delivery to Testing Agency, at the time of delivery.
- I. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs Project personnel qualified as an ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is a certified ACI Flatwork Concrete Finisher/Technician or an ACI Concrete Flatwork Technician.
  1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors Installers: ACI-certified Adhesive Anchor Installer.
- B. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  1. Manufacturer certified in accordance with NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- C. Laboratory Testing Agency Qualifications: A testing agency qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated and employing an ACI-certified Concrete Quality Control Technical Manager.
  1. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.
- D. Field Quality Control Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
  1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as an ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, in accordance with ACI CPP 610.1 or an equivalent certification program.

#### 1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified Testing Agency to perform preconstruction testing on each concrete mixture.
  1. Include the following information in each test report:
    - a. Admixture dosage rates.
    - b. Slump.
    - c. Air content.
    - d. 7-day compressive strength.
    - e. 28-day compressive strength.

#### CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

03 30 00-5

- f. 56-day compressive strength for HVFA mixes.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with ASTM C94 and ACI 301.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 and as follows.
  - 1. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 2. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
  - 3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - 4. Do not place concrete in contact with surfaces less than 35 deg F (1.7 deg C), other than reinforcing steel.
  - 5. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1, and as follows:
  - 1. Maintain concrete temperature at time of discharge to not exceed 95 deg F.
  - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

### 2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations:
  - 1. Obtain all concrete mixtures from a single ready-mixed concrete manufacturer for entire Project.
  - 2. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant.
  - 3. Obtain aggregate from single source.
  - 4. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type Per Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Portland Limestone Cement: ASTM C595, Type Per Structural Drawings.
  - 3. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class F.
  - 4. Slag Cement: ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120.
  - 5. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C595.

## CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

03 30 00-6

- 6. Silica Fume: ASTM C1240 amorphous silica.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M. Provide aggregates from a single source.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: As indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- D. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C 330, 1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- E. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
- F. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494, Type A.
  - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494, Type B.
  - 3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494, Type D.
  - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494, Type F.
  - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494, Type G.
  - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017, Type II.
- G. Color Pigment: ASTM C979/C979M, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments, color stable, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
  - 1. Color: Match Architect's sample
- H. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M and potable.

## 2.3 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape and pipe penetration boots. Membrane shall have a permeance rate no greater than 0.01 grains/(ft<sup>2</sup> · hr · inHg) [US perm] after mandatory conditioning tests per ASTM E 1745 (7.1.1 – 7.1.5) when tested in accordance with ASTM E96. Not less than 15 mils thick.
  - 1. Barrier-Bac; Interplast Group, Ltd.
  - 2. Fortifiber Bulding Systems Group
  - 3. Raven Industries, Inc.
  - 4. Stego Industries, Inc.
  - 5. W.R. Meadows, Inc.
- B. Bituminous Vapor Retarder: 110-mil thick, semiflexible, seven-ply sheet membrane consisting of reinforced core and carrier sheet with fortified asphalt layers, protective weathercoating, and removable plastic release liner. Furnish manufacturer's accessories, including bonding asphalt, pointing mastics, and self-adhering joint tape.
  - 1. W. R. Meadows, Inc.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: 0.0011 grains/h x sq. ft. x inches Hg; ASTM E 154.
  - 3. Tensile Strength: 140 lbf/inch; ASTM E 154.
  - 4. Puncture Resistance: 90 lbf; ASTM E 154.

## 2.4 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Basis of Design Product: Refer to Finish Schedule for exposed concrete floors indicated.
- B. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments for Polished Concrete Finish: Clear, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and is suitable for polished concrete surfaces.

## 2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C171, polyethylene film burlap-polyethylene sheet.
  - 1. Color:
    - a. Ambient Temperature Below 50 deg F: Black.
    - b. Ambient Temperature between 50 deg F and 85 deg F: Any color.
    - c. Ambient Temperature Above 85 deg F: White.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1D, Class B, dissipating.
- F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
- G. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

## 2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 accordance with ASTM D2240.
- A. Bonding Agent: ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- B. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade and class to suit requirements, and as follows:

## CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

03 30 00-8



1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- C. Floor Slab Protective Covering: Eight-feet wide cellulose fabric.
- D. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.022-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

## 2.7 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150 portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
  2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand, as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 6000psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
  1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150 portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
  2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
  4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 6000psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109.

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301.
  1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
  1. Use fly ash, pozzolans, slag cement, silica fume, and Portland Limestone Cement as needed to reduce the total amount of ordinary portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent by mass.
  2. See drawings for specified 28-day concrete strengths and limit the maximum Ordinary Portland Cement content used in concrete mixtures as follows:
    - a. Normal-weight Concrete up to 2,500 psi: 362 lb/cu. yd
    - b. Normal-weight Concrete 2501 to 3000 psi: 410 lb/cu. yd
    - c. Normal-weight Concrete 3001 to 4000 psi: 456 lb/cu. yd
    - d. Normal-weight Concrete 4001 to 5000 psi: 503 lb/cu. yd

## CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

03 30 00-9

- e. Normal-weight Concrete 5001 to 6000 psi: 531 lb/cu. yd
  - f. Normal-weight Concrete 6001 to 7000 psi: 594 lb/cu. yd
  - g. Normal-weight Concrete 7001 psi and higher: 657 lb/cu. yd
  - h. Light-weight Concrete up to 3,000 psi: 512 lb/cu. yd
  - i. Light-weight Concrete 3001 to 4000 psi: 571 lb/cu. yd
  - j. Light-weight Concrete 4001 to 5000 psi: 629 lb/cu. yd
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
- E. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

## 2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. All mixes shall meet requirements of Structural Drawings.

## 2.10 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94 and ASTM C1116, and furnish batch ticket information.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
- 1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, and reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
  - 2. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide reasonable auxiliary services to accommodate field testing and inspections, acceptable to testing agency, including the following:
- 1. Daily access to the Work.
  - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  - 3. Secure space for storage, initial curing, and field curing of test samples, including source of water and continuous electrical power at Project site during site curing period for test samples.

## CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

03 30 00-10

4. Security and protection for test samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

### 3.3 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
- B. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair bituminous vapor retarder according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
  1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of ANSI/AISC 303.
  3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.

### 3.5 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.
  1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
  2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
    - a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders at third points of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  7. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  8. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

- C. Control Joints in slab-on-grade: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form control joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). Repeat grooving of control joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in slab-on-grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
  - 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
  - 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints:
  - 1. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel bar length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.
  - 1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
  - 2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.
- B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.
- C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.
  - 1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
  - 2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  - 3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  - 4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with ACI 301.
    - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.

### CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

03 30 00-12

- b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer.
  - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
  - d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  - 1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
  - 2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - 3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  - 4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  - 5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
  - 6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  - 7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
  - 8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

### 3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:
  - 1. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-2.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams.
    - a. Patch voids larger than 3/4-inch-wide or 1/2 inch deep.
    - b. Remove projections larger than 1/4 inch.
    - c. Patch tie holes.
    - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class B.
  - 2. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-3.0:
    - a. Patch voids larger than 3/4-inch-wide or 1/2 inch deep.
    - b. Remove projections larger than 1/8 inch.
    - c. Patch tie holes.
    - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class A.
- A. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
  - 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
  - 2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
  - 3. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white

portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.

B. Related Unformed Surfaces:

1. At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a color and texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
2. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in one direction.
1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated, to receive concrete floor toppings and to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes.
- C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated, to receive trowel finish and to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.
- D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated, exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system Insert locations.
  2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
    - a. Slabs on Ground:
      - 1) For Slabs-on-grade, provide an overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17.
    - b. Slabs on Metal Deck:
      - 1) Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-ft. long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/8 inch in 2 feet.

- E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated, and where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
  - 1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.
- F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

### 3.9 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In:
  - 1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
  - 3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations:
  - 1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. See Structural Drawings for attachment of equipment bases and foundations.
- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items.
  - 1. Cast-in inserts and accessories, as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

### 3.10 CONCRETE CURING

- A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
  - 1. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 for cold weather protection during curing.
  - 2. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1 (ACI 305.1M) for hot-weather protection during curing.
  - 3. Maintain moisture loss no more than 0.2 lb./sq. ft. x h, calculated in accordance with ACI 305.1, before and during finishing operations.
- B. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:
  - 1. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete.
  - 2. Interior Concrete Floors:
    - a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:
      - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.

- a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12-inches.
  - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
- 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
  - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
  - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
- 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
  - a) Water.
  - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- b. Floors to Receive Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments: Contractor has option of the following:
  - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
    - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches.
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
    - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
  - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
    - a) Water.
    - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- c. Floors to Receive Polished Finish: Contractor has option of the following:
  - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
    - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches.
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
    - a) Water.
    - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- d. Floors to Receive Chemical Stain:
  - 1) As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install curing paper over entire area of floor.
  - 2) Install curing paper square to building lines, without wrinkles, and in a single length without end joints.
  - 3) Butt sides of curing paper tight; do not overlap sides of curing paper.



- 4) Leave curing paper in place for duration of curing period, but not less than 28 days.

### 3.11 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to ACI 117.

### 3.12 APPLICATION OF LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
  2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than 28 days' old.
  3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing.
  4. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry.
  5. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
- B. Polished Concrete Floor Treatment: Apply polished concrete finish system to cured and prepared slabs to match accepted mockup.
  1. Machine grind floor surfaces to receive polished finishes level and smooth and to depth required to reveal aggregate to match approved mockup.
  2. Apply penetrating liquid floor treatment for polished concrete in polishing sequence and according to manufacturer's written instructions, allowing recommended drying time between successive coats.
  3. Continue polishing with progressively finer grit diamond polishing pads to gloss level to match approved mockup.
  4. Control and dispose of waste products produced by grinding and polishing operations.
  5. Neutralize and clean polished floor surfaces.
- C. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.13 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month.
  2. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches (50 mm) deep in formed joints.
- D. Overfill joint, and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

## CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

03 30 00-17

### 3.14 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete:
  - 1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect.
  - 2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Unformed Surfaces:
  - 1. Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish, and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface.
    - a. Correct low and high areas.
    - b. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
  - 2. Repair finished surfaces containing surface defects, including spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing, and cracks in excess of 0.01-inch-wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  - 3. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  - 4. Correct localized low areas during, or immediately after, completing surface-finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar.
    - a. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.
    - a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
    - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 6. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with repair topping.
    - a. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations.
    - b. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  - 7. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete.
    - a. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around.
    - b. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent.
    - c. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate.
    - d. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete.
    - e. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  - 8. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar.
    - a. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete, and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles.
    - b. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent.
    - c. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
    - d. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete.
    - e. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

- D. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- E. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

### 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
  - 1. Testing agency shall be responsible for providing curing container for composite samples on Site and verifying that field-cured composite samples are cured in accordance with ASTM C31.
  - 2. Testing agency shall immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
  - 3. Testing agency shall report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.
    - a. Test reports shall include reporting requirements of ASTM C31, ASTM C39, and ACI 301, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:
      - 1) Project name.
      - 2) Name of testing agency.
      - 3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
      - 4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
      - 5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
      - 6) Date and time of concrete placement.
      - 7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
      - 8) Date and time sample was obtained.
      - 9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
      - 10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
      - 11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
      - 12) Field test results.
      - 13) Information on storage and curing of samples before testing, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
      - 14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.
- B. Batch Tickets: For each load delivered, submit three copies of batch delivery ticket to testing agency, indicating quantity, mix identification, admixtures, design strength, aggregate size, design air content, design slump at time of batching, and amount of water that can be added at Project site.
- C. Inspections:
  - 1. Steel reinforcement placement.
  - 2. Steel reinforcement welding.
  - 3. Headed bolts and studs.
  - 4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  - 5. Batch Plant Inspections
  - 6. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  - 7. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.

### CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

03 30 00-19

8. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172 shall be performed in accordance with the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete. Provide one additional set for each additional 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof or for each 2000 square feet of surface area for wall or slabs.
    - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
    - b. Additional samples for 7-day compressive strength tests shall be taken for each class of concrete at the beginning of the concrete work or whenever the mix or aggregate is changed.
    - c. Provide two additional samples for 56-day compressive strength tests shall be taken for HVFA mixes.
  2. Slump: ASTM C143:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  3. Slump Flow for self-consolidating concrete mixes: ASTM C1611:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  4. Air Content: ASTM C231 pressure method, for normal-weight concrete.
    - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064:
    - a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  6. Unit Weight: ASTM C567 fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete.
    - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31:
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure four 6-inch by 12-inch or 4-inch by 8-inch cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
    - b. Cast and field cure three 6-inch by 12-inch or 4-inch by 8-inch cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
    - a. Test one laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and two specimens at 28 days.
    - b. Retain last specimen if 28 day results are more than 500 psi below specified design strength. Break remaining specimens at time as directed by the Architect.
      - 1) Discard remaining specimen if 28 day results exceed specified design strength.
    - c. Test one field-cured specimens at 7 days and two specimens at 28 days.
      - 1) Hold testing of field cured specimens if results of lab cured 28 day specimens fail to meet specified strength. Break remaining specimens at a time as directed by the Architect.
    - d. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.

- e. When using High Volume Fly Ash (HVFA) concrete mixes, exceeding 25 percent portland cement replacement, conformance with specified design strength shall be measured from cylinder test performed at 14 days and 56 days in lieu of the 7 day and 28 day tests, respectively. All other testing and reporting requirements shall be the same as those for non-HVFA concrete mixes.
  9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  10. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi if specified compressive strength is 5000 psi or no compressive strength test value is less than 10 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than 5000 psi.
  11. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 72 hours of testing, except as modified below. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
    - a. Notify Architect in writing within 24 hours for tests of laboratory cured specimens where 28 day strength results fail to meet specified strength.
    - b. Notify Architect in writing within 24 hours for tests of field cured specimens where 28 day strength results fail to meet 85 percent of specified strength.
    - c. Notify Architect in writing within 24 hours of tests of laboratory cured specimens where 7 day strength results fail to meet 60 percent of specified 28 day strength.
  12. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  13. Additional Tests:
    - a. Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
    - b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42 or by other methods as directed by Architect.
      - 1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength shall be in accordance with ACI 301 section 1.6.6.3.
  14. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  15. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with ASTM E1155 within 72 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.
- F. Perform shrinkage tests on shrinkage test specimen sets in accordance with ASTM C 157. Length measurements for each specimen shall be recorded at 14, 28, and 35 days after casting. Specimens shall be kept for further testing, if required.

### 3.16 PROTECTION

- A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:
1. Protect from petroleum stains.
  2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
  3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
  4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
  5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
  6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
  7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
  8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

END OF SECTION 03 30 00

## SECTION 05 12 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Structural steel.
  - 2. Field-installed shear connectors.
  - 3. Non-shrink Grout.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels and shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame miscellaneous steel fabrications and other steel items not defined as structural steel.
  - 2. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for surface-preparation and priming requirements.
  - 3. Section 099600 "High Performance Coatings" for surface preparation and priming requirements for exterior substrates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

#### 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

05 12 00-1

## 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
  - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
  - 2. Include embedment Drawings.
  - 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
  - 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
- C. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing, including the following:
  - 1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
  - 2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.

## 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.
  - 1. Fabricator Qualifications: Reference section 1.8A, "Quality Assurance".
    - a. AISC Quality Certification Program: Submit documentation with initial shop drawing submittal as follows:
      - 1) Copy of AISC Certification Certificate.
    - b. In-Plant Special Inspections: Submit documentation with initial shop drawing submittal as follows:
      - 1) Name of special inspection agency and personnel performing inspections.
      - 2) Name and qualifications of "Engineer of Record" for In-Plant Special Inspections responsible for review and submission of final signed and sealed inspection report.
      - 3) Distribution list for inspection reports.
  - 2. Installer Qualifications: Reference section 1.8B, "Quality Assurance".
    - a. AISC Quality Certification Program: Submit documentation with initial shop drawing submittal as follows:
      - 1) Copy of AISC Certification Certificate.
      - 2) Documentation that erector has completed a minimum of (5) projects of similar size and scope.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Product Test Reports: For the following:
  - 1. Non-shrink grout.



- E. Survey of existing conditions.
- F. Field quality-control and special inspection reports.
- G. Erection plan sequence and procedures.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU at time of bid,

-or-

Special Inspection shall be conducted on the premises of the steel fabricator in accordance with 1704A.2.5 of the CBC.

- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE at time of bid.

-or-

The installer has experience completing a minimum of (5) projects of similar in scope and scale.

- C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P1 or to SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."

- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

- 1. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8. FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.

- E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:

- 1. AISC 303.
  - 2. AISC 341.
  - 3. AISC 360.
  - 4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.

- 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

#### STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

05 12 00-3

- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
  - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
  - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
  - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
  - 2. Use Load and Resistance Factor Design; data are given at factored-load level.

### 2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992.
- B. Channels, Angles, M, S-Shapes: ASTM A 36/ Materials complying with first option in "Plate and Bar" Paragraph below are widely available; those complying with second option are less so. Third option is a specialty-steel material; verify availability if required.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36
- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade C, structural tubing.
- E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

### 2.3 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
  - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts or tension-control, bolt-nut-washer assemblies with splined ends; ASTM A 563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.

1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- C. Zinc-Coated High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  1. Finish: Hot-dip or mechanically deposited zinc coating.
  2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with mechanically deposited zinc coating finish.
- D. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
  1. Finish: Mechanically deposited zinc coating.
- E. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.
- F. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 or As Indicated.
  1. Configuration: Straight.
  2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 hex carbon steel.
  3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36 carbon steel.
  4. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  5. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153, Class C or Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50.
- G. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 or As Indicated straight.
  1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 hex carbon steel.
  2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36 carbon steel.
  3. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  4. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C or Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50.
- H. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M or As Indicated.
  1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 hex carbon steel.
  2. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  3. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C or Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50.
- I. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1035.
- J. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.
- K. Sleeve Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.

- L. Structural Slide Bearings: Low-friction assemblies, of configuration indicated, that provide vertical transfer of loads and allow horizontal movement perpendicular to plane of expansion joint while resisting movement within plane of expansion joint.
  - 1. Mating Surfaces: PTFE and PTFE.
  - 2. Coefficient of Friction: Not more than 0.06.
  - 3. Design Load: Not less than 5,000 psi.
  - 4. Total Movement Capability: 2 inches.

## 2.4 PRIMER

- A. Shop Primers: Comply with Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20.

## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.
  - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
  - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
  - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6 and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
  - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
  - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning."

## STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

05 12 00-6

- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
  - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
  - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
  - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

## 2.7 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened, Pretensioned or Slip critical As Indicated.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

## 2.8 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
  - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
  - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
  - 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
  - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
  - 5. Galvanized surfaces.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Clean surfaces to be painted per primer manufacturer's written instructions. Remove loose rust and mill scale and other spatter, slag, flux deposits, and any other potential bond-breaking materials.
- C. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
  - 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
  - 4. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
  - 5. SSPC-SP 14/NACE No. 8, "Industrial Blast Cleaning."
  - 6. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."

## STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

05 12 00-7

7. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
  8. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning."
  9. SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
- D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
  2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
- E. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

## 2.9 GALVANIZING

- A. All exterior steel are to be galvanized and protected with high performance coating system. See 099600.
- B. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123.
1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  2. Galvanize lintels, shelf angles and welded door frames attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

## 2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test shop-bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
  2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
  3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
  4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

- D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
  - 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  - 2. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1 on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

#### 3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates, Bearing Plates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
  - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.

### STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

05 12 00-9

4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
  2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  1. Joint Type: Snug tightened, Pre-tensioned or Slip Critical, as indicated.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
  3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," for mill material.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.

## STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

05 12 00-10



2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
  3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1.
1. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
    - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
    - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- E. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  2. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1 on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.

### 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
- B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 099600 High Performance Coatings" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- D. Touchup Priming: Cleaning and touchup priming are specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

END OF SECTION 051200

## SECTION 05 50 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 2. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - 3. Metal ladders.
  - 4. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
  - 1. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
  - 2. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
  - 2. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing."

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
  - 2. Metal nosings and treads.
  - 3. Paint products.
  - 4. Grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:
  - 1. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and stage curtains.
  - 2. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 3. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - 4. Metal ladders.
  - 5. Pipe rack in scene shop.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and finish of extruded nosing.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For ladders, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- B. Mill Certificates: Signed by stainless-steel manufacturers, certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- E. Research/Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Abrasive nosings shall comply with California Title 24.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- E. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
- F. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.
- G. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- H. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 6061-T6.
- J. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6.
- K. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
- L. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.

## METAL FABRICATIONS

05 50 00 - 3

## 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  - 1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
  - 2. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593; with hex nuts, ASTM F 594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1.
- E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- G. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- H. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide product compatible with system as required per Sections 09 9113 "Exterior Painting," 09 9123 "Interior Painting," or 09 9601 "High-Performance Coatings" as appropriate for location and painting system indicated.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.

## METAL FABRICATIONS

05 50 00 - 4

- D. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- E. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

## 2.7 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3, except for elevator pit ladders.
  - 2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Steel Ladders:
  - 1. Space siderails 18 inches apart unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
  - 3. Rungs: 3/4-inch-diameter steel bars.
  - 4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
  - 5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung by coating with abrasive material metallically bonded to rung.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - 1) Harsco Industrial IKG, a division of Harsco Corporation.
      - 2) ROSS TECHNOLOGY CORP.
      - 3) SlipNOT Metal Safety Flooring; W.S. Molnar Company.
  - 6. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
  - 7. Galvanize exterior ladders, including brackets.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
  - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.

## METAL FABRICATIONS

05 50 00 - 6

- C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

## 2.9 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize plates.

## 2.10 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

## 2.11 PIPE RACK IN CAFETORIUM

- A. Fabricate pipe rack from 1-1/2 inch NPS Schedule 40 steel pipe. Provide configuration as detailed on drawings.

## 2.12 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

## 2.13 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with primers specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and primers specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Clean surfaces to be painted per primer manufacturer's written instructions. Remove loose rust and mill scale and other spatter, slag, flux deposits, and any other potential bond-breaking materials.

## METAL FABRICATIONS

05 50 00 - 7



- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

## 2.14 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M12.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, AA-M12C22A41.
- C. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70percentPVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:

## METAL FABRICATIONS

05 50 00 - 8

1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

### 3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for overhead doors and stage curtains securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.

### 3.3 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with nonshrink grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00

## SECTION 06 10 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Framing with dimension lumber.
  - 2. Wall, Siding and roof sheathing.
  - 3. Wood furring, blocking and nailers.
  - 4. Preservative and fire-retardant treatment of wood.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. OSB: Oriented strand board.
- E. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
  - 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  - 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
  - 2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  - 3. Engineered wood products.
  - 4. Shear panels.
  - 5. Power-driven fasteners.
  - 6. Post-installed anchors.
  - 7. Metal framing anchors.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Lumber Grading Agency: Certified by ALSC.
- B. Plywood Grading Agency: Certified by APA.
- C. Accredited certification bodies shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Scientific Certification Systems, [www.scscertified.com](http://www.scscertified.com).

## 1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to CBC, California Building Code, (CCR) California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 23.
- B. Allowable stress design values shall follow the CBC, California Building Code, (CCR) California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2, Section 2306, ANSI/AWC NDS-2018 - National Design Specifications for Wood Construction, and ANSI/AWS SDPWS-2015 - Special Design Provisions for Wind and Seismic.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMBER MATERIALS

- A. Lumber Grading Rules: WCLIB and WHPA. Lumber shall bear WCLIB grade stamp.
- B. Structural Framing, Studs, Plate and Blocking: Douglas Fir Species, No. 1 grade.

## ROUGH CARPENTRY

06 10 00-2

- C. Non-structural Light Framing Studs, Plate and Blocking: Douglas Fir species, No. 2 grade.
- D. Plank and Decking: Douglas Fir species, Com Dex.

## 2.2 MOISTURE CONTENT

- A. 2x and 3x material, 19 percent moisture content, S-Dry. Structural and non-structural framing, beam, rafters, joists, studs, plates and blocking.
- B. 4x and 6x material, 19 percent moisture content at time of application of Architectural finishes. 22 percent maximum moisture content at time of delivery to project site. Materials to be air dried as required to achieve
- C. 22 percent moisture content prior to delivery to site. Structural and non-structural framing, beam, rafters, joists, studs, plates and blocking.
- D. Lumber materials with a moisture content above 19 percent and less than 22 percent at the time of installation shall be tested for moisture content prior to covering with Architectural finishes. Moisture tests shall be performed under the provisions of Section 01 45 29.
- E. No lumber shall be covered with an Architectural finish until the moisture content of the lumber is 19 percent or below.

## 2.3 PLYWOOD MATERIALS

- A. Roof Sheathing: APA Structural I, Grade C-D, Exposure 1 minimum 5-ply construction, meeting product Standard PS-1-09.
- B. Wall Sheathing: APA Structural I, Grade C-D, Exposure 1 minimum 5-ply construction, meeting product standard PS-1-09.
- C. T1-11 Wall Sheathing: APA 303 Siding.
- D. Underlayment: APA Underlayment, Exposure 1, 3/8-inch-thick, sanded; minimum 3-ply construction.
- E. Telephone and Electrical Panel Boards: APA Grade C-D with exterior glue, minimum 5 ply, 3/4-inch-thick, meeting PS-1-09.

## 2.4 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment: Where lumber or plywood is indicated as treated or is specified herein to be treated, comply with applicable requirements of AWPA Standards for Lumber and Plywood.
- B. Pressure treat all lumber in contact with ground. After treatment kiln-dry lumber to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
- C. Pressure treat above ground items as indicated. After treatment, kiln-dry lumber and plywood to a maximum moisture content, respectively, of 19 percent and 15 percent. Treat indicated items and the following:

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers and waterproofing.
  2. Horizontal wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  3. Horizontal wood framing members less than 18 inches above grade.
  4. Wood floor plates installed over concrete slabs directly in contact with earth.
  5. Ends of wood girders entering masonry or concrete walls.
  6. Framing members used in exterior door, window, or louver openings.
- D. Complete fabrication of treated items prior to treatment, where possible. If cut or drilled after treatment, coat cut or drilled surfaces with heavy brush coat of same chemical used for treatment and to comply with AWWA M4. Inspect each piece of lumber or plywood after drying and discard damaged or defective pieces.

## 2.5 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
1. Treatment shall not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
  4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according to ASTM D 5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841. For enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where high temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, provide material with adjustment factors of not less than 0.85 modulus of elasticity and 0.75 for extreme fiber in bending for Project's climatological zone.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by testing agency.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

F. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Concealed blocking.
2. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.
3. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
4. Roof construction.
5. Plywood backing panels.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:

1. Blocking.
2. Nailers.
3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
4. Cants.
5. Furring.
6. Grounds.

B. Dimension Lumber Items: Douglas Fir, No. 2 grade lumber.

C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, No. 2 grade lumber of any species may be used if it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.7 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners: Hot-dipped galvanized steel for exterior, high humidity, and treated wood locations; plain finish elsewhere; size and type to suit condition.

B. Connectors: As indicated.

C. Anchors: Thru bolt or anchor bolt to concrete or masonry unless otherwise noted. Bolt for anchorage to steel unless otherwise noted.

D. Building Paper: No. 15 asphalt felt. Plain untreated cellulosic building paper.

E. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

F. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

G. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01, ICC-ES AC58, ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.

1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.
- C. Adhesives for Gluing Furring to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
- D. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with ANSI/AWC NDS-2018, "National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction – with 2018 NDS Supplement," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- E. Install shear wall panels to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- G. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- H. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

## ROUGH CARPENTRY

06 10 00-6



1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- J. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
  2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
  3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
  4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 10 feet o.c.
- K. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- L. Comply with AWPA U1 and M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- M. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- N. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
1. Table 2304.10.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the 2019 California Building Code.
  2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- O. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- P. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
1. Comply with approved fastener patterns where applicable. Before fastening, mark fastener locations, using a template made of sheet metal, plastic, or cardboard.
  2. Use finishing nails unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.
  3. Use common nails unless otherwise indicated. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads.

### 3.2 FRAMING

- A. Erect wood framing members level and plumb.
- B. Place horizontal members laid flat, crown side-up.
- C. Construct framing members full length without splices.
- D. Double members at openings over 1 sq. ft. Space short stud over and under opening to stud spacing.
- E. Construct double joist headers at floor and ceiling openings. Frame rigidly into joists.
- F. Construct double joists under wall studding.

### 3.3 WOOD FURRING, BLOCKING, AND GROUNDS

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Item locations include but are not limited to toilet accessories, toilet partitions, door frames, window frames, hardware, access doors and ladders, cabinetry, miscellaneous equipment locations and mechanical, plumbing and electrical item locations and all other locations of wall mounted items.
- C. Install plywood backboards for telephone, data and other electrical equipment.
- D. Form to shapes as shown and cut as required for true line and level of work to be attached. Coordinate location with other work involved.
- E. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loading. Countersink bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Build into masonry during installation of masonry work. Where possible, anchor to formwork before concrete placement.
- G. Install plumb and level with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finished work.
- H. Firestop all concealed spaces of wood stud walls, ceilings and floor levels at 10-foot intervals both vertically and horizontally.
- I. Firestop all concealed vertical and horizontal spaces as occur at soffits, vents, stair stringers, pipes and similar openings in compliance with CBC, (CCR) Title 24, Part 2, Section 717.
- J. Fire stopping shall consist of closely fitted wood blocks of 2-inch nominal thickness lumber of same width as framing members.
- K. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

### ROUGH CARPENTRY

06 10 00-8

### 3.4 SHEATHING

- A. Secure roof sheathing perpendicular to framing members with ends staggered. Secure sheet edges over firm bearing. Provide solid edge blocking between sheets. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at ends and edges.
- B. Secure wall sheathing perpendicular to wall studs, with ends staggered, over firm bearing.
- C. Install telephone and electrical panel back boards where required. Size of backboards to be 12 inches beyond size of electrical panel boards.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

### 3.6 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE

- A. Recycle lumber waste under the provisions of Division 01 specifications.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of Division 01 specifications.
- B. Lumber materials will be inspected for compliance with material grading rules, limitations for moisture content and pest infestation prior to any materials being concealed from view or being covered with an architectural finish.

### 3.8 TOLERANCES

- A. Framing Members: 1/4 inch maximum from true position.
- B. Surface Flatness of Floor: 1/4 inch in 10 feet maximum.

END OF SECTION 06 10 00

## SECTION 06 16 00 - SHEATHING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wall sheathing.
- B. Roof sheathing.
- C. Subflooring.
- D. Underlayment.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this Section to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only. Refer to Division 01 for definitions, acronyms, and abbreviations.
- B. Unless otherwise noted, standards, manuals, and codes refer to the latest edition of such standards, manuals, and codes.
- C. Referenced Standards:
  - 1. AATCC Test Method 127 – Water Resistance: Hydrostatic Pressure Test.
  - 2. APA AFG-01 – Adhesives for Field-Gluing Plywood to Wood Framing.
  - 3. ASTM A153/A153M – Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  - 4. ASTM A653/A653M – Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
  - 5. ASTM B117 – Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus.
  - 6. ASTM C834 – Standard Specification for Latex Sealants.
  - 7. ASTM C954 – Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness.
  - 8. ASTM D3498 – Standard Specification for Adhesives for Field-Gluing Plywood to Lumber Framing for Floor Systems.
  - 9. ASTM E84 – Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 10. ASTM E96 – Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.
  - 11. ASTM F1667 – Standard Specification for Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes, and Staples.
  - 12. AWPA U1 – Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood.
  - 13. The Engineered Wood Association (APA); Plywood Specifications and Grades.

14. The Engineered Wood Association (APA) E30S – Engineered Wood Construction Guide.

15. UL Fire Resistance Directory.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit in accordance with Division 01.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's descriptive literature and product specification for each product.

C. Certification:

1. Pressure Treated Plywood: Submit certification for water-borne preservative stating that moisture content was reduced to 19 percent, maximum, after treatment.
2. Pressure Treated Plywood: Submit certification by treatment plant stating the chemicals and process used, net amount of salts retained, and conformance with applicable standards.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Firm specializing in manufacturing products specified in this Section with a minimum 5 years experience.
2. Installer Qualifications: Firm specializing in installing work specified in this Section acceptable to manufacturer with experience on at least 5 projects of similar nature in past 3 years.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements of 2022 California Building Code (CBC), Chapter 23, "Wood," and Chapter 25, "Gypsum Board and Plaster."

1. Grading, fire-retardant treatment, and preservative treatment of plywood shall conform to Section 2303, "Minimum Standards and Quality."
2. Plywood Sheathing and Subflooring: Refer to Section 2304, Article 2304.6, "Wall Sheathing," Article 2304.7, "Floor and Roof Sheathing," Table 2304.6, and Tables 2304.7(1) through 2304.7(5).
3. Fastener Requirements: Refer to Section 2304, Article 2304.9, "Connections and Fasteners," and Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule."
  - a. Additional DSA-SS Fastening Requirements: Refer to Section 2304, Article 2304.9.1.1, "Additional Requirements."

C. Coordinate work in this Section with work in related Sections.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with requirements of Division 01.

B. Deliver products in manufacturer's original containers, dry and undamaged, with seals and labels intact.

C. Storage and Protection:

1. Store materials in a dry secure place; neatly stacked to prevent sagging or damage to edges, ends, and surfaces. Protect from weather, surface contaminants, corrosion, construction traffic, and other potential damage.

2. Stack plywood and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## 1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Environmental Requirements: Maintain uniform moisture content of lumber at 19 percent or less at time of installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Plywood Structural Sheathing and Structural Subflooring: Each panel shall be legibly identified as to type, grade and specie by APA grade. If plies are spliced, the slope of the scarf shall not be steeper than 1:8. White pockets will not be permitted in face plies.

### 2.2 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Plywood: DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2.
- B. Oriented Strand Board: DOC PS 2.
- C. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Application: Treat plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

### 2.3 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1.
  1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.4 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWP A U1.
  1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  2. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
  3. Use Interior Type A, Low Temperature (LT) unless otherwise indicated. (Refer to U1, Commodity Specification H.)
  4. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for roof sheathing and where indicated. (Refer to U1, Commodity Specification H.)
- B. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## SHEATHING

06 16 00-3

D. Application: Treat plywood in the following locations:

1. Roof and wall sheathing within 48 inches of fire walls.
2. Roof sheathing.
3. Subflooring and underlayment for raised platforms.

2.5 WALL SHEATHING

A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C1177/C1177M

- 1) Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Georgia-Pacific Gypsum, LLC; DensGlass Sheathing or comparable product by one of the following:

- a) CertainTeed Corporation.
- b) Continental Building Products, LLC.
- c) National Gypsum Company.
- d) USG Corporation.

- 2) Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch thick.

- 3) Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation.

B. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I; Exterior; Exposure 1, Structural I; or Exposure 1 sheathing as appropriate to intended application.

1. Span Rating: As appropriate for intended application.

2.6 ROOF SHEATHING

A. See Section 075419 PVC Roofing.

2.7 SUBFLOORING AND UNDERLAYMENT

A. Plywood Combination Subfloor-Underlayment: DOC PS 1, Exterior, Structural I; C-C Plugged; Exterior, C-C Plugged; Exposure 1, Structural I, Underlayment; or Exposure 1, Underlayment single-floor panels as appropriate for intended application.

B. Plywood Subflooring: Exterior, Structural I; Exterior; Exposure 1, Structural I; or Exposure 1 sheathing as appropriate to intended application, single-floor panels or sheathing.

1. Span Rating: As appropriate for intended application.

C. Underlayment, General: Provide underlayment in nominal thicknesses indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/4 inch over smooth subfloors and not less than 3/8 inch over board or uneven subfloors.

1. Plywood Underlayment for Resilient Flooring: DOC PS 1, with fully sanded face.
2. Plywood Underlayment for Carpet: DOC PS 1.

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. For roof and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.
  - 2. Code Requirements: Refer to CBC Chapter 23, Section 2304, Article 2304.9, "Connections and Fasteners," and Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule."
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
  - 1. For wall and roof sheathing panels, provide screws with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117.
- E. Screws for Fastening Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing board to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117. Provide washers or plates if recommended by sheathing manufacturer.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Wood Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 or ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine job site conditions and verify field dimensions.
- B. Verify framing for acceptable placement, spacing, and tolerance (alignment and plumb).
- C. Verify that framing and furring are securely attached.
- D. Verify that all blocking, headers, and supports are in place to support plumbing fixtures, grab bars, towel racks, shelves, and similar items.
- E. Verify that insulation (thermal or acoustical) is secured.
- F. Verify firestopping work; refer to Section 07 84 00.
- G. Verify that surfaces to be bonded with an adhesive are free of dust, dirt, grease, and any other foreign matter.

## SHEATHING

06 16 00-5



### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- D. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- F. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

### 3.3 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30S, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
  - 2. Plywood Structural Sheathing and Structural Subflooring: Install to pattern indicated and provide blocking at joints where noted on Drawings. Center all joints over bearing supports. Nail to framing as indicated. Install plywood with face plies perpendicular to joists or studs unless indicated otherwise. Where plywood is the substrate for exterior plaster finish, leave 1/8 inch gaps at butt end joints and 1/16 inch gaps at horizontal joints.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
  - 1. Roof and Wall Sheathing:
    - a. Nail to wood framing. Apply a continuous bead of glue to framing members at edges of wall sheathing panels.
    - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
  - 2. Combination Subfloor-Underlayment:
    - a. Glue and nail to wood framing.
    - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
  - 3. Subflooring:
    - a. Glue and nail to wood framing.
    - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.

### SHEATHING

06 16 00-6

- c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
    - 4. Underlayment:
      - a. Nail or staple to subflooring.
      - b. Space panels 1/32 inch apart at edges and ends.
      - c. Fill and sand edge joints of underlayment receiving resilient flooring immediately before installing flooring.
  - C. Nailing Requirements: Except as otherwise specified, all nailing shall be as scheduled on Drawings:
    - 1. Nails or Spikes shall be common wire unless noted otherwise. Penetration of nails or spikes shall be one-half the length of the nail or spike into the piece receiving the point. However, to connect pieces 2 inch in thickness, 16d nails shall be used unless noted otherwise.
      - a. Bore holes for nails wherever necessary to prevent splitting. Hole size shall not exceed 75 percent of nail diameter.
      - b. Use finish or casing nails for finish work.
    - 2. Use of nailing guns is limited by CBC requirements and subject to approval by DSA. Submit nailing gun and nail data for approval.
- 3.4 TOLERANCES
- A. Maximum variation from true flatness: 1/4 inch in 10 feet in any direction.
- 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
- A. Cleaning and Repair: Clean surfaces that have been spotted or soiled during sheathing application.
- B. Defective Work: Remove and replace defective work that cannot be satisfactorily repaired, at no cost to Owner.
- C. Protection: Protect installed work against damage from other construction work.
- D. Upon completion of the work of this Section, remove all surplus material, rubbish and debris from the premises and leave floors broom clean.

END OF SECTION 06 16 00

## SECTION 070150.19 - PREPARATION FOR REROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Full tear-off of entire roof system.
  - 2. Removal of flashings and counterflashings.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPS: Molded (expanded) polystyrene.
- B. Full Roof Tear-off: Removal of existing roofing system down to existing roof deck.
- C. OSB: Oriented strand board.
- D. Partial Roof Tear-off: Removal of selected components and accessories from existing roofing system.
- E. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to work of this Section.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preliminary Roofing Conference: Before starting removal Work, conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing tear-off, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Reroofing preparation, including roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. Temporary protection requirements for existing roofing system components that are to remain.
    - c. Existing roof drains and roof drainage during each stage of reroofing, and roof-drain plugging and plug removal.

- d. Construction schedule and availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
- e. Existing roof deck conditions requiring Architect notification.
- f. Existing roof deck removal procedures and Owner notifications.
- g. Condition and acceptance of existing roof deck and base flashing substrate for reuse.
- h. Structural loading limitations of roof deck during reroofing.
- i. Base flashings, special roofing details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect reroofing.
- j. HVAC shutdown and sealing of air intakes.
- k. Shutdown of fire-suppression, -protection, and -alarm and -detection systems.
- l. Asbestos removal and discovery of asbestos-containing materials.
- m. Governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
- n. Existing conditions that may require Architect notification before proceeding.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
  - 1. Include certificate that Installer is approved by warrantor of existing roofing system.
  - 2. Include certificate that Installer is licensed to perform asbestos abatement.
- B. Field Test Reports:
  - 1. Fastener pull-out test report.
- C. Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including exterior and interior finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as having been damaged by reroofing operations.
  - 1. Submit before Work begins.
- D. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of demolished roofing materials and hazardous wastes, such as asbestos-containing materials, by a landfill facility licensed to accept them.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning roofing removal.
  - 2. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will not occupy portions of building immediately below reroofing area.
- B. Protect building to be reroofed, adjacent buildings, walkways, site improvements, exterior plantings, and landscaping from damage or soiling from reroofing operations.
- C. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities.
- D. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- E. Weather Limitations: Proceed with reroofing preparation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit Work to proceed without water entering existing roofing system or building.
  - 1. Remove only as much roofing in one day as can be made watertight in the same day.
- F. Hazardous Materials: hazardous materials, such as asbestos-containing materials, may be encountered in the Work.
  - 1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
  - 2. Existing roof will be left no less watertight than before removal.
  - 3. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner.
    - a. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TEMPORARY PROTECTION MATERIALS

- A. EPS Insulation: ASTM C578.
- B. Plywood: DOC PS 1, Grade CD, Exposure 1.
- C. OSB: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1.

### 2.2 INFILL AND REPLACEMENT MATERIALS

- A. Use infill materials matching existing roofing system materials unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Plywood roof sheathing, wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are specified in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- C. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners with metal or plastic plates listed in FM Approvals' RoofNav, and acceptable to new roofing system manufacturer.

## 2.3 AUXILIARY REROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Use auxiliary reroofing preparation materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with components of existing and new roofing system.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:
  - 1. Protect existing roofing system that is not to be reroofed.
  - 2. Loosely lay 1-inch- minimum thick, EPS insulation over existing roofing in areas not to be reroofed.
    - a. Loosely lay 15/32-inch plywood or OSB panels over EPS. Extend EPS past edges of plywood or OSB panels a minimum of 1 inch.
  - 3. Limit traffic and material storage to areas of existing roofing that have been protected.
  - 4. Maintain temporary protection and leave in place until replacement roofing has been completed. Remove temporary protection on completion of reroofing.
  - 5. Comply with requirements of existing roof system manufacturer's warranty requirements.
- B. Seal or isolate windows that may be exposed to airborne substances created in removal of existing materials.
- C. Shut off rooftop utilities and service piping before beginning the Work.
- D. Test existing roof gutters to verify that they are not blocked or restricted.
  - 1. Immediately notify Architect of any blockages or restrictions.
- E. Coordinate with Owner to shut down air-intake equipment in the vicinity of the Work.
  - 1. Cover air-intake louvers before proceeding with reroofing work that could affect indoor air quality or activate smoke detectors in the ductwork.
- F. During removal operations, have sufficient and suitable materials on-site to facilitate rapid installation of temporary protection in the event of unexpected rain.
- G. Maintain roof drains in functioning condition to ensure roof drainage at end of each workday.
  - 1. Prevent debris from entering or blocking roof drains and conductors.
    - a. Use roof-drain plugs specifically designed for this purpose.
    - b. Remove roof-drain plugs at end of each workday, when no work is taking place, or when rain is forecast.
  - 2. If roof drains are temporarily blocked or unserviceable due to roofing system removal or partial installation of new roofing system, provide alternative drainage method to remove water and eliminate ponding.

- a. Do not permit water to enter into or under existing roofing system components that are to remain.

### 3.2 ROOF TEAR-OFF

- A. Notify Owner each day of extent of roof tear-off proposed for that day.
- B. Lower removed roofing materials to ground and onto lower roof levels, using dust-tight chutes or other acceptable means of removing materials from roof areas.
- C. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced, built-up bituminous roofing using a power broom.
- D. Remove pavers and accessories from roofing.
  1. Store and protect pavers and accessories for reuse in manner not to exceed structural loading limitations of roof deck.
  2. Discard cracked pavers.
- E. Full Roof Tear-off: Remove existing roofing and other roofing system components down to the existing roof deck, unless indicated otherwise on drawings. Existing roof gutters shall remain.
  1. Remove substrate board, vapor retarder roof insulation and cover board.
  2. Remove base flashings and counter flashings.
  3. Remove perimeter edge flashing and gravel stops.
  4. Remove expansion-joint covers.
  5. Remove flashings at pipes, curbs, mechanical equipment, and other penetrations.
  6. Remove roof drains indicated on Drawings to be removed.
  7. Remove wood blocking, curbs, and nailers.
  8. Bitumen and felts that are firmly bonded to concrete decks are permitted to remain if felts are dry.
    - a. Remove unadhered bitumen, unadhered felts, and wet felts.
  9. Remove fasteners from deck.
  10. Provide temporary support of pipes and conduit supported by or over the roof assembly.

### 3.3 DECK PREPARATION

- A. Inspect deck after tear-off of roofing system.
- B. If broken or loose fasteners that secure deck panels to one another or to structure are observed, or if deck appears or feels inadequately attached, immediately notify Architect.
  1. Do not proceed with installation until directed by Architect.
- C. If deck surface is unsuitable for receiving new roofing or if structural integrity of deck is suspect, immediately notify Architect.
  1. Do not proceed with installation until directed by Architect.
- D. Provide additional deck securement as indicated on Drawings.

- E. Replace plywood roof sheathing at damaged areas and as indicated on Drawings.

### 3.4 BASE FLASHING REMOVAL

- A. Remove existing base flashings.
  - 1. Clean substrates of contaminants, such as asphalt, sheet materials, dirt, and debris.
- B. Do not damage metal counterflashings that are to remain.
  - 1. Replace metal counterflashings damaged during removal with counterflashings specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

### 3.5 FASTENER PULL-OUT TESTING

- A. Retain independent testing and inspecting agency to conduct fastener pull-out tests according to SPRI FX-1, and submit test report to Architect and roofing manufacturer before installing new roofing system.
  - 1. Obtain roofing manufacturer's approval to proceed with specified fastening pattern.
    - a. Roofing manufacturer may furnish revised fastening pattern commensurate with pull-out test results.

### 3.6 DISPOSAL

- A. Collect demolished materials and place in containers.
  - 1. Promptly dispose of demolished materials.
  - 2. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - 3. Storage or sale of demolished items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- B. Transport and legally dispose of demolished materials off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 070150.19



## SECTION 07 01 50.61 – ROOF COATING FOR RESTORING AGED METAL ROOFING SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. This specification provides a remedial roof coating for application over existing weathered metal roofing systems of all profiles. Application is restricted to circumstances in which the metal panel substrate is in sound condition but requires a rejuvenation of the overall finish to prolong the useful life of the metal roofing system. When properly applied in conjunction with seam restoration and fastener replacement, the GacoFlex S42 Series Elastomeric Silicone Roof Coating provides a weathertight seal that protects the substrate from degradation caused by ultra violet light (UV), water, and other normal weathering hazards. The metal panels must be free of deflection and should have a slope ratio of 2:12 or greater to promote positive drainage.
2. Suitable metal surfaces to receive a GacoFlex S42 Series Elastomeric Silicone Roof Coating include steel (aged at least one year or treated galvanized steel), anodized aluminum, and pre-finished metal (other than siliconized and fluorocarbon finishes). The GacoFlex S42 Series Elastomeric Silicone Roof Coating is intended to renew an existing finish or add improved reflectivity to bare metal.
3. Adhesion tests are strongly recommended prior to bidding. A Coating Applicator that is licensed by the product manufacturer should perform wet and dry adhesion tests as instructed in GacoFlex General Instructions GW-1-3 Adhesion Testing Procedures using the products listed in Section 2.2.

- B. RELATED SECTIONS

1. 07 62 00 – Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
2. 07 72 00 – Roof Accessories

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's standard submittal package including specification, installation instructions and general information for each waterproofing material.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Submit current Letter of Good Standing from the specified waterproofing manufacturer.

- C. Substrate Conditions: Applicator to present to owner a completed inspection report verifying substrate condition and any noted defects not specifically addressed in regard to the installation of the coating.
  - 1. Surface shall be free from loose dirt, stone, debris, moisture, and shall be in stable condition. Any work on the area to receive this application shall be completed prior to the installation of the coating.
  - 2. Applicator shall complete a substrate inspection prior to the start of the installation of the coating. The architect/owner and Applicator shall accept the substrate. Start of the work constitutes acceptance.

#### 1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Primary waterproofing materials shall be the products of a single manufacturer. Secondary materials shall be recommended by the primary manufacturer. The manufacturer shall have a minimum of ten (10) years' experience in the manufacture of materials of this type.
- B. Applicators shall have a minimum of five (5) years' experience in the application of waterproofing materials of the type specified. The Applicator shall possess a current Letter of Good Standing from the specified waterproofing manufacturer.
- C. Pre-Installation Conference: Prior to the commencement of the installation, meet at the jobsite with a representative of the coating manufacturer, Applicator, general contractor, architect, and other parties affected by this section. Review the methods and procedures, substrate conditions, scheduling, and safety.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Owner/owner's representative shall reject damaged or non-conforming materials. Rejected materials must be removed immediately from the job site.
- B. Store the coating materials as recommended by the manufacturer and conforming to applicable safety regulatory agencies: town or city, state, and federal. Refer to all applicable data including, but not limited to: Safety Data Sheets, Product Data Sheets, product labels, and specific instructions for personal protection.
- C. Provide adequate ventilation, protection from hazardous fumes, and overspray potential to workers and associated trades in close proximity of the site application.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer warrants that the material supplied will meet or exceed physical properties as published. The Applicator guarantees that workmanship will be free of defects in coating application. Since performance of previously applied coatings is beyond the control of Manufacturer and Applicator, requests for additional warranty coverage shall be subject to prior approval by Manufacturer.
- B. A FIFTEEN (15) YEAR MATERIAL AND LABOR WARRANTY MUST BE SUPPLIED BY THE PRODUCT MANUFACTURER.
- C. PROTECTION OF BUILDING AND OCCUPANTS:

1. All surfaces not to receive the coating specified shall be protected from overspray hazard, e.g., windows, doors, exterior surfaces and facades, parking lots, and vehicles. Protective coverings shall be secured against wind and shall be vented if used in conjunction with applications preventing collection and moisture.
  2. Applicator to post signs noting potential overspray hazard within 400 ft (122 m) of applications.
  3. All air intake ventilation equipment shall be turned off to prevent fumes from entering building.
  4. Surfaces damaged during application shall be restored at no expense to the owner.
  5. No smoking signs to be posted as mandated by local fire officials.
- D. SUBSTRATE: Proceed with work as specified only after substrate construction, preparation, and detail work has been completed.
- E. EQUIPMENT: All equipment used during operations shall be located so as not to adversely affect the daily operations or endanger occupants, structure, or materials on-site. All spray equipment must be grounded during operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Gaco, [www.gaco.com](http://www.gaco.com)
1. Or approved equal

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. CLEANER: GacoFlex GacoWash Concentrated Cleaner
- B. SACRIFICIAL TAPE: Scotch Blue™ Original Painter's Tape or equivalent (as needed)
- C. PRIMER: GacoPrime LVOC Primer (as needed)
1. ALTERNATE: GacoFlex E5320 2-Part Epoxy Primer/Filler (as a rust inhibitor)
- D. FLASHING:
1. GacoFlex 66S Reinforcing Polyester Mesh
  2. GacoFlex SF4200 Seam Seal
  3. GacoPatch Silicone Roof Sealant
- E. COATING: GacoFlex S42 Series Elastomeric Silicone Roof Coating having the following physical properties:

GacoFlex S42 Series   Elastomeric Silicone Roof Coating		
PROPERTY	VALUE	TEST METHOD
TENSILE STRENGTH	450 psi (3.1 MPa)	ASTM D412
ELONGATION AT BREAK (0 °F (-18 °C))	169 %	ASTM D412
SOLIDS	96.5 % by weight 95 % by volume	ASTM D1644 ASTM D2697
VOC	37 g / L (0.081 lb. / gal)	EPA Method 24
REFLECTANCE (INITIAL)	0.88	C1549

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Metal panels must be structurally sound and securely fastened. Severe oxidation may render some panels unsuitable to serve as a proper substrate for the coating and should be replaced as needed.
- B. Verify that substrate is ready to receive work; surface is clean, dry, and free of substances that could affect bond.
- C. Verify that all other work involved with this area, done under other sections, has been completed and accepted by the architect, general contractor, or owner prior to starting the waterproofing application.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. NOTE: IT IS EXTREMELY IMPORTANT FOR THE ROOF TO BE CLEAN AND DRY.
- B. Inspect metal fasteners and retighten where possible. Where fasteners are stripped out, missing, corroded, or neoprene grommets are deteriorated, replace with oversize screws. Inspect horizontal and vertical seams, panel end laps, and tension bars/straps. Where necessary, remove fasteners to separate the panels, remove existing sealant, add new butyl caulk, and re-secure with new fasteners to create a water-tight compression seal.
- C. Remove heavy deposits of dirt, leaves and other debris from the roof using a stiff broom. Then apply GacoWash Concentrated Cleaner according to label instructions with sprayer of choice, using a 3 - 4 ft (0.9 - 1.2 m) arc pattern. A Hudson-type agricultural sprayer, conventional pressure sprayer or airless sprayer is recommended. Allow solution to stand for 10-15 minutes, adding a light mist of water to prevent drying. While it sets, lightly agitate any heavily soiled areas with a broom or brush. Do not allow dirt to settle in low areas. Use a commercial power washer >3,000 psi (21 MPa) to remove debris and continue rinsing until all suds are gone. Start at the highest point of the roof and work towards the lowest point. For low-sloped roofs, work away from and then back towards, roof drains. It is important to keep the surface wet until all of the GacoWash and other residue has been completely rinsed off and the surface is clean. After cleaning and rinsing the roof, ensure no dirt or debris is present.
- D. BIOLOGICAL CONTROL: Areas of algae, mildew or fungus on the roof or an existing coating should be treated with a solution of 1-part household bleach to 3-parts water, followed by a power wash rinse using clean water.
- E. DRYING: Allow surfaces to dry thoroughly. Examine the roof, paying particular attention to areas of physical damage or previous repairs to determine that residual water has in fact dried before applying GacoFlex S42 Series Roof Coating.

NOTE: Drying time depends on weather conditions such as temperature, humidity, and air movement. The above drying times assume good weather (70 °F / 21 °C daytime temperature) and no rain. Conditions of lower temperature and rain will require a longer period for drying.

- F. Structurally sound metal panels with moderate to extensive oxidation should be cleaned and/or lightly abraded to remove loose surface rust and treated with a rust-inhibiting primer to help prevent corrosion from spreading.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. TECHNICAL ADVICE: The installation of this coating shall be accomplished with the advice of, the manufacturer's technical representative. Contact Technical Services for assistance.
- B. PRIMER:
1. COVERAGE RATE: If adhesion testing indicated the need for a primer, apply GacoPrime LVOC Primer at an approximate rate of 200 - 250 ft<sup>2</sup> / gal (18 - 23 m<sup>2</sup> / 3.8 L). Avoid puddling of primer on the surface. Target Wet Film Thickness (WFT) is 6 - 8 mils. Apply through one of the following methods:
    - a. BRUSH: Use solvent resistant brush and apply.
    - b. ROLLER: Apply GacoPrime with a solvent resistant short nap roller (standard 3/8 in (10 mm) nap recommended).
    - c. SPRAY: Do not thin. Use pressure pot or airless sprayer to apply primer. Avoid puddling of primer on surface when spraying. This is a very low viscosity fluid, so a small tip size is recommended.
  - 1) CURING TIME: Allow appropriate amount of cure time before applying base / topcoats (approximately 2 hours depending on ambient temperature). The primer will dry to a slightly tacky film. Test the primer film by pressing firmly with a finger and removing. Properly dried film will be well bonded to the substrate. If the film is removed from the substrate allow further drying time.
  - 2) NOTE: Oxidized metal panels that have been treated with a rust-inhibiting primer as described in 3.2.E must be primed with two (2) coats of GacoPrime LVOC Primer.
- C. AT ALL SEAMS AND LAPS, CHOOSE ONE OF THE FOLLOWING:
1. Apply GacoFlex S42 Series Elastomeric Silicone Roof Coating by brush or roller at a minimum width of 6 in (16 cm) centered on the seam at minimum rate of 1.5 gal / 100 ft<sup>2</sup> (5.7 L / 9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) to obtain a Wet Film Thickness (WFT) of 24 mils (approx. 200 LF / gal (61 LM / 3.8L). Immediately embed a 4 in (100 mm) strip GacoFlex 66S Reinforcing Polyester Mesh into the wet coating until the Polyester Mesh is completely saturated. The Polyester Mesh must be smoothly applied without wrinkles, "fish mouths," blisters, or pin holes. Once the Coating with embedded Polyester Mesh is firm to the touch, apply another coat of GacoFlex S42 Series Elastomeric Silicone Coating at a minimum rate of 1.5 gal/ 100 ft<sup>2</sup> (5.75 L / 9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) to completely encapsulate the Polyester Mesh. Allow to cure for a minimum of 24 hours (longer in overcast or low humidity conditions) before applying GacoFlex S42 Series Elastomeric Silicone Coating topcoat.
  2. Install sacrificial tape (Scotch Blue or equivalent) over all horizontal seams. Apply GacoFlex SF4200 Seam Seal applied at a minimum of 4 in (102 mm) wide, crested and centered at the seam, with a minimum thickness at the center of 64 wet mils (approx. 70 LF / gal (23 LM / 3.8 L)). Allow to cure for a minimum of 4 hours (longer in overcast or low humidity conditions) before applying a topcoat of GacoFlex S42 Series Elastomeric Silicone Roof Coating.
  3. Install sacrificial tape (Scotch Blue or equivalent) over all horizontal seams. Apply GacoPatch Silicone Roof Sealant at a minimum of 4 in (102 mm) wide, crested and

centered at the seam, with a minimum thickness at the center of 64 wet mills (approx. 70 LF / gal (23 LM / 3.8 L)). Allow to cure for a minimum of 4 hours (longer in overcast or low humidity conditions) before applying a topcoat of GacoFlex S42 Series Elastomeric Silicone Roof Coating.

- D. SLEEPERS: Any units that are sitting on sleepers must be lifted so that the membrane underneath the units can be cleaned, primed, and coated. An approved slip sheet must be placed under the sleepers to protect the coating. If the units are not lifted off the deck so as to be able to accomplish this procedure, the untreated area will be excluded from the manufacturer's warranty.
- E. SILICONE COATING: Apply one (1) coat of GacoFlex S42 Series Elastomeric Silicone Roof Coating at the average rate of 1.75 gal / 100 ft<sup>2</sup> (6.6 L / 9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) to obtain 28 mil Wet Film Thickness (WFT) / 26 mil Dry Film Thickness (DFT). Coat all surfaces including expansion joint covers and flashings. At all edges, penetrations, and standing seams or other vertical corrugations, an extra pass must be applied.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Any variations from the specified limits found by the Applicator or owner's representative shall be corrected by the Applicator.
- B. MINIMUM DRY FILM THICKNESS (DFT): Gaco recommends adding a 10 % variance factor to meet the minimum Dry Film Thickness (DFT) mil requirement to qualify as a warrantable application. It is the Applicator's responsibility to calculate the amount of coating needed to obtain the minimum Dry Film Thickness (DFT) mil thickness.
- C. No traffic shall be permitted on the coated surface for a minimum of three (3) days. Damage to the surface by other trades shall not be the responsibility of the Applicator.

END OF SECTION 07 01 50.61

## SECTION 07 13 26 - SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Modified bituminous sheet waterproofing, fabric reinforced – install at all locations where water can infiltrate through wall surface. This includes planters and retaining walls.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
  - 2. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.

## SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

07 13 26 - 1

1. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

B. Maintain adequate ventilation during preparation and application of waterproofing materials.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard materials-only warranty in which manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement waterproofing material for waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Installer's Special Warranty: Specified form, signed by Installer, covering Work of this Section, for warranty period of two years.

1. Warranty includes removing and reinstalling protection board, drainage panels, insulation, pedestals, and pavers on plaza decks.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Source Limitations for Waterproofing System: Obtain waterproofing materials, protection course, and drainage panels from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET WATERPROOFING

A. Modified Bituminous Sheet: Minimum 60-mil nominal thickness, self-adhering sheet consisting of 56 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated on one side to a 4-mil- thick, polyethylene-film reinforcement, and with release liner on adhesive side.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc; CCW MiraDRI 860/861.
- b. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.; Bituthene 3000.
- c. Henry Company; Blueskin WP 200.
- d. W.R. Meadows, Inc; Mel-Rol.
- e. York Manufacturing, Inc; HydroGard.

2. Physical Properties:

- a. Tensile Strength, Membrane: 250 psi minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
- b. Ultimate Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
- c. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D 1970/D 1970M.
- d. Crack Cycling: Unaffected after 100 cycles of 1/8-inch movement; ASTM C 836/C 836M.
- e. Puncture Resistance: 40 lbf minimum; ASTM E 154/E 154M.

## SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

07 13 26 - 2



- f. Water Absorption: 0.2 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F; ASTM D 570.
  - g. Water Vapor Permeance: 0.05 perm maximum; ASTM E 96/E 96M, Water Method.
  - h. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 200 feet minimum; ASTM D 5385.
- 3. Sheet Strips: Self-adhering, rubberized-asphalt strips of same material and thickness as sheet waterproofing.

## 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
  - 1. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by sheet-waterproofing material manufacturer.
- C. Surface Conditioner: Liquid, waterborne surface conditioner recommended for substrate by sheet-waterproofing material manufacturer.
- D. Liquid Membrane: Elastomeric, two-component liquid, cold fluid applied, of trowel grade or low viscosity.
- E. Substrate Patching Membrane: Low-viscosity, two-component, modified asphalt coating.
- F. Metal Termination Bars: Aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick, predrilled at 9-inch centers.
- G. Protection Course: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch thick or as indicated on drawings.

## 2.4 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 sieve laminated to one side of the core; and with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft..
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. American Hydrotech, Inc.
    - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
    - c. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
    - d. Protecto Wrap Company.

## 2.5 INSULATION

- A. Insulation, General: Comply with Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the waterproofing.
1. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.
  2. Verify that substrate is visibly dry and within the moisture limits recommended in writing by manufacturer. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
  3. Verify that compacted subgrade is dry, smooth, sound, and ready to receive waterproofing sheet.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.
- E. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
1. Install sheet strips of width according to manufacturer's written instructions and center over treated construction and contraction joints and cracks exceeding a width of 1/16 inch.
- F. Bridge and cover isolation joints, expansion joints and discontinuous deck-to-wall and deck-to-deck joints with overlapping sheet strips of widths according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Invert and loosely lay first sheet strip over center of joint. Firmly adhere second sheet strip to first and overlap to substrate.
- G. Corners: Prepare, prime, and treat inside and outside corners according to ASTM D 6135.

## SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

07 13 26 - 4

1. Install membrane strips centered over vertical inside corners. Install 3/4-inch fillets of liquid membrane on horizontal inside corners and as follows:
  - a. At footing-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane in each direction from corner or install membrane strip centered over corner.
- H. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at drains and protrusions according to ASTM D 6135.

### 3.3 MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET-WATERPROOFING APPLICATION

- A. Install modified bituminous sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in ASTM D 6135.
- B. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- C. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 2-1/2-inch- minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams, and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
  1. When ambient and substrate temperatures range between 25 and 40 deg F, install self-adhering, modified bituminous sheets produced for low-temperature application. Do not use low-temperature sheets if ambient or substrate temperature is higher than 60 deg F.
- D. Two-Ply Application: Install sheets to form a membrane with lap widths not less than 50 percent of sheet widths, to provide a minimum of two thicknesses of sheet membrane over areas to receive waterproofing.
- E. Horizontal Application: Apply sheets from low to high points of decks to ensure that laps shed water.
- F. Apply continuous sheets over already-installed sheet strips, bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
- G. Seal edges of sheet-waterproofing terminations with mastic.
- H. Install sheet-waterproofing and auxiliary materials to tie into adjacent waterproofing.
- I. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in all directions.
- J. Immediately install protection course with butted joints over waterproofing membrane.
  1. Molded-sheet drainage panels may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer and installed immediately.

### 3.4 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE-PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or other methods that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
  - 1. For vertical applications, install protection course before installing drainage panels.

### 3.5 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch of projections and penetrations.
- B. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive or tape applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a site representative qualified by waterproofing membrane manufacturer to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, membrane application, flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish daily reports to Architect.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 PROTECTION, REPAIR, AND CLEANING

- A. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
- B. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- C. Protect installed board insulation and insulation drainage panels from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
- D. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- E. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 13 26

## SECTION 07 21 00 - THERMAL INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
  - 2. Glass-fiber blanket.
  - 3. Batt Sound (acoustical) insulation.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 29 00 "Gypsum Board"
  - 2. Section 07 54 19 "Polyvinyl-chloride (PVC) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURES

- A. Products of the following manufactures form basis for design and quality intended.
1. Johns Manville Insulations, Denver, CO.
  2. Certaineed Corporation, Valley Forge, PA.
  3. Owens-Corning, Toledo, OH.
  4. Thermafiber Division of USG Corp, Wabash, IN.

### 2.2 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type IV: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

### 2.3 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET

- A. Formaldehyde-Free Glass-Fiber Blanket, Reinforced-Foil Faced: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
1. Basis of Design: Johns Manville FSK-25, or equal conforming to the following:
  2. Thermal Resistance: R values to achieve overall assembly U-Factor no greater than applicable value in Table 140.3-B CEC unless noted otherwise in T-24 Energy report.
  3. Batt Size: As required to fully fill cavity width and height or length
  4. Thickness: As required to meet specified R-value without compression.
  5. Facing: Faced on one side with flame resistant foil facing.
  6. Flame Spread: Less than 25, ASTM E84
  7. Permeance: 0.05 perms, ASTM E 96.

### 2.4 BATT SOUND (ACOUSTICAL) INSULATION

- A. Sound Attenuation Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I; preformed glass fiber, formaldehyde-free, "Sound Control Batts", acoustical fiber glass insulation, by Johns Manville or equal. Conforming to the following:
1. Size: As required to fully fill cavity width and height.
  2. Thickness: 3-5/8" for 4" walls and 5-1/2" for 6" walls, minimum 10" thick between floors.
  3. Facing: Unfaced.
  4. Flame Spread: Less than 25, ASTM E84.
  5. Smoke Developed Rating: Maximum 50.
  6. Location: At **all** interior walls.

## THERMAL INSULATION

07 21 00 - 2

## 2.5 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
  - 1. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - 2. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
- B. Adhesively Attached, Angle-Shaped, Spindle-Type Anchors: Angle welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
  - 1. Angle: Formed from 0.030-inch- thick, perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet with each leg 2 inches square.
  - 2. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
- C. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.
  - 1. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:
    - a. Crawl spaces.
    - b. Ceiling plenums.
    - c. Attic spaces.
- D. Insulation Standoff: Spacer fabricated from galvanized mild-steel sheet for fitting over spindle of insulation anchor to maintain air space as indicated between face of insulation and substrate to which anchor is attached.
- E. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates without damaging insulation, fasteners, or substrates.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.
  - 2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C 1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
  - 4. Attics: Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
  - 5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.

## THERMAL INSULATION

07 21 00 - 4



6. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.
    - a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed as indicated on Drawings.
  7. Batts Under Wood Roof Decks: Install foil-faced flanged-type insulation batts secured with spindle anchors. Staple flanges together at maximum 4" centers and seal joints at abutting vertical surfaces with a pressure-sensitive plastic tape. Provide 16 gauge galvanized string wires under batts wherever necessary to prevent sagging, stretched taut.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft..
  2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 21 00

## SECTION 07 25 00 - WEATHER BARRIERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Building wrap.
  - 2. Flexible flashing.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For building wrap, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing according to referenced standards.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For water-resistive barrier and flexible flashing, from ICC-ES.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

- A. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air barrier; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide DuPont Safety & Construction; Tyvek CommercialWrap or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Dorken Systems Inc.
    - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
    - c. Kingspan Insulation Limited.
    - d. Ludlow Coated Products.
    - e. Raven Industries, Inc.
    - f. Reemay, Inc.

### WEATHER BARRIERS

07 25 00 - 1

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 20 perms per ASTM E 96/E 96M, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
  3. Air Permeance: Not more than 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. at 0.3-inch wg when tested according to ASTM E 2178.
  4. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.
  5. Flame Propagation Test: Materials and construction shall be as tested according to NFPA 285.
- B. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

## 2.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING

- A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber compound or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); DuPont Flashing Tape.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Vycor Butyl Self Adhered Flashing.
    - c. Protecto Wrap Company; BT-25 XL.
    - d. Raven Industries Inc.; Fortress Flashshield.
    - e. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Wind-o-wrap.
    - f. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
    - g. Fiberweb, Clark Hammerbeam Corp.; Aquaflash 500.
    - h. Fortifiber Building Systems Group; Fortiflash 25.
    - i. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Vycor Plus Self-Adhered Flashing.
    - j. MFM Building Products Corp.; Window Wrap.
    - k. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Polyguard JT-20 Tape.
    - l. Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Presto-Seal.
  2. Flame Propagation Test: Materials and construction shall be as tested according to NFPA 285.
- B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended in writing by flexible flashing manufacturer for substrate.
- C. Nails and Staples: Product recommended in writing by flexible flashing manufacturer and complying with ASTM F 1667.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Cover exposed exterior surface of sheathing with water-resistive barrier securely fastened to framing immediately after sheathing is installed.
- B. Cover sheathing with water-resistive barrier as follows:
  - 1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
  - 2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch overlap unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
  - 1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
  - 2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

### 3.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - 2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
  - 3. Lap flashing over water-resistive barrier at bottom and sides of openings.
  - 4. Lap water-resistive barrier over flashing at heads of openings.
  - 5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

END OF SECTION 07 25 00

## SECTION 07 54 30 – ADHERED THERMOPLASTIC (PVC) FELTBACK MEMBRANE ROOFING

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 DESCRIPTION

##### A. Summary:

Install an adhered thermoplastic (PVC) feltback membrane roof system, including, but not limited to, primed gypsum cover board, PVC membrane flashings, PVC metal edge flashing, and other components to comprise a weathertight roof system. The roof system shall comply with the herein specified roofing manufacturer's standard written and detail requirements. Note: Sika Sarnafil products and system installation requirements have been utilized as the basis of design for this project.

##### B. System Description:

1. Remove and dispose of existing roof system; including all vertical flashings, penetration flashings and applicable sheet metal down to the structural plywood deck. All removal, hauling, and disposal procedures must be performed by a certified contractor and must meet or exceed all applicable Local and State requirements.
2. As applicable, remove asbestos containing materials (ACM) present in those components and areas of the building subject to the work of this project. The scope of the asbestos removal work shall be as required to comply with Local, State, and Federal regulations and standards. The Applicator shall obtain and pay for all licenses and permits associated with all asbestos work. The Applicator shall provide to the El Monte Union High School District (EMUHSD) Representative copies of all permits, certificates, and other related documents pertaining to the asbestos removal work.
3. As identified by the EMUHSD Representative, remove and dispose of all non-usable roof vents, roof top equipment and applicable curbs. Repair and/or replace plywood decking in accordance with Local building code requirements. Deck replacement shall match the same size and type as that of existing deck. 10 sheets of 4'x8' plywood replacement shall be included in the Base Bid price. Any required deck replacement beyond the included 10 sheets shall be reimbursed at the rate included on the project bid form. All deck replacement shall be verified by EMUHSD prior to replacement.
4. Over the properly prepared plywood roof deck areas install a single layer of 1/4" thick pre-primed gypsum cover board with fiberglass mat facer. The cover board shall be installed directly over the plywood roof deck and shall be secured to the wood deck using Factory Mutual approved heavy duty fasteners and high field strength plates at a rate of 12 attachment plates and fasteners per 4'x8' board (one (1) every 2.667 square feet). Perimeter and corner attachment rates must be increased in accordance with Factory Mutual Data Sheets 1-28/29 requirements.
5. Install a layer of 60-mil thermoplastic (PVC) feltback membrane (EnergySmart White). The membrane shall be installed directly over the gypsum cover board and shall be adhered us-

ing VOC compliant, water-based adhesive. The membrane shall meet or exceed Cool Roof Rating Council (CRRC) requirements for Title 24 compliance.

6. Install new PVC clad metal at perimeter edge locations. The new clad metal shall have a minimum four-inch (4") attachment flange, three-inch (3") minimum vertical face with additional one-half inch (1/2") hemmed "kick" at bottom edge. The vertical face dimension in all cases shall be equal to or greater than the existing metal flashing. The edge metal shall be secured to the structural plywood deck using approved galvanized-steel angular ring-shank nails at a spacing of four-inch (4") on-center, staggered. Install a continuous metal cleat (hook strip) and PVC membrane cover strip in accordance with the Roofing Manufacturer's standard written and detail requirements. Note: Install PVC clad metal covers at all vertical joints in accordance with Roofing Manufacturer's standard requirements. Color of PVC clad metal shall be "White" unless indicated otherwise.
7. Install new 24-Ga. "Kynar" coated GSM gutters and downspouts to match existing (color and dimension) at all existing gutter locations. The new gutters shall have a three-inch (3") wide flange for attachment to the structural plywood deck using galvanized-steel angular ring-shank nails at a spacing of six-inch (6") on-center. The face dimension of gutter shall be one inch (1") less the back dimension of gutter. One-inch (1") wide, 16-gauge GSM spacing straps are to be installed at 36" on-center. The straps are to provide a locking hook strip at face of gutter and shall be attached at the back, top edge of gutter using metal capped grommets fasteners set in approved urethane sealant. The strap is to be configured in a "U" shape to provide clearance for the clad metal edge without modification (refer to Item #8 below). Gutter end-laps are to be two-inch (2") minimum in direction of flow, sealed with approved urethane sealant and pre-painted pop-riveted to match color of gutter. Rivets are to be installed at two-inch (2") on-center spacing. The new gutters shall be fabricated with a four-inch (4") long vertical down shot sleeve which shall be tight-fitted into the new downspouts and internally sealed using Sikaflex 1a, or pre-approved equal one-part urethane sealant. Outside diameter of gutter down shot sleeve shall be 1/16 inch less inside diameter of the new downspout. Downspouts shall be 4"x 4" minimum with 16-gauge attachment straps at top, bottom and no greater than every 5' on-center attached with painted to match metal cap grommets fasteners.
8. Install new PVC membrane expansion-joint (EJ) flashing to replace existing EJ flashing between roof areas. Install new G410 adhered roof deck membrane fastened on both sides of expansion joint with membrane attachment bar and fasteners at 12" on-center. Roof deck membrane shall be carried through expansion joint with membrane bellied between membrane attachment bar and fasteners on either side of expansion joint. Place foam rod into membrane bellows and cover with flashing membrane carried past membrane attachment on both sides of foam rod and hot-air weld providing watertight assembly.
9. Install new PVC membrane expansion-joint (EJ) flashing to replace existing EJ flashing at base of upper gym roof. Install new G459 asphalt resistant flashing membrane over top of properly prepared existing parapet wall with membrane bellows between the roof and onto adjacent parapet wall carried up to the base of existing counter-flashing receiver. Wall flashing to include required membrane attachment on both sides of bellied membrane bellows between the roof and parapet wall. Terminate top of membrane wall flashing at the highest extent possible below the new or existing reglet and counter-flashing. Membrane bellows shall be sized to accommodate compatible and compressible foam rod with diameter one-and-a-half times larger than the EJ gap. Place foam rod into membrane bellows and cover with flashing membrane carried past flashing membrane attachment on both sides of foam rod and hot-air weld providing watertight assembly. Top of vertical wall flashing shall be fastened

at top edge with manufacturer approved fastener and attachment bar at six inches (6") on-center prior to re-installing existing GSM counter-flashing skirt

10. Existing fiberglass reinforced aluminum coated parapet walls at the upper gymnasium roof are to remain in place above the existing sheet metal counterflashing. Any loose wall flashing is to be fastened in place using Factory Mutual approved board plates and concrete anchors to secure sufficiently to the concrete wall. Apply acrylic to asphalt primer over existing surface prior to any repairs or acrylic roof coating. Repair any voids, tears or deficiencies with 3-course treatment of Acrylic Flashing with Polyester Reinforcement. Install 3 gallons of Acrylic Elastomeric Reflective Coating (2 passes at 1.5 gallons per 100 square foot each) up and over the existing parapet wall. At the newly installed and sealed sheet metal counter-flashing, install 3-course treatment of Acrylic Flashing with Polyester Reinforcement. Color acrylic base coat shall be gray, top-coat shall be white. Upon Completion, install new pre-finished, "Kynar" coated sheet metal coping at top of parapet wall (standard color selected by Architect) as outlined below.
11. Install adhered 60 mil PVC flashing membrane up and over the top of the perimeter parapet walls where indicated. Adhere new asphalt/oil resistant PVC flashing membrane to properly prepared parapet wall surface. At top outside edge of parapet wall, install new PVC clad metal edge flashing. The new clad metal shall have a minimum four-inch (4") attachment flange, four-inch (4.0") vertical face with three-quarter inch (3/4") hemmed "kick" at bottom edge. The edge metal shall be secured to the wood substrate using approved fastener screws at a spacing of six-inch (6") on-center, staggered. Install a continuous metal cleat (hook strip) and PVC membrane cover-strip in accordance with the Roofing Manufacturer's standard written and detail requirements and as indicated on project drawings. Membrane flashings color shall be white, clad metal color shall be "Lead Gray" or color selected by District from manufacturer's PVC clad metal color chart.
12. Install adhered 60 mil PVC flashing membrane at interior parapet wall. Remove existing GSM skirt flashings at existing reglet. Adhere new asphalt/oil resistant PVC flashing membrane over the properly prepared parapet wall surface carried up to the base of the existing reglet flashing. Terminate adhered membrane flashing with one-inch (1") wide extruded aluminum attachment bar fastened 12" on-center maximum spacing fastened through top of membrane and approved sealant. Install new 24 gauge GSM skirt flashing matching existing profile and attachment method. All exposed fasteners shall include metal-capped grommited heads. Note: New GSM counter-flashing will be required at bottom of sloped metal roofing transitions to vertical wall flashing.
13. Install adhered, fiberglass reinforced, 60-mil PVC flashing membrane at equipment and/or piping support curbs. Adhere new asphalt/oil resistant PVC flashing membrane encapsulating the equipment curb. Install new 24 gauge galvanized sheet metal (GSM) cap flashing over top of flashed support curb. Re-attach unistrut piping anchorage. Apply approved urethane sealant into pilot hole, install new anchors and reseal above GSM cap.
14. Install adhered 60 mil PVC flashing membrane at metal curbed ducting and exhaust fans. Adhered new asphalt/oil resistant flashing membrane over the properly prepared metal curb substrate carried up within one-half inch (1/2") of the duct joint or integral louver vents on side of curb. Terminate membrane flashing with 2-1/4" wide extruded aluminum termination bar with integral sealant shelf. Termination bar shall be fastened eight-inches on-center (8"o.c.) through the top portion of membrane and urethane sealant between the membrane and metal curb substrate with metal-capped grommited fasteners. Install approved and

tooled urethane sealant at properly prepared and clean metal curb surface and top of termination bar sealant shelf.

15. At removable equipment curbs, install adhered 60-mil "asphalt-oil" resistant flashing membrane. Flashing membrane to be adhered to the properly prepared vertical substrate with approved flashing adhesive and carried up, over the top and down one and a half inches (1.5") on inside of existing curb. Membrane shall be fastened 12" on center at inside of curb. Reinstall equipment to top of curb set in approved urethane sealant and secure to curb using increased diameter, metal-capped grommets fasteners at a spacing of eight inches (8") on-center. Where possible, use existing fastener holes when installing new fasteners. Seal any exposed fastener holes using approved urethane sealant.
16. At all non-removable equipment curbs, install adhered "asphalt-oil" resistant flashing membrane. Flashing membrane shall be adhered to properly prepared vertical substrate to the highest extent possible and terminated with 22-gauge GSM extender piece set in approved urethane sealant and fastened at 12" on center with metal-capped grommets fasteners.
17. Install 60-mil asphalt-oil resistant PVC flashing membrane at existing roof hatch curbs. The flashing membrane shall be adhered to the properly prepared vertical substrate using V.O.C. compliant adhesive. Membrane termination shall be performed using Roofing Manufacturer approved termination reglet with one-part urethane sealant as indicated and in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.
18. Replace all existing roof drain clamping rings, bolts and debris strainers with new matching components. Existing drain bowl and clamping ring flange shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to installing PVC flashing membrane and sealant. All primary and overflow roof drains to receive new asphalt/oil resistant flashing membrane target with one full tube of manufacturer approved urethane sealant between the new flashing membrane and drain bowl receiver flange. Flashing membrane target shall be hot-air welded to roof membrane and installed in accordance with manufacturer's "Clamping Ring Drain" flashing.
19. At all scupper locations, install new PVC clad metal inserts. The inserts shall extend continuous through the wall opening and shall terminate two-inches (2") beyond the outside face of wall, using approved urethane sealant to seal gap at outside edge of insert. Scupper insert installation shall be in accordance with Manufacturer, SMACNA, and local building code requirements. Existing GSM leader-head and downspouts shall remain and be reused. Install stainless steel wire mesh over top of leader-head to prevent debris from entering top of leader-head.
20. All open (soil, vent, etc.) pipes shall be flashed utilizing "Vent Stack" detail with PVC membrane cap carried into top of vent pipe. Note: The use of clamps for membrane termination will not be accepted at open (non-connected) pipes.
21. All connected (conduit, gas, etc.) pipes will be flashed utilizing PVC membrane pipe flashing detail with additional 60 mil fiberglass reinforced PVC membrane storm collar set in approved sealant and clamped in place with stainless steel pipe clamp covering the primary pipe flashing.
22. Remove and dispose of all existing low-profile vents. At the existing openings, install new, 24-Ga. GSM "China Vent" and perform PVC membrane flashing as required. Note: The top



(cap) of the new China Vent shall extend a minimum of three-inches (3") below the opening at the top of the vent and include wire mesh at open vent top to prevent wildlife entry.

23. All "Hot-Pipe" penetrations shall be flashed in accordance with the Roofing Manufacturer's temperature separation requirements. An acceptable metal sleeve, insulation, and rain collar are required to separate PVC flashing membrane from hot pipe, minimum two-inch (2") separation. Use high temperature sealant at rain collar and hot pipe location.
24. All angle-iron support legs shall receive a 60-mil PVC flashing membrane, fully encapsulated 45-degree top-angled wood block. The encapsulated block shall be installed at the inside base of angle-iron and shall be set in a full "bed" application of one-part urethane sealant. Install PVC flashing membrane over block and angle-iron in accordance with Roofing Manufacturer's written and detail requirements. Note: Pitch-pans will not be allowed on this project.
25. Only at locations where membrane flashing is not possible, install liquid flashing. Surface preparation includes cleaning the surface of penetration to clean bright steel and/or void of any surface contamination. Apply primer, base coat, reinforcement fleece and topcoat of liquid flashing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
26. Reseal existing equipment anchors on sheet metal covered equipment platforms. Remove existing anchors, install approved urethane caulking/sealant in pilot hole and install new threaded anchors (oversize when possible). Seal top of anchors with approved sealant.
27. At all inside and outside corner locations, install prefabricated membrane flashings only.
28. At all rooftop electrical conduit, condensate piping, gas piping, etc., install new, prefabricated thermoplastic pipe supports as manufactured by Miro Industries, or pre-approved equal. The pipe supports shall be positioned at a maximum spacing as required allowing for continuous four-inch (4") clearance above the finished roof surface. Properly secure the conduit/piping to the pipe support using approved metal straps.
29. At parapet wall locations that include sheet metal wall coping terminating against plaster, install new GSM saddle. Remove existing plaster sufficiently to allow installation of new GSM saddle tucked under existing underlayment and carrying over top of parapet wall. Following installation of new saddle, install new self-adhered bituminous flashing membrane and plaster surface blended and painted to match existing adjacent plaster surface.
30. Replace existing GSM sheet metal coping with new "Kynar" coated GSM coping. Install adhered PVC flashing membrane over areas without new roof flashing or acrylic wall coating. New coping shall be secured with continuous 22-gauge GSM hook strip at outside face. Inside face of coping shall be secured with metal cap grommited fasteners at 12" o.c. maximum spacing. Color of new coping shall be selected by Architect from standard "Kynar" color chart.
31. At locations with ladder, piping or unistrut is attached to the wall, remove existing anchors and perform flashing work as indicated above. Install additional membrane protection layer, add sealant at fastener pilot hole prior to resetting the equipment and seal the fastener upon completion.
32. Replace existing eyebolts at guy-wire piping supports with welded watertight stanchion with eye loop. Flash new stanchion with membrane pipe flashing at indicated in item #20 above.

33. Install 79-mil PVC walkway tread (Dark Grey color) at locations matching existing walkway layout, two serviceable sides of regularly maintained HVAC equipment, under ballast secured satellite dishes and three open sides of roof hatches. The walkway tread shall be installed in accordance with the Roofing Manufacturer's standard written and detail requirements.
34. Perform all flashing and detail work in strict accordance with the roofing manufacturer's standard written and detail requirements (as indicated within the project detail drawings and/or specification requirements, those specific project requirements shall supersede any corresponding minimum/standard requirements).

C. Work Included:

The work includes but is not necessarily limited to the installation of:

1. Existing Roof Removal
2. Substrate Preparation.
3. Gypsum Cover Board.
4. Cover Board Attachment Plates and Fasteners
5. Flashing Membrane Adhesive.
6. Roof Membrane Adhesive.
7. Membrane Attachment Bars & Fasteners.
8. Thermoplastic (PVC) Feltback Roof Membrane.
9. Thermoplastic (PVC) Flashing Membrane.
10. Metal Flashings.
11. Acrylic Primer and Roof Coating.
12. Sealants.
13. Roof Drains.
14. Sheet metal coping, counterflashing, gutter and downspouts.
15. Equipment Access/Walkway Tread.
16. Prefabricated Pipe Supports (Miro Industries).
17. Plaster wall repair.

## 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Request for Information (RFI): To resolve conflicts or lack of definition that may create construction problems, Bidders for the Work of Section 07543 shall submit a written RFI to Architect/EMUHSD at least 15 days before Bids are due for any conflicts or omissions regarding the Work of this Section should they exist.
- B. Pre-Roofing Conference and Inspection: After approval of submittals but prior to beginning installation of Work of this Section, the Owner's Representative shall hold a meeting at the site attended by the Roofing Applicator, Sheet Metal, Painting, and related Subcontractors, and the Roofing Material Manufacturer to describe in detail the roof system(s) to be installed and to establish agreement, coordination, and responsibilities among the involved trades.
- C. The roofing system shall be applied only by an Applicator authorized by the specified Roofing Manufacturer prior to bid. The Applicator shall have a minimum of five (5) years documented experience with the Roofing Manufacturer. The Owner's Representative reserves the right to request a list of reference projects to verify Applicator's performance/work history. All references must be of similar size and scope, and must be within 100 miles of this project.

- D. The Roofing Manufacturer shall have directly produced the specified field and flashing membranes for the number of years equal to, or greater than that of the warranty term (20 years). The membrane shall have also maintained a consistent base formulation for the same number of years.
- E. The Roofing Manufacturer shall have a *Sustainable Product Certification* conforming to the requirements of *NSF/ANSI 347 – Sustainability Assessment for Single Ply Roofing Membranes*. Minimum certification level established for this project is: *Platinum*.
- F. Use only a Manufacturer who has initiated a post consumer recycling program and can demonstrate a minimum of five projects where the existing PVC membrane has been removed and recycled into new roofing membrane or PVC components.
- G. Membrane Manufacturer must have *Recycled Content Certification* from UL (Underwriters Laboratories) Environment.
- H. Membrane thickness stated in this document refers to waterproofing membrane PVC polymer thickness. Polyester felt backing is always in addition to the required membrane thickness and is measured in weight per square yard. The required weight for felt backing is nine ounces per square yard (9-Oz./Yd<sup>2</sup>). This is a non-negotiable minimum requirement.
- I. Unreinforced or polyester reinforced membranes are prohibited.
- J. Re-labeled / re-packaged ("Private-labeled") primary and flashing membranes will not be accepted.
- K. Membrane Manufacturer must have ISO 14001 Certification and a Responsible Care Program in-place with current good standing status.
- L. Membrane Manufacturer must not require the use of membrane cut edge sealant at any location. This is a maintenance item that the Owner does not accept.
- M. The Manufacturer shall provide interim and final roof inspection from a directly employed dedicated team of experienced inspectors. Sales personnel may not be used for onsite inspection of installations.

### 1.3 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETING

- A. Arrange for a Pre-Installation Meeting between the Applicator, Owner's Representative, General Contractor, Roofing Manufacturer's Representative, and related trades to be held at least two (2) weeks prior to the beginning of roof system installation.
- B. Review contract documents, manufacturer's instructions, project conditions, and proposed methods and procedures related to installation.
  - 1. Identify conditions that would be detrimental to proper installation.
  - 2. Review special details, corner conditions, drainage patterns, penetrations and similar conditions of adjacent construction that will affect or impact surface preparation and installation operations.

3. Review substrates and surfaces to receive materials in order to verify compliance with specified requirements, and with manufacturer's substrate tolerance recommendations and surface preparation requirements, including flatness, levelness, damage and imperfections, and quality of attachment to structure.
4. Review limitations of floor and roof decks for structural loading both during and after installation.
- C. Review governing regulations and specified requirements for certificates, inspection, reports and closeout submittals.
- D. Review sequence of installation, finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, installer's personnel, equipment and facilities necessary to make progress and avoid delays.
- E. Review temporary protection procedures required to be followed to provide protection of stored and installed products and accessories both during and after installation.
- F. Owner's Representative shall record significant meeting discussions, agreements and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions to be taken before work begins. Distribute copy of minutes to Owner's Authorized Representative, to each party present, and to parties who should have been present no later than 3 business days following the meeting.
- G. Do not proceed with installation until all attendees, including all parties who should have been present, provide written acknowledgement of receipt and agreement to the conditions and requirements as described in the "Meeting Minutes". If disagreements cannot be successfully resolved, initiate necessary actions to remove impediments to execution of the Work and reconvene meeting at earliest available date to resolve outstanding disagreements.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A General: Provide installed roofing membrane and base flashings that remain watertight; do not permit the passage of water; and resist specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure.
- B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. The applicator shall submit evidence that the proposed roof system meets local building code requirements and has been tested and approved or listed by the following test organizations.
  1. ASCE/SEI 7 and SPRI's "Wind Load Design Guide for Fully Adhered and Mechanically Fastened Roofing Systems".
    - a. Corner Design Uplift Pressure: 100 lbs. / Ft<sup>2</sup>
    - b. Perimeter Design Uplift Pressure: 70 lbs. / Ft<sup>2</sup>
    - c. Field-of-Roof Design Uplift Pressure: 40 lbs. / Ft<sup>2</sup>
    - d. Safety Factor 2.0
  2. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.: Class A assembly
- D. Energy Performance:

Low-Slope Roofs: Provide roof system with an initial Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) of not less than 100 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency. Roof membrane (not post installation applied finish) shall comply with current California Title 24 Part 6 minimum 3-year aged solar reflectance of 0.63 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75 requirements.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS:

##### A. Submittals following award of project (utilizing the base specified system: Sika Sarnafil)

1. A list of each primary component to be used in the roof system and the Manufacturer's current product data and safety data for each component.
2. Sample copy of Roofing Manufacturer's warranty.
3. Sample copy of Contractor's warranty.
4. Letter from Roofing Manufacturer confirming that the Contractor is an authorized applicator of the specified roof system and confirmation of specified Quality Assurance and Performance Requirements.
5. Shop drawings for any deviations to project specification or construction details with written approval from Technical Department of Roof System Manufacturer. Deviations must be approved by Architect and Owner prior to installation.

##### B. Submittals of equals (15 days prior to bid date)

Submit proposed equals to be considered for use on this project no less than fifteen (15) days prior to bid date. Proposed roof systems which have been reviewed and accepted will be listed in an addendum prior to bid date; only then will roof systems be accepted at bidding. All below referenced letters must be original, wet-ink signed by the proposed Roofing Manufacturer's Technical Director/Manager. Submittals shall include the following:

1. Two 12 inch x 12 inch membrane samples and two samples of each component to be used in the roofing system.
2. Manufacturer's specification matching the herein specified requirements for all Sub-Sections as described. The Manufacturer shall also provide written confirmation that all detail and flashing conditions will be installed in strict accordance with the OWNER'S Standards as indicated within this specification and otherwise stated within the Contract Documents. Acceptance of any other, non-specified manufacturer's material(s) will not be deemed as acceptance for use of said manufacturer's minimum detail and/or installation requirements.
3. Letter from the proposed Roofing Manufacturer stating that the Manufacturer has a minimum of 20 years consistent experience in directly producing the proposed roof system. The letter shall also state that the proposed Manufacturer's membrane has maintained a consistent formulation for a minimum of 20 years.
4. Letter from the Cool Roof Rating Council (CRRC) stating that the proposed PVC membrane demonstrates the required Solar Reflectance Index requirements as stated in Section 1.4 D above. Submit listing as an approved product by the CRRC.

5. Letter from proposed Roofing Manufacturer describing the specified certified polymer thickness program. Included shall be a sample copy of the proposed Manufacturer's certificate for polymer thickness as specified.
6. Letter from the proposed Roofing Manufacturer confirming that it has been engaged in a post-consumer recycling program in compliance with the requirements as started in Section 1.2 F above. The proposed Roofing Manufacturer shall provide written proof that its post-consumer recycling program has achieved *UL Environmental* certification.
7. Complete list of material physical and mechanical properties for each membrane and component including; weights and thicknesses; ultimate elongation; puncture resistance; seam peel strength; breaking strength; tear strength; dimensional stability; low temperature bend; and post-consumer recycle content.
8. Sample copy of specified warranties.
  - a. Manufacturer's 20-Year System Warranty (with no ponding/standing water exclusions).
  - b. Contractor's Two (2) Year Warranty
9. Letter from the proposed Roofing Manufacturer confirming that the Contractor is an authorized applicator of the proposed roof system per the requirements of Section 1.2 C listed above.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, and HANDLING:

All products delivered to the job-site shall be in the original unopened containers or wrappings bearing all seals and approvals. Handle all materials to prevent damage. Place all materials on pallets and fully protect from moisture.

1.7 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. PVC materials may be installed under certain adverse weather conditions but only after consultation with the Roofing Manufacturer, as installation time and system integrity may be affected.
- B. Uninterrupted waterstops shall be installed at the end of each day's work and shall be completely removed before proceeding with the next day's work.
- C. The Applicator shall conduct adhesion tests for cover board securement in accordance with the latest revision of the SPRI/ANSI pull test requirements to verify condition of deck and to confirm expected pull test values. Pull tests shall be performed a minimum of one (1) week prior to roof installation (Building M only).
- D. Arrange work sequence to avoid use of newly constructed roofing as a walking surface or for equipment movement and storage. Where such access is absolutely required, the General Contractor shall provide all necessary protection and barriers to segregate the work area and to prevent damage to adjacent areas. A substantial protection layer consisting of 1/2" plywood over polyester felt or 1/2" plywood over insulation board shall be provided for all new and existing roof areas which receive rooftop traffic during construction.

- E. The Applicator shall verify that all roof drain lines are functioning correctly (not clogged or blocked) before starting work. Applicator shall report any such blockages to the Owner's Representative for corrective action prior to beginning roof system installation.

## 1.8 BIDDING REQUIREMENTS

### A. Bidders Responsibility

Bidders must have held their Roofing Contractors License (C39) for a minimum of five (5) years, with a continuous "Good-Standing" status to qualify to bid on this project. Any discrepancy between measurements and conditions listed within this specification, roof plans, and details, and those actually incurred on the job will be the responsibility of the Applicator.

## 1.9 WARRANTIES

### A. Roofing Manufacturer's 20-Year Full System Warranty: 60 MPH Windspeed Coverage

Upon successful completion of all the work to the Roofing Manufacturer's and Owner's Representative's satisfaction, the 20 Year Full System Warranty shall be issued. The System warranty shall provide Non-Penal Sum (replacement cost) coverage for the roof membrane, all associated accessories that comprise the roof system, and all contractor labor for 20 years. The warranty shall be non-prorated, and shall not exclude ponding/standing water and no time limit shall be assigned for any such ponding/standing water during the warranty term. The warranty shall not exclude regular foot traffic on the roof membrane surface. Warranty shall not obligate the Owner to perform manufacturer defined maintenance work as a condition of continued warranty coverage.

### B. Roofing Applicator/Contractor Two (2) Year Warranty

The Applicator/Contractor shall supply the Owner with a separate two year workmanship warranty. In the event any work related to roofing, flashing, or metal is found to be within the Applicator/Contractor warranty term, defective or otherwise not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Applicator/Contractor shall repair that defect at no cost to the Owner.

- C. "Early Bird" warranties are not to be issued as they will not be accepted by the Owner. The above specified Warranty will be issued only upon acceptance by the Roofing Manufacturer's Technical Department and the Owner's Representative's final approval.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. The components of the adhered PVC feltback membrane roof system are to be products of Sika Sarnafil and/or products utilized by Sika Sarnafil to designate type, quality, and performance standards for this project.
- B. Substitutions: Upon pre-approval in accordance with Section 1.5 B above.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURER AND MEMBRANE

ADHERED THERMOPLASTIC (PVC) FELTBACK MEMBRANE ROOFING

07 54 30 - 11

- A. Sika Sarnafil: G410 60-mil Guaranteed Thickness PVC with 9 oz. integral felt backing (Western Region Contact: (909) 942-0079).
- B. G410-60: Fiberglass reinforced membrane with an integral lacquer coating to repel dirt and sustain long-term solar reflectivity.
- C. Membrane shall be manufactured by Extrusion/Spread Coating process only, producing a monolithic membrane with fully encapsulated fiberglass reinforcement layer and a minimum of 27- mils of "weathering" polymer above the fiberglass reinforcement layer.
- D. Membrane shall conform to ASTM D4434 (latest revision), "Standard for Polyvinyl Chloride Sheet Roofing". Classification: Type II Grade I (fiberglass reinforcement).
- E. Roofing Manufacturer shall certify in writing that the product supplied for this project has a minimum polymer thickness of 60 mils. ASTM +/- tolerance for membrane thickness is not accepted.
- F. Membrane shall comply with California Building Code (CBC) Title 24, Section 118 requirements for solar reflectivity and emissivity. Manufacturer and membrane shall be listed in the Cool Roof Rating Council (CRRC) product listing as outlined by the Department of Energy (DOE) and the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).
- G. As manufactured, membrane shall conform to the following physical properties:
  1. Color to be "EnergySmart" White.
  2. Thickness to be 60-mil (1.50 mm).

Property	ASTM Test Method	Minimum Physical Properties Requirements
Overall Thickness, mil	D751	60
Thickness Over Scrim, mil	--	27
Reinforcing Material	--	Fiberglass
Felt Weight, oz/yd <sup>2</sup>	--	9
(feltback membrane only)		
Breaking Strength, lbf/in (N)	D751	80 (356)
Elongation at Break, %	D751	250 & 220
M.D.(1) & C.M.D. (1)		
Seam Strength, % of original (2)	D751	Pass
Retention of Properties	D3045	--
After Heat Aging		
Breaking Strength, % of original	D751	Pass
Elongation, % of original	D751	Pass
Tearing Resistance, lbf (N)	D1004	17.5 (78)
Low Temperature Bend, -40F(-40C)	D2136	Pass
Accelerated Weather Test	G154	10,000
(Florescent Light UV Exposure),Hours		
Cracking (7x magnification)		None
Discoloration (by observation)		Negligible
Crazing (7x magnification)		None
Linear Dimensional Change, %	D1204	-0.02

ADHERED THERMOPLASTIC (PVC) FELTBAC MEMBRANE ROOFING

07 54 30 - 12



Weight Change After Immersion in Water, %	D570	1.9
Static Puncture Resistance, lbf (kg)	D5602	Pass
Dynamic Puncture Resistance, ft-lbf (J)	D5635	Pass

Recycle Content 9% Pre-consume, 1% Post-consumer

\*Results may differ based upon statistical variations depending upon mixing methods and equipment, temperature, application methods, test methods, actual site conditions, and curing conditions.

(1) M.D. = Machine Direction, C.M.D. = Cross Machine Direction

(2) Failure occurs through membrane rupture not seam failure.

## 2.3 FLASHING MATERIALS

### A. Wall/Curb Flashing

1. G410 Membrane: Fiberglass reinforced membrane adhered to approved substrate using Stabond adhesive. Consult Sarnafil Product Data Sheets for additional information.
2. S327 Membrane: Polyester reinforced membrane for mechanically-attached flashings to approved substrate using Sarnastop.
3. Sarnaclad: PVC-coated, heat-weldable sheet metal. Sarnaclad is a 24 gauge, G90 galvanized metal sheet with a 20 mil (1 mm) unsupported PVC membrane laminated on one side. Consult Sarnafil Product Data Sheet for additional information.

### B. Perimeter Flashing:

1. PVC Clad Metal Edge: PVC coated, heat-weldable sheet metal with continuous 22-gauge galvanized metal cleat. Sarnaclad is a 24 gauge, G90 galvanized metal sheet with a 20 mil (1 mm) unsupported PVC membrane laminated on one side.

### C. Miscellaneous Flashing;

1. Aluminum Membrane Attachment Bar (Sarnastop)
2. Termination Reglet (Sarnareglet)
3. Pipe Boots (Sarnastack)
4. Universal Corners (Sarnacorners)
5. Flashing Membrane Adhesive (Stabond)

## 2.4 COVER BOARD

- A. Georgia-Pacific DensDeck® Prime with EONIC Technology Cover Board or pre-approved equal: Impact and mold resistant, gypsum core fire barrier board with pre-coated glass-mat facers. Manufactured to meet the following requirements:

1. ASTM C 1177 (Consensus Standard).
2. Board Size: 1/4" x 4' x 8' or 1/2" x 4' x 8' as indicated or specified.
3. Weight (nominal): 1/4" = 1.2 Lbs./Ft<sup>2</sup>.
4. Surfacing: Primed Fiberglass Mat.
5. Flexural Strength, Parallel (ASTM C473): 100 lbf, minimum.
6. Flute Span (ASTM E661): 1/4" = 2-5/8 inches.
7. Permeance (ASTM E96): Greater than 17 perms.
8. R-Value (ASTM C518): 1/4" = 0.28.
9. Water Absorption (ASTM C473): Less than 5 percent of weight.

10. Surface Water Absorption (ASTM C473): Nominal 1.0 grams.
  11. Compressive Strength (Applicable Sections of ASTM C472): Nominal 900 pounds per square inch.
  12. Flame Spread/ Smoke Development (ASTM E84): Not more than 0 Flame Spread, 0 Smoke Development
  13. Combustibility (ASTM E136): Noncombustible
  14. Fire resistance rating (UL 790 and ASTM E108): Class A
  15. Mold Resistance (ASTM D3273): Maximum Rating 10 of 10
  16. Bending Radius: 1/4" = 4'.
- B. Tapered Insulation (Crickets Only): 1/2" min. x 4' x 4' sloped rigid roof insulation panels composed of polyisocyanurate closed-cell foam core with coated glass facer laminated to both sides. Manufactured to meet the following requirements:
1. ASTM C1289-11, Type II, Class 2, Grade 2 (20 psi)
  2. Zero Ozone Depletion Potential (ODP) from blowing agent (HCFC-free).
  3. Long-Term Thermal Resistance (LTTR) R-Value based on ASTM 1303-11 and/or CAN/ULC-S770-09: Regardless of published values.
  4. Facer Type: Black matt, fiber reinforced on both sides.
  5. Board Size: 1/2" min. x 4' x 4'.
  6. Tapered Insulation Slope: 1/2" per foot (double the primary slope) or as indicated.

## 2.5 ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

### A. Membrane Adhesive

1. V.O.C. Compliant Water Based Adhesive (Sarnacol 2121 Adhesive): Water-based adhesive used to attach the membrane to the horizontal or near-horizontal substrate. Consult Product Data Sheets for additional information.
- B. Sarnafastener #12: Corrosion-resistant #12 fastener used with attachment plate to attach cover board to wood roof deck.
- C. Sarnaplate: Used with Sarnafasteners to attach cover board to roof deck. Sarnaplate is a 3 inch square or round, 26 gauge stamping of SAE 1010 steel with an AZ 55 Galvalume coating.
- D. Flashing Membrane Adhesive (Stabond Adhesive): Solvent-based reactivating-type adhesive used to attach the membrane to the flashing substrate. Consult Product Data Sheets for additional information.
- E. Sarnafastener-XP: Corrosion-resistant #15 fastener used with membrane attachment bar to attach membrane to wood roof deck or curbed penetrations.
- F. Membrane Attachment Bar (Sarnastop): One (1) inch wide, pre-punched aluminum membrane attachment bar. Used to attach PVC membrane at all perimeter and base-angle transitions. Consult Sarnafil Product Data Sheet for additional information.

## 2.6 WALKWAY PROTECTION

- A. Equipment Access/Walkway Tread (Sikaplan Walkway-20): Polyester reinforced, 79 mil/2.0 mm), weldable membrane with surface embossment. Used as a protection layer from rooftop

traffic. Sarnatred is supplied in rolls of 3.25 feet wide and 32.8 feet long. Consult Sarnafil Product Data Sheet for additional information.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS ACCESSORIES

- A. Sealing Tape: Compressible foam with pressure-sensitive adhesive on one side. Used with metal flashings as a preventive measure against air and wind blown moisture entry.
- B. Sarnasolv: Solvent cleaner used for the general cleaning of scuff marks, etc., from the Membrane surface.

## 2.8 SEALANTS

- A. Depending on substrates, the following sealants are options for temporary overnight tie-ins:
  - 1. Multiple layers of roofing cement and felt.
  - 2. Mechanical attachment with rigid bars and compressed sealant.

## 2.9 EQUIPMENT / PIPING SUPPORTS

- A. Miro Industries, Inc.: Pillow Block or Strut Series piping supports installed over protection membrane to support roof top equipment or piping and protect new PVC Roof System.

## 2.10 MISCELLANEOUS FASTENERS AND ANCHORS:

- A. All fasteners, anchors, nails, straps, bars, etc. shall be post-galvanized steel, aluminum or stainless steel. Mixing metal types and methods of contact shall be assembled in such a manner as to avoid galvanic corrosion. Fasteners for attachment of metal to masonry shall be expansion type fasteners with stainless steel pins. All concrete fasteners and anchors must have a minimum embedment of 1-1/4 inch and must be approved by the fastener manufacturer. All miscellaneous wood fasteners and anchors used for flashings must have a minimum embedment of 1 inch and shall be approved by fastener manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION:

Report to Owner in writing all conditions that interfere with or prevent correct installation of work of this Section.

### 3.2 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETING

- A. Refer to Section 1.3 of this specification for meeting agenda requirements.

Discuss the following additional project aspects:

- 1. Safety
- 2. Set up
- 3. Construction schedule
- 4. Contract conditions

5. Coordination of the work
6. Structural Loading Limitations/Requirements
7. Review of Deck and/or Substrate Conditions

### 3.3 SUBSTRATE CONDITION

- A. Applicator shall be responsible for acceptance or provision of proper substrate to receive new roofing materials.
- B. Applicator shall verify that the work done under related sections meets the following conditions:
  1. Roof drains and/or scuppers have been installed and function properly.
  2. Roof curbs, equipment supports, vents and other roof penetrations are properly secured and prepared to receive new roofing materials.
  3. All surfaces are smooth and free of dirt, debris and incompatible materials.
  4. All roof surfaces shall be free of water.

### 3.4 SUBSTRATE PREPARATION

The roof deck and existing roof construction must be structurally sound to provide support for the new roof system. The Applicator shall load materials on the rooftop in such a manner to eliminate risk of deck overload due to concentrated weight. The Owner's Representative shall ensure that the roof deck is secured to the structural framing according to local building code and in such a manner as to resist all anticipated wind loads in that location.

### 3.5 SUBSTRATE INSPECTION

- A. A dry, clean and smooth substrate shall be prepared to receive the new PVC membrane roof system.
- B. The Applicator shall inspect the substrate for defects such as excessive surface roughness, contamination, structural inadequacy, or any other condition that will adversely affect the quality of work.
- C. The substrate shall be clean, smooth, dry, free of flaws, sharp edges, loose and foreign material, oil and grease. Roofing shall not start until all defects have been corrected.
- D. All roof surfaces shall be free of water.
- E. PVC membrane shall be applied over compatible and accepted substrates only.

### 3.6 COVER BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Cover board shall be fastened to the wood deck with manufacturer approved plate and heavy duty fastener at a rate according to ASCE 7-10, Factory Mutual Class 1-90 and the Roofing Manufacturer's requirements for attachment rates and patterns.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF PVC ROOF MEMBRANE:

- A. General

ADHERED THERMOPLASTIC (PVC) FELTBACK MEMBRANE ROOFING

07 54 30 - 16

1. Roof membrane is to be adhered according to the Roofing Manufacturer and Factory Mutual's requirements.
2. Membrane overlaps shall be shingled with the flow of water where possible.
3. Lay membrane rolls perpendicular to the direction of the roof slope.
4. Tack welding of membrane full or half-width rolls for purposes of temporary restraint during installation on windy days is not permitted. Consult Roofing Manufacturer's Technical Department for further information.
5. Hot-air weld overlaps according to roofing manufacturer's Take test cuts at least 3 times per day.
6. Membrane flashings shall extend 2-1/2 inches past the membrane attachment bar and shall be hot-air welded to the field membrane as required.

### 3.8 HOT-AIR WELDING OF SEAM OVERLAPS :

- A. All field seams shall be hot-air welded using robotic welding equipment only (no hand-held welders). Seam overlaps should be 3 inches wide except for certain details.

### 3.9 MEMBRANE FLASHINGS:

- A. All flashings shall be installed concurrently with the roof membrane as the job progresses.
- B. Stabond Adhesive for Membrane Flashings: Stabond adhesive shall be applied according to instruction found on the Product Data Sheets. The bonded sheet shall be pressed firmly in place with a hand roller.
- C. All flashings shall extend a minimum of eight (8) inches above roofing level unless otherwise accepted in writing. No bitumen shall be in contact with the PVC membrane. All flashing membranes shall be mechanically fastened along the counter-flashed top edge with Sarnareglet or Sarnastop at eight or twelve inches (8"/12") on-center respectively.

### 3.10 PVC CLAD METAL BASE FLASHINGS:

- A. All metal flashings shall be fastened into metal or wood stud nailers or metal stud backing plates with manufacturer approved fasteners. Fasteners shall penetrate the nailer a minimum of 1 inch. Metal shall be installed to provide adequate resistance to bending and allow for normal thermal expansion and contraction.
- B. Adjacent sheets of PVC clad metal shall be spaced 1/4 inch apart. The joint shall be covered with two (2) inch wide aluminum tape. A four (4) inch minimum wide strip of PVC flashing membrane shall be hot-air welded over the joint.

### 3.11 METAL FLASHINGS

- A. Metal details, fabrication practices and installation methods shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following:
  1. Factory Mutual Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 (latest issue).
  2. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA) – latest issue.
- B. Metal joints shall be watertight. Metal flashings shall be securely fastened into metal stud or lumber backing. Fasteners shall penetrate the metal studs or lumber a minimum of one-inch (1").

ADHERED THERMOPLASTIC (PVC) FELTBACK MEMBRANE ROOFING

07 54 30 - 17

Counter flashings shall overlap base flashings at least four (4) inches. Hook strips shall extend past metal studs and shall be securely sealed from air entry.

### 3.12 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Sikaplan Walkway-20: Apply a continuous coat of Stabond adhesive to the deck sheet and the back of Walkway in accordance with Sika Sarnafil's Technical requirements and press Walkway into place with a water-filled, foam-covered roller. Hot-air weld the entire perimeter of the Walkway to the field membrane. Walkway shall be installed at roof access points and two serviceable sides of regularly maintained HVAC equipment.

### 3.13 TEMPORARY CUT-OFF

- A. Flashings shall be installed concurrently with the roof membrane in order to maintain a watertight condition as the work progresses:
  - 1. Temporary waterstops shall be constructed to provide a 100% watertight seal.
  - 2. Stagger of the insulation joints shall be made even by installing partial panels of insulation.
  - 3. New membrane shall be carried into the waterstop sealant.
  - 4. Waterstop shall be sealed to the deck and/or substrate so that water will not be allowed to travel under the new or existing roofing.
  - 5. When work resumes, the contaminated membrane shall be cut out.
  - 6. Sealant, contaminated membrane, insulation fillers, etc. shall be removed from work area and properly disposed of offsite. These materials shall not be used in new work.
- B. If inclement weather occurs while temporary waterstop is in place, Applicator shall provide the labor necessary to monitor the situation to maintain a watertight condition.
- C. If water is allowed to enter under the newly-completed roofing, the affected area shall be removed and replaced at the Applicator's expense.

### 3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion and submit report to Owner's Representative.
- B. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where test results or inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

### 3.15 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, provide written report, with copies to the Owner's Representative.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Contract Completion and according to warranty requirements.

El Monte High School HVAC Project  
El Monte Union High School District  
El Monte, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22201-01  
DSA Submittal

END OF SECTION 07 54 30

ADHERED THERMOPLASTIC (PVC) FELTBACK MEMBRANE ROOFING

07 54 30 - 19

Copyright © 2019 by DLR Group, may be subject to Copyright © 2019 by the American Institute of Architects. Warning: This AIA MasterSpec based document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. A valid, current MasterSpec license is required for editing or use of this document.

## SECTION 07 62 00 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Manufactured reglets with counterflashing.
2. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
3. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
4. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
5. Formed equipment support flashing.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
3. Section 07 54 19 - "Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Roofing" for installation of sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
3. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
4. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.



## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

### A. Product Data: For each of the following

1. Underlayment materials.
2. Elastomeric sealant.
3. Butyl sealant.
4. Epoxy seam sealer.

### B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
8. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
9. Include details of special conditions.
10. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
11. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

### C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
3. Unit-Type Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

### A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

### B. Special warranty.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim like that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested and FM Approvals approved, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
  1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
  2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Architectural Metal Flashing, Condensation and Air Leakage Control, and Reroofing" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

- C. FM Approvals Listing: Manufacture and install copings that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-90. Identify materials with name of fabricator and design approved by FM Approvals.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

## 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Exterior visible sheet metal flashings: Semi-gloss acrylic over factory primed sheet metal.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed; with smooth, flat surface.
  - 1. Finish: ASTM A480/A480M, No. 2D (dull, cold rolled).
- D. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation; prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
  - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat.
  - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

## 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment: Minimum 30 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer in accordance with underlayment manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain underlayment from single source from single manufacturer.

2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970/D1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F or lower.

- B. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3 lb./100 sq. ft. minimum.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
  1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
  2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  3. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
  4. Fasteners for Zinc Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
- C. Solder:
  1. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless steel sheet manufacturer.
- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2-inch-wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- G. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.

- H. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
- J. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions and with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain reglets from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Material: Galvanized steel, 0.028 inch (24 ga) thick minimum.
  - 3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
  - 4. Stucco Type: Provide with upturned fastening flange and extension leg of length to match thickness of applied finish materials.
  - 5. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
  - 6. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
  - 7. Accessories:
    - a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
    - b. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing's lower edge.
  - 8. Finish: mill finish unless noted otherwise.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - 3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - 4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances:

1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
  2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard and by FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams:
1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- 2.6 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS
- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop): Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long sections. Furnish with 6-inch-wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
1. Joint Style: Overlapped, 4 inches wide.
  2. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick, prefinished.
- B. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and interior leg. Miter corners weld watertight. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
1. Coping Profile: As indicated on drawings.
  2. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch-wide, concealed backup plate.
  3. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Galvanized Steel: 0.040 inch thick, prefinished.

- C. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:

- 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (24 ga) thick minimum.

- D. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:

- 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (24 ga) thick minimum.

## 2.7 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches beyond each side of wall openings; and form with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

- 1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.

- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

- 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

- 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
  - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

#### A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment:

1. Install self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment; wrinkle free.
2. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
3. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures.
4. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses.
5. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps and edges with roller.
6. Roll laps and edges with roller.
7. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

#### B. Install slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
2. Lapp joints not less than 4 inches.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

#### A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

1. Install fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and welds.
3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than 12 inches o.c.
6. Space individual cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

#### B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.

1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.



- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  - 1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
  - 2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
  - 3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter.
  - 1. Pretin edges of sheets with solder to width of 1-1/2 inches; however, reduce pretinning where pretinned surface would show in completed Work.
  - 2. Do not solder metallic-coated steel and aluminum sheet.
  - 3. Do not use torches for soldering.
  - 4. Heat surfaces to receive solder, and flow solder into joint.
    - a. Fill joint completely.
    - b. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.
  - 5. Stainless Steel Soldering:
    - a. Tin edges of uncoated sheets, using solder for stainless steel and acid flux.
    - b. Promptly remove acid-flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering.
    - c. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.
- H. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM

- A. Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF ROOF FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard.
  - 1. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes.

2. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.

B. Roof Edge Flashing:

1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
3. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.

C. Copings:

1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.

D. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless steel draw band and tighten.

E. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing.

1. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
2. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing.
3. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches.
4. Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant unless otherwise indicated.

F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF WALL FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING

A. Equipment Support Flashing:

1. Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment.
2. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.

### 3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.
- C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 07 62 00

## SECTION 07 72 00 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof curbs.
  - 2. Roof hatches.
  - 3. Pipe and duct support.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
  - 2. Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
  - 3. Section 23 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for special curbs designed to accommodate seismic and vibration controls.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.

1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.

C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

### 2.2 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof Curbs: Internally reinforced roof-curb units capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, bearing continuously on roof structure, and capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, straight sides, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
- B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
- C. Supported Load Capacity: Coordinate load capacity with information on Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
- D. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.052 inch thick.
- E. Construction:
1. Curb Profile: Manufacturer's standard compatible with roofing system.
  2. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Top Surface: Level top of curb, with roof slope accommodated by sloping deck-mounting flange or by use of leveler frame.
  4. Insulation: Factory insulated with 1-1/2-inch-thick glass-fiber board insulation.
  5. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer under top flange on side of curb, continuous around curb perimeter.
  6. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard, removable, fabricated of same metal and finish as curb.

## ROOF ACCESSORIES

07 72 00 - 2

## 2.3 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated single-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, straight sides, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Babcock-Davis; a Cierra Products Inc. Company.
    - b. Bilco Company (The).
    - c. Bristolite Skylights.
    - d. J. L. Industries, Inc.
    - e. Milcor Inc.; a Gibraltar Company.
    - f. Nystrom, Inc.
    - g. O'Keeffe's Inc.
    - h. Wasco Products, Inc.
- B. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, size as indicated on drawings.
- C. Loads: Minimum 40-lbf/sq. ft. external live load and 20-lbf/sq. ft. internal uplift load.
- D. Hatch Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thickness for hatch size indicated.
  2. Finish: Factory prime coating.
- E. Construction:
1. Insulation: 1-inch-thick, glass-fiber board.
  2. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer continuous around hatch perimeter.
  3. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
  4. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Hardware: Spring operators, hold-open arm, stainless steel spring latch with turn handles, stainless steel butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
1. Provide two-point latch on lids larger than 84 inches.
- G. Ladder-Assist Post: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard device for attachment to roof-access ladder.
1. Operation: Post locks in place on full extension; release mechanism returns post to closed position.
  2. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
  3. Material: Steel tube.
  4. Post: 1-5/8-inch-diameter pipe.
  5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel or powder coat.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## ROOF ACCESSORIES

07 22 00 - 3

## 2.4 PIPE AND DUCT SUPPORTS

- A. Adjustable-Height Roller-Bearing Pipe Supports: Polycarbonate pipe stand base, pipe support, and roller housing, with stainless steel threaded rod designed for adjusting support height, accommodating up to 18 inch diameter pipe or conduit; with provision for pipe retainer and with manufacturer's support pad or deck plate as recommended for penetration-free installation over roof membrane type; as required for quantity of pipe runs and sizes.

## 2.5 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation and mill phosphatized for field painting where indicated.
  - 1. Mill-Phosphatized Finish: Manufacturer's standard for field painting.
  - 2. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil.
- B. Stainless Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- C. Steel Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M, hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M.
- F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, galvanized.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C726, nominal density of 3 lb./cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F, thickness as indicated.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPAC2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- E. Underlayment:
  - 1. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3 lb./100 sq. ft. minimum, rosin sized.
  - 2. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

## ROOF ACCESSORIES

07 22 00 - 4

3. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - F. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
  - G. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
  - H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

## 2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
  3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
  4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.

## ROOF ACCESSORIES

07 72 00 - 5



- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
  - 2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
- D. Roof-Hatch Installation:
  - 1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
  - 2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
  - 3. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89. Install supports and attachments as required to properly support piping. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Space supports for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
- F. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

### 3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 72 00

## SECTION 07 84 13 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
  - 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
  - 3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Conform to CBC for fire resistance ratings and surface burning characteristics.

- C. Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of materials used.
- D. Coordinating Work: Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that designated through penetration firestop systems are installed per specified requirements.
- E. A manufacturer's direct representative (not distributor or agent) to be on-site during initial installation of firestop systems to train appropriate contractor personnel in proper selection and installation procedures. This will be done per manufacturer's written recommendations published in their literature and drawing details.
- F. Through Penetration Firestopping of Fire Rated Assemblies: UL 1479 or ASTM E814 with 0.10 inch water gage minimum positive pressure differential to achieve fire F-Ratings and temperature T-Ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than 1-hour.
  - 1. Wall Penetrations: Fire F-Ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than 1- hour.
  - 2. Floor and Roof Penetrations: Fire F-Ratings and temperature T-Ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than 1-hour.
    - a. Floor Penetrations Within Wall Cavities: T-Rating is not required.
- G. Through Penetration Firestopping of Non-Fire Rated Floor and Roof Assemblies: Materials to resist free passage of flame and products of combustion.
  - 1. Noncombustible Penetrating Items: Noncombustible materials for penetrating items connecting maximum of three stories.
  - 2. Penetrating Items: Materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction for penetrating items connecting maximum of two stories.
- H. Fire Resistant Joints in Fire Rated Floor, Roof, and Wall Assemblies: ASTM E1966 or UL 2079 to achieve fire resistant rating as indicated on Drawings for assembly in which joint is installed.
  - 1. Smoke Barrier Joints Air Leakage: Maximum 5 cfm per foot at 0.30 inches water gage pressure differential.
- I. Fire Resistant Joint Between Floor Slabs and Exterior Walls: ASTM E119 with 0.10 inch water gage minimum positive pressure differential to achieve fire resistant rating as indicated on Drawings for floor assembly.
- J. Surface Burning Characteristics: Maximum 25/450 flame spread/smoke developed index when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- K. Proposed firestop materials and methods shall conform to applicable governing codes having local jurisdiction.
- L. Firestop Systems do not reestablish the structural integrity of load bearing partitions/assemblies, or support live loads and traffic. Installer shall consult the structural engineer prior to penetrating any load bearing assembly.
- M. For those firestop applications that exist for which no UL tested system is available through a manufacturer, an engineering judgment derived from similar UL system designs or other tests will be submitted to local authorities having jurisdiction for their review and approval prior to

installation. Engineering judgment drawings must follow requirements set forth by the International Firestop Council.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:

1. Perform penetration firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
  - a. Penetration firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
    - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
    - 2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."
    - 3) FM Global in its "Building Materials Approval Guide."

### 2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
  1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
  1. F-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
  2. T-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
  3. W-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping systems showing no evidence of water leakage when tested according to UL 1479.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.30-inch wg.

## PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

07 84 13 - 3

1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at and no more than 50-cfm cumulative total for any 100 sq. ft. at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
  1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- F. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.
- C. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.
  1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.
- D. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
  2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

#### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Wall Identification: Permanently label walls containing penetration firestopping systems with the words "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," using lettering not less than 3 inches high and with minimum 0.375-inch strokes.
  1. Locate in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling, or attic space at 15 feet from end of wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet.

### PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

07 84 13 - 4

- B. Penetration Identification: Identify each penetration firestopping system with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of penetration firestopping system edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping systems. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  4. Date of installation.
  5. Manufacturer's name.
  6. Installer's name.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2174.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

END OF SECTION 07 84 13

## SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
  - 2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
  - 3. Urethane joint sealants.
  - 4. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
  - 5. Latex joint sealants.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants. Provide cured samples of materials to be installed in colors selected by the Architect. Printed images will not be accepted in lieu of physical samples.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

### JOINT SEALANTS

07 92 00 - 1

B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:

1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

JOINT SEALANTS

07 92 00 - 2



- B. VOC Content: Sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the following:
  - 1. Architectural sealants shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
  - 2. Sealants and sealant primers for nonporous substrates shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
  - 3. Sealants and sealant primers for porous substrates shall have a VOC content of 775 g/L or less.
- C. Acceptable Products: See Joint Sealant Schedule.
- D. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. Color should match adjacent finishes.

## 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS (FOODSERVICE AREAS)

- A. Single component silicone sealant chemically acceptable for application to surfaces and equipment that may contact edible products in establishments operating under the USDA federal meat and poultry inspection program

## 2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT, A, G, O.
- C. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

## 2.4 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 35, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35, Uses T and NT.
- B. Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

## 2.5 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

## JOINT SEALANTS

07 92 00 - 3

## 2.6 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C834, Type OP, Grade NF.

## 2.7 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or any other type, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

## JOINT SEALANTS

07 92 00 - 4

1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
  3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Porcelain enamel.
    - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.

- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
  - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
    - a. Perform one test for each kind of sealant and joint substrate
  - 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
    - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
  - 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
    - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
    - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
    - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
  - 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.

5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior metal surfaces, including surrounds of windows and skylights.
  1. Joint Sealant: Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT
  2. Acceptable products: Provide one of the following or approved equal.
    - a. GE Silicones SCS 2000 Series
    - b. Dow Corning 795
    - c. Tremco Spectrem 2
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior concrete, concrete masonry and plaster walls.
  1. Joint Sealant: Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT
  2. Acceptable products: Provide one of the following or approved equal.
    - a. Dow Corning 790
    - b. GE Silicones Silpruf
    - c. Tremco Spectrem 1 or Spectrem 3
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior galvanized steel
  1. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 35, T, NT
  2. Acceptable products: Provide one of the following or approved equal.
    - a. Sika Corporation Sika-Flex 1A
    - b. Sonneborn Building Products Div., ChemRex Inc. NP 1
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior building sealant
  1. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex
  2. Acceptable products: Provide the following or approved equal.

- a. Pecora Corp "AC 20",
  - b. Sonneborn "Sonolac",
  - c. Tremco "Tremco Acrylic Latex 834"
  
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Horizontal surfaces, including floor slabs and paving, and under door thresholds.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT
  - 2. Acceptable products: Provide one of the following or approved equal.
    - a. Sonneborn SL 2
    - b. Tremco THC 900/901
  
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Sanitary sealant.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT
  - 2. Acceptable products: Provide the following or approved equal.
    - a. Dow Corning Corp 786 Mildew Resistant
    - b. Sonneborn Sonolalastic Omniplus

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

## SECTION 08 31 13 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples: For each type of access door and frame and for each finish specified, complete assembly minimum 6 by 6 inches in size.
- C. Product Schedule: For access doors and frames.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

#### 2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Acudor Products, Inc.
  - 2. Babcock-Davis.
  - 3. Elmdor/Stoneman Manufacturing Company; a division of Acorn Engineering Company.
  - 4. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
  - 5. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
  - 6. Maxam Metal Products Limited.
  - 7. Milcor; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

### ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

08 31 13 - 1

8. Nystrom, Inc.

B. Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges:

1. Description: Face of door flush with frame, with exposed flange and concealed hinge.
2. Locations: Wall.
3. Door Size: Minimum 30 by 30 inches and as required to access and service hidden component.
4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage, factory primed.
5. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
6. Latch and Lock: Latch bolt, key operated with interior release.

C. Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges (Tiled walls):

1. Description: Face of door flush with frame, with exposed flange and concealed hinge.
2. Locations: Wall.
3. Door Size: Minimum 30 by 30 inches and as required to access and service hidden component.
4. Stainless-Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.062 inch, 16 gage, No. 4 finish.
5. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
6. Latch and Lock: Latch bolt, key operated with interior release.

D. Recessed Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:

1. Description: Door face recessed 5/8 inch for gypsum board infill; with concealed flange for gypsum board installation and concealed hinge.
2. Locations: Ceiling.
3. Door Size: Minimum 30 by 30 inches and as required to access and service hidden component.
4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage, factory primed.
5. Latch and Lock: Latch bolt, key operated with interior release.

## 2.3 FIRE-RATED ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Fire-Rated, Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges:

1. Description: Door face flush with frame, with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal; with exposed flange, self-closing door, and concealed hinge.
2. Locations: Wall.
3. Door Size: Minimum 30 by 30 inches and as required to access and service hidden component.
4. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction.
5. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.036 inch, 20 gage, factory primed.
6. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
7. Latch and Lock: Self-latching door hardware, operated by key.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.



- B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- D. Frame Anchors: Same material as door face.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish mounting holes, attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
  - 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum panels securely attached to perimeter of frames.
  - 2. For concealed flanges with plaster bead for full-bed plaster applications, provide zinc-coated expanded-metal lath and exposed casing bead welded to perimeter of frames.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling. Provide access sleeves for each latch operator and install in holes cut through finish.
  - 1. For recessed doors with plaster infill, provide self-furring expanded-metal lath attached to door panel.
- E. Latch and Lock Hardware:
  - 1. Quantity: Furnish number of latches and locks required to hold doors tightly closed.
  - 2. Keys: Furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - 1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
- E. Stainless-Steel Finishes:
  - 1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
  - 2. Polished Finish: No. 4 finish. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
    - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
    - b. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.

END OF SECTION 08 31 13

## SECTION 08 71 00 - DOOR HARDWARE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Door hardware for gates
- B. Related Divisions:
  - 1. Division 07 – sealant at exterior thresholds
  - 2. Division 08 – metal doors and frames, interior aluminum frames, integrated security systems, specialty doors.
  - 3. Division 28 – security access systems
- C. Specific Omissions: Hardware for the following is specified or indicated elsewhere.
  - 1. Welded steel gates and supports

#### 1.2 REFERENCES:

- A. Use date of standard in effect as of Bid date.
  - 1. American National Standards Institute
    - a) ANSI 156.18 – Materials and Finishes.
  - 2. BHMA – Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association
  - 3. 2019 California Building Code
    - a) Chapter 11B – Accessibility To Public Buildings, Public Accommodations, Commercial Buildings and Public Housing
  - 4. DHI – Door and Hardware Institute
  - 5. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association
    - a) NFPA 80 2019 Edition – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives.
    - b) NFPA 105 – Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
    - c) NFPA 252 – Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
  - 6. UL – Underwriters Laboratories
    - a) UL10C – Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
    - b) UL 305 – Panic Hardware
  - 7. WHI – Warnock Hersey Incorporated State of California Building Code
  - 8. Local applicable codes
  - 9. SDI – Steel Door Institute
  - 10. WI – Woodwork Institute
  - 11. AWI – Architectural Woodwork Institute
  - 12. NAAMM – National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers
- B. Abbreviations
  - 1. Manufacturers: see table at 2.1.A of this section
  - 2. Finishes: see 2.7 of this section.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS & SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. SUBMITTALS: Submit six copies of schedule per D. Only submittals printed one sided will be accepted and reviewed. Organize vertically formatted schedule into "Hardware Sets" with index of doors and headings, indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening. Minimum 10pt font size. Include following information:
  - 1. Type, style, function, size, quantity and finish of hardware items.
  - 2. Use BHMA Finish codes per ANSI A156.18.
  - 3. Name, part number and manufacturer of each item.
  - 4. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
  - 5. Location of hardware set coordinated with floor plans and door schedule.
  - 6. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
- B. Bid and submit manufacturer's updated/improved item if scheduled item is discontinued.
- C. Deviations: Highlight, encircle or otherwise identify deviations from "Schedule of Finish Hardware" on submittal with notations clearly designating those portions as deviating from this section.
- D. If discrepancy between drawings and scheduled material in this section, bid the more expensive of the two choices, note the discrepancy in the submittal and request direction from Architect for resolution.
- E. Substitutions per Division 1. Include product data and indicate benefit to the Project. Furnish operating samples on request.
- F. Items listed with no substitute manufacturers have been requested by Owner to meet existing standard.
- G. Furnish as-built/as-installed schedule with closeout documents, including keying schedule, riser and point-to-point wiring diagrams, manufacturers' installation, adjustment and maintenance information, and supplier's final inspection report.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Hardware supplier: direct factory contract supplier who employs a certified architectural hardware consultant (AHC), available at reasonable times during course of work for project hardware consultation to Owner, Architect and Contractor.
    - a) Responsible for detailing, scheduling and ordering of finish hardware. Detailing implies that the submitted schedule of hardware is correct and complete for the intended function and performance of the openings.
- B. Hardware: Free of defects, blemishes and excessive play. Obtain each kind of hardware (latch and locksets, exit devices, hinges and closers) from one manufacturer.
- C. Exit Doors: Operable from inside with single motion without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.
- D. Furnish hardware items required to complete the work in accordance with specified performance level and design intent, complying with manufacturers' instructions and code requirements.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

- A. Delivery: coordinate delivery to appropriate locations (shop or field).
  - 1. Permanent keys and cores: secured delivery direct to Owner's representative.
- B. Acceptance at Site: Items individually packaged in manufacturers' original containers, complete with proper fasteners and related pieces. Clearly mark packages to indicate contents, locations in hardware schedule and door numbers.
- C. Storage: Provide securely locked storage area for hardware, protect from moisture, sunlight, paint, chemicals, dust, excessive heat and cold, etc.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS AND COORDINATION:

- A. Where exact types of hardware specified are not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, provide suitable types having as nearly as practical the same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate hardware with other work. Furnish hardware items of proper design for use on doors and frames of the thickness, profile, swing, security and similar requirements indicated, as necessary for proper installation and function, regardless of omissions or conflicts in the information on the Contract Documents. Furnish related trades with the following information:
  - 1. Manufacturers' templates to door and frame fabricators.
- C. Check Shop Drawings for doors and entrances to confirm that adequate provisions will be made for proper hardware installation.
- D. Environmental considerations: segregate unused recyclable paper and paper product packaging, uninstalled metals, and plastics, and have these sent to a recycling center.

1.7 WARRANTY:

- A. Part of respective manufacturers' regular terms of sale. Provide manufacturers' written warranties.
- B. Include factory order numbers with close-out documents warranty information:
- C. Minimum warranties:
  - 1. Exit Devices: 

Three years mechanical  
One year electrical

1.9 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Locate latching hardware between 34 inches to 44 inches above the finished floor, per 2019 California Building Code, Section 11B-404.2.7.
  - 1. Panic hardware: locate between 36 inches to 44 inches above the finished floor.
- B. Handles, pull, latches, locks, other operable parts:
  - 1. Readily openable from egress side with one hand and without tight grasping, tight pinching, or twisting of the wrist to operate. 2019 California Building Code Section 11B-309.4.
  - 2. Force required to activate the operable parts: 5.0 pounds maximum, per 2019 California Building Code Section 11B-309.4.

- C Hardware (including panic hardware) shall not be provided with "night latch" (NL) function for any accessible doors or gates unless the following conditions are met per DSA interpretation 10-08 DSA/AC (external), revised 4/28/09. Such conditions must be clearly demonstrated and indicated in the specifications:
1. Such hardware has dogging feature
  2. It is dogged during the time the facility is open
  3. Such dogging operation is performed only by employees as their job function (non-public use)

## PART 2- PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

- A. Listed acceptable alternate manufacturers: these will be considered; submit for review products with equivalent function and features of scheduled products.

ITEM:	MANUFACTURER:	ACCEPTABLE ALTERNATE:
Exit Devices	(VON) Von Duprin	Owner standard

### 2.4 EXIT DEVICES / PANIC HARDWARE

- A. General features:
1. Independent lab-tested 1,000,000 cycles.
  2. Push-through push-pad design. No exposed push-pad fasteners, no exposed cavities when operated. Return stroke fluid dampeners and rubber bottoming dampeners, plus anti-rattle devices.
  3. Deadlocking latchbolts, 0.75 inch projection.
  4. End caps: impact-resistant, flush-mounted. No raised edges or lips to catch carts or other equipment.
  5. No exposed screws to show through glass doors.
  6. Non-handed basic device design with center case interchangeable with all functions, no extra parts required to effect change of function.
  7. Releasable in normal operation with 15-pound maximum operating force per UBC Standard 10-4, and with 32-pound maximum pressure under 250-pound load to the door.
  8. Lever design to match locksets
  9. Accessibility: Require not more than 5 lb to retract the latchbolt, per CBC 2019 11B-404.2.7 and 11B-309.4.
    - a) Mechanical method: where touchpad directly retracts the latchbolt with 5 lb or less of force.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 ACCEPTABLE INSTALLERS:

- A. Can read and understand manufacturers' templates, suppliers' hardware schedule and printed installation instructions. Can readily distinguish drywall screws from manufacturers' furnished fasteners. Available to meet with manufacturers' representatives and related trades to discuss installation of hardware.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hardware per manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate for proper installation and operation. Remove and reinstall or replace work deemed defective by Architect.
  - 1. When hardware is to be attached to existing metal surface and insufficient reinforcement exists, use RivNuts, NutSerts or similar anchoring device for screws.
  - 2. Use manufacturers' fasteners furnished with hardware items, or submit Request for Substitution with Architect.
  - 3. Replace fasteners damaged by power-driven tools.

### 3.4. ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and check for proper operation and function. Replace units, which cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly.
  - 1. Hardware damaged by improper installation or adjustment methods: repair or replace to Owner's satisfaction.
- B. Final inspection: Installer to provide letter to Owner that upon completion installer has visited the Project and has accomplished the following:
  - 1. Has re-adjusted hardware.
  - 2. Has evaluated maintenance procedures and recommend changes or additions, and instructed Owner's personnel.
  - 3. Has identified items that have deteriorated or failed.
  - 4. Has submitted written report identifying problems.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION:

- A. Demonstrate mechanical hardware and electrical, electronic and pneumatic hardware systems, including adjustment and maintenance procedures.

### 3.6 PROTECTION/CLEANING:

- A. Cover installed hardware, protect from paint, cleaning agents, weathering, carts/barrows, etc. Remove covering materials and clean hardware just prior to substantial completion.
- B. Clean adjacent wall, frame and door surfaces soiled from installation / reinstallation process.

### 3.7 SCHEDULE OF FINISH HARDWARE

A. See door schedule in drawings for hardware set assignments.

HW SET: 971

DOOR NUMBER:

G03

EACH TO HAVE:

1	EA	EXIT DEVICE	ALK-AX-98-L-996L-06-PA	626	VON
1	EA	IC RIM CYLINDER	20-057-ICX	626	SCH
1	EA	IC MORT CYL	20-001	626	SCH
		NOTE	BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY GATE MANUFACTURER		B/O

In addition provide the following:

1	EA	AIPHONE	IX-MV7
1	EA	AIPHONE	IX-DVM
1	EA	PATAGONIA	P-640-H-A
1	EA	CONTINENTAL ACCESS	CICP1300 NETBD
1	EA	CONTINENTAL ACCESS	CICP1300 NETBD

HW SET: 972

DOOR NUMBER:

G01 G02

EACH TO HAVE:

2	EA	EXIT DEVICE	ALK-AX-98-L-996L-06-PA	626	VON
2	EA	IC RIM CYLINDER	20-057-ICX	626	SCH
2	EA	IC MORT CYL	20-001	626	SCH
		NOTE	CENTER MULLION BY GATE MANUFACTURER		B/O
		NOTE	BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY GATE MANUFACTURER		B/O

GATE MUST HAVE CENTER POST FOR PANICS TO LATCH TO

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 08 91 19 - FIXED LOUVERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fixed extruded-aluminum louvers.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 11 13 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for louvers in hollow-metal doors.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axis of the blades is horizontal).
- C. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades (i.e., the axis of the blades is vertical).
- D. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.
- E. Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven-rain performance, as determined by testing according to AMCA 500-L.
- F. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified windborne-debris-impact resistance, as determined by testing according to AMCA 540.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.

## FIXED LOUVERS

08 91 19 - 1

1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashings, sealants, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
2. Show mullion profiles and locations.

C. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed according to AMCA 500-L by a qualified testing agency or by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of louver and showing compliance with performance requirements specified.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fixed louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Louvers shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.
  1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.

## FIXED LOUVERS

08 91 19 - 2

- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## 2.3 FIXED EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

- A. Horizontal, Drainable-Blade Louver:

1. Louver Depth: 4 inches.
2. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch.
3. Mullion Type: Exposed.
4. Louver Performance Ratings:
  - a. Free Area: Not less than 8.0 sq. ft. for 48-inch-wide by 48-inch-high louver.
  - b. Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 850 fpm.
  - c. Air Performance: Not more than 0.2-inch wg static pressure drop at 1000-fpm free-area exhaust or intake velocity.
5. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

## 2.4 LOUVER SCREENS

- A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.

1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
2. Screening Type: Bird screening, unless insect screening is indicated

- B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with machine screws with heads finished to match louver, spaced a maximum of 6 inches from each corner and at 12 inches o.c.

- C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.

1. Metal: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.
2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.

- D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:

1. Insect Screening: Stainless steel, 18-by-18 (1.4-by-1.4-mm) mesh, 0.009-inch (0.23-mm) wire.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.

- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003 or 5005, with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.

- C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.

## FIXED LOUVERS

08 91 19 - 3

1. Use Phillips flat-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
  3. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- D. Post installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, fabricated from stainless-steel components, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Maintain equal louver blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head and sill, to produce uniform appearance.
- C. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
1. Frame Type: Channel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than is recommended by manufacturer, or 72 inches o.c., whichever is less.
1. Semi recessed Mullions: Where indicated, provide mullions partly recessed behind louver blades, so louver blades appear continuous. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate with interlocking split mullions and close-fitting blade splices designed to permit expansion and contraction.
  2. Exposed Mullions: Where indicated, provide units with exposed mullions of same width and depth as louver frame. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, provide interlocking split mullions designed to permit expansion and contraction.
- F. Provide subsills made of same material as louvers or extended sills for recessed louvers.
- G. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view, threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish louvers after assembly.

## FIXED LOUVERS

08 91 19 - 4

- B. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect – to match adjacent paint finish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Protect unpainted galvanized- and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.

## FIXED LOUVERS

08 91 19 - 5

- B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction, so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
  - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 08 91 19

## SECTION 09 24 00 - CEMENT PLASTERING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior plasterwork (stucco).

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and installation of control and expansion joints, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of factory-prepared finish coat and for each color and texture specified, 12 by 12 inches, and prepared on rigid backing.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with ASTM C926 requirements.
- B. Exterior Plasterwork:
  - 1. Substrate Temperature: Do not apply stucco system materials to substrates whose temperature are below 40°F or contain frost or ice.
  - 2. Inclement Weather: Do not apply stucco system materials during inclement weather, unless appropriate protection is employed.
  - 3. Sunlight Exposure: Avoid, when possible, installation of the stucco system materials in direct sunlight. Application of finishes in direct sunlight in hot weather may adversely affect aesthetics.
  - 4. Do not apply stucco base coats or finishes if ambient temperature falls below 40°F (4°C) within 24 hours of application. Protect stucco materials from uneven and excessive evaporation during dry weather and strong blasts of dry air.

## CEMENT PLASTERING

09 24 00 - 1

5. Prior to installation, the substrate shall be inspected for surface contamination, or other conditions that may adversely affect the performance of the stucco system materials and shall be free of residual moisture.
- C. Factory-Prepared Finishes: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for environmental conditions for applying finishes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Stucco application shall be to vertical substrates or to substrates sloped for positive drainage according to ASTM C926. Substrates sloped for drainage shall have additional protection from weather exposure that might be harmful to material performance.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide cement plaster assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance according to ASTM E119 by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Substrate Conditions:
  1. Substrates shall be sound, dry and free of dust, dirt, laitance, efflorescence and other harmful contaminants.
  2. Substrate Dimensional Tolerances: Flat with 1/4 in (6.4 mm) within any 10 ft (3 m) radius.
  3. Maximum deflection of substrate system under positive or negative design loads shall not exceed L/360 of span.
- D. Expansion and Control Joints: Continuous expansion and control joints shall be installed at locations in accordance with ASTM C1063 and ASTM C926.
  1. Substrate movement, and expansion and contraction of stucco and adjacent materials shall be considered in design of expansion joints, with proper consideration given to sealant properties, installation conditions, temperature range, coefficients of expansion of materials, joint width to depth ratios, and other material factors. Minimum width of expansion joints shall be as specified by the designer or shown on the project drawings.
  2. In accordance with ASTM C1063, expansion or control joints shall be installed in walls not more than 144 ft<sup>2</sup> (13.4 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, and not more than 100 ft<sup>2</sup> (9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) in area for all non-vertical applications. The distance between joints shall not exceed 18 ft (5.5 m) in either direction or a length-to-width ratio of 2-½ to 1.

### 2.2 METAL LATH

- A. Expanded-Metal Lath: ASTM C847, cold-rolled carbon-steel sheet with ASTM A653/A653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
  1. Diamond-Mesh Lath: Flat and Self-furring, 3.4 lb./sq. yd.
  2. Flat-Rib Lath: Rib depth of not more than 1/8-inch, 3.4 lb./sq. yd.
- B. Paper Backing: FS UU-B-790a, Type I, Grade D, Style 2 vapor-permeable paper.
  1. Provide paper-backed lath at exterior locations and at locations indicated on Drawings.

## CEMENT PLASTERING

09 24 00 - 2



## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C1063, and coordinate depth of trim and accessories with thicknesses and number of plaster coats required.
- B. Metal Accessories:
  - 1. Foundation Weep Screed: Fabricated from hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, G60 zinc coating.
  - 2. Cornerite: Fabricated from metal lath with ASTM A653/A653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
  - 3. External- (Outside-) Corner Reinforcement: Fabricated from metal lath with ASTM A653/A653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
  - 4. Cornerbeads: Fabricated from zinc or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel.
    - a. Smallnose cornerbead with expanded flanges; use unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Smallnose cornerbead with perforated flanges; use on curved corners.
    - c. Smallnose cornerbead with expanded flanges reinforced by perforated stiffening rib; use on columns and for finishing unit masonry corners.
  - 5. Casing Beads: Fabricated from zinc or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; square-edged style; with expanded flanges.
  - 6. Control Joints: Fabricated from zinc or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; one-piece-type, folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with perforated flanges and removable protective tape on plaster face of control joint.
  - 7. Expansion Joints: Fabricated from zinc or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with expanded flanges.
  - 8. Extruded Aluminum Parapet Screed: Mill finish extruded aluminum screed. Basis-of-Design as indicated on drawings.
- C. Soffit vents:
  - 1. Provide continuous soffit vents designed to be used with cement plaster finish.
  - 2. Basis-of-Design:
    - a. Bugstop Soffit Vent by Stockton Products (Product code SBS).
    - b. Emberstop Soffit Vent by Stockton Products (Product code SES). At all locations except where bugstop is indicated.
  - 3. Materials: Galvanized steel with aluminum screen.
  - 4. Size: 4". Height per cement plaster thickness.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Water for Mixing and Finishing Plaster: Potable and free of substances capable of affecting plaster set or of damaging plaster, lath, or accessories.
- B. Fiber for Base Coat: Alkaline-resistant glass or polypropylene fibers, 1/2-inch-long, free of contaminants, manufactured for use in cement plaster.
- C. Bonding Compound: ASTM C932.

## CEMENT PLASTERING

09 24 00 - 3

- D. Fasteners for Attaching Metal Lath to Substrates: #10 Pan Wafer screws at 7" O.C. maximum; ASTM C1063.
- E. Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, not less than 0.0475-inch diameter unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Seals, Sealants and Bond Breakers: Sealants shall conform to ASTM C 920, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT. Backer rod shall be closed-cell polyethylene foam.

## 2.5 PLASTER MATERIALS

- A. Factory Blended Portland Cement Plaster Basecoats and Finish: Products as fabricated by California Stucco, La Habra, Shamrock Stucco, Merlex, Omega Stucco, Inc., Expo Stucco, Spec Mix, Quikrete or other manufacturer member of the Stucco Manufacturer's Association (SMA).
  - 1. Material Standards:
    - a. Portland Cement: ASTM C150.
    - b. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C206.
    - c. Sand: ASTM C897.
    - d. Fibers: ASTM C1116.
  - 2. Three Coat Systems:
    - a. Scratch and Brown Coats: Factory blended fiber reinforced plaster and sand mix conforming to ASTM C926, and requiring only the addition of water. Total thickness of coats: 7/8 inch.
    - b. Finish Coat: Factory blended cementitious stucco color coat, integrally colored with fade-resistant pigments. Coat thickness 1/8 inch.
    - c. Color and Texture: As indicated on drawings, or if not indicated, as selected by the architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Water: Clean, cool, potable water.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Substrate Examination: Examine prior to stucco base installation as follows:
  - 1. Substrate shall be of a type approved by stucco system manufacturer and the building code having jurisdiction. Plywood and OSB substrates shall be gapped 1/8 in (3.2 mm) at all edges.
  - 2. Substrate shall be examined for soundness, and other harmful conditions.
  - 3. Substrate shall be free of dust, dirt, laitance, efflorescence, and other harmful contaminants.

## CEMENT PLASTERING

09 24 00 - 4

4. Substrate construction in accordance with substrate material manufacturer's specifications and applicable building codes.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect adjacent work from soiling, spattering, moisture deterioration, and other harmful effects caused by plastering.
- B. Prepare smooth, solid substrates for plaster according to ASTM C926.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Install components according to requirements for design designations from listing organization and publication indicated on Drawings.

### 3.4 INSTALLING METAL LATH

- A. Metal Lath: Install according to ASTM C1063.
  1. Partition Framing and Vertical Furring: Install flat-diamond-mesh lath.
  2. Flat-Ceiling and Horizontal Framing: Install flat-diamond-mesh or flat-rib lath.
  3. On Solid Surfaces, Not Otherwise Furred: Install self-furring, diamond-mesh lath.

### 3.5 INSTALLING ACCESSORIES

- A. Install according to ASTM C1063 and at locations indicated on Drawings.
- B. Reinforcement for External (Outside) Corners:
  1. Install cornerbead at exterior locations.
  2. Install cornerbead at interior locations.
- C. Control Joints: Locate as approved by Architect for visual effect and as follows:
  1. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) of the following maximum sizes:
    - a. Vertical Surfaces: 144 sq. ft.
    - b. Horizontal and Other Nonvertical Surfaces: 100 sq. ft.
  2. At distances between control joints of not greater than 18 feet o.c.
  3. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) with length-to-width ratios of not greater than 2-1/2:1.
  4. Where control joints occur in surface of construction directly behind plaster.
  5. Where plasterwork areas change dimensions, to delineate rectangular-shaped areas (panels) and to relieve the stress that occurs at the corner formed by the dimension change.

## CEMENT PLASTERING

09 24 00 - 5

### 3.6 PLASTER APPLICATION

- A. Mix proprietary products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, including the applicable stucco system product data sheets and application guidelines.
- B. General: Comply with ASTM C926 and manufacturer's application guide.
  - 1. Do not deviate more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in 10 feet from a true plane in finished plaster surfaces when measured by a 10-foot straightedge placed on surface.
  - 2. Finish plaster flush with metal frames and other built-in metal items or accessories that act as a plaster ground unless otherwise indicated. Where casing bead does not terminate plaster at metal frame, cut base coat free from metal frame before plaster sets and groove finish coat at junctures with metal.
  - 3. Provide plaster surfaces that are ready to receive field-applied finishes indicated.
- C. Walls; Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: For scratch and brown coats, for three-coat plasterwork with 3/4-inch total thickness, as follows:
  - 1. Portland cement mixes.
- D. Ceilings; Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: For scratch and brown coats, for three-coat plasterwork and having 1/2-inch total thickness, as follows:
  - 1. Portland cement mixes.
- E. Plaster Finish Coats: As selected by the architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Concealed Exterior Plasterwork: Where plaster application is used as a base for adhered finishes, omit finish coat.

### 3.7 PLASTER REPAIRS

- A. Repair or replace work to eliminate cracks, dents, blisters, buckles, crazing and check cracking, dry outs, efflorescence, sweat outs, and similar defects and where bond to substrate has failed.

### 3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protection and enclosure of other work after plastering is complete. Promptly remove plaster from door frames, windows, and other surfaces not indicated to be plastered. Repair floors, walls, and other surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during plastering.

END OF SECTION 09 24 00

## SECTION 09 29 00 - GYPSUM BOARD

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.
2. Tile backing panels.
3. Texture finishes.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For the following products:
  1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch-long length for each trim accessory indicated.
  2. Textured Finishes: Manufacturer's standard size for each textured finish indicated and on same backing indicated for Work.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  1. Indications that panels are wet, or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.

2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.

### 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  2. National Gypsum Company.
  3. USG Corporation.
  4. Approved equal.
- B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  1. Thickness: As indicated.
  2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M gypsum board, tested according to ASTM C1629/C1629M.
  1. Core: 5/8-inch, Type X.
  2. Surface Abrasion: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 3 requirements.
  3. Indentation: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
  4. Soft-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
  5. Long Edges: Tapered.
  6. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

## GYPSUM BOARD

09 29 00 - 2

- E. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
  - 1. Core: As indicated.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

## 2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  - 1. Thickness: As indicated.
  - 2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

## 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.
  - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet.
  - 2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - c. Expansion (control) joint.
- B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Fry Reglet Corp.
    - b. Gordon, Inc.
    - c. Pittcon Industries.
  - 2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5.
  - 3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

## 2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  - 2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.

## GYPSUM BOARD

09 29 00 - 3

3. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  1. Prefilling: At open joints and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
  4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
  1. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

## 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
  1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
  2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
  1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation."
- F. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 07 26 00 "Vapor Retarders."

## 2.8 TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Primer: As recommended by textured finish manufacturer.
- B. Non-Aggregate Finish: Premixed, vinyl texture finish for spray application.



- a. Texture: Orange peel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch-wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

## GYPSUM BOARD

09 29 00 - 5

- I. Wood Framing: Install gypsum panels over wood framing, with floating internal corner construction. Do not attach gypsum panels across the flat grain of wide-dimension lumber, including floor joists and headers. Float gypsum panels over these members or provide control joints to counteract wood shrinkage.
- J. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- K. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  - 1. Wallboard Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Type X: As indicated on Drawings and where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. Abuse-Resistant Type: High traffic interior corridors and as indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Mold-Resistant Type: Wet areas not scheduled to receive wall tiles.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.

3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
  4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.
- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

### 3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at locations indicated to receive tile.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

### 3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
  2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
- D. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

### 3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:
  1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.

## GYPSUM BOARD

09 29 00 - 7

2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
3. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

- E. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 APPLYING TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation and Primer: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Apply primer to surfaces that are clean, dry, and smooth.
- B. Texture Finish Application: Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.
- C. Prevent texture finishes from coming into contact with surfaces not indicated to receive texture finish by covering them with masking agents, polyethylene film, or other means. If, despite these precautions, texture finishes contact these surfaces, immediately remove droppings and overspray to prevent damage according to texture-finish manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  1. Indications that panels are wet, or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 09 29 00

## SECTION 09 30 13 - CERAMIC TILING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Ceramic mosaic tile.
2. Glazed wall and floor tile.
3. Stone thresholds.
4. Waterproof membrane for thin-set applications.
5. Crack isolation membrane.
6. Metal edge strips.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
2. Section 09 29 00 "Gypsum Board" for cementitious backer units.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.
- D. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site Insert location.
  1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- C. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
  - 2. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
  - 3. Stone thresholds in 6-inch lengths.
  - 4. Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.
  - 5. Grout in color(s) selected by the architect in minimum 3-inch lengths.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
  - 2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer is a Five-Star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained, and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.10 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with California Building Code, Section 11B-302.1.
  - 1. Tiles shall be stable, firm and slip resistant.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.

### 2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
  - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Where tile is indicated for installation in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for installation indicated and has a record of successful in-service performance.

### 2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Ceramic Tile Type [TF-01]: Ceramic Floor Tile and coved base.

## CERAMIC TILING

09 30 13 - 3

1. Basis-of-Design: As indicated on the drawings.
2. Composition: Porcelain.
3. Certification: Porcelain tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
4. Module Size: As indicated on the drawings.
5. Thickness: 7/16 inch.
6. Face: Plain with cushion edges.
7. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
8. Tile Color and Pattern: As indicated on the drawings.
9. Grout Color: As indicated on the drawings.
10. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as indicated on drawings.

B. Ceramic Tile Type [TW-1 thru TW-4]: Porcelain wall tile.

1. Basis-of-Design: As indicated on the drawings.
2. Type: through body porcelain.
3. Module Size: As indicated on the drawings.
4. Tile Color and Pattern: As indicated on the drawings.
5. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
6. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as indicated on drawings.

## 2.4 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.
- B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C503/C503M, with a minimum abrasion resistance of 10 according to ASTM C1353 or ASTM C241/C241M and with honed finish.
1. Description: As indicated on the drawings.

## 2.5 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

## 2.6 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.12 for standard performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.



## 2.7 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
  - 1. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.
- B. Medium-Bed, Modified Dry-Set Mortar: Comply with requirements in ANSI A118.4. Provide product that is approved by manufacturer for application thickness of 5/8 inch.

## 2.8 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
  - 1. Polymer Type: Ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
  - 2. Polymer Type: Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.
- C. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.
  - 1. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 and 212 deg F, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, 4.0 mils thick.
- C. Metal Edge Strips: Cove and edge profiles as indicated on drawings, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for tiling applications; anodized aluminum exposed-edge material.
- D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

## 2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.

- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
  - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thin set mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
    - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
    - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
  - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
  - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thin set mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproof membrane by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not, factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CERAMIC TILE

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
  - 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
    - a. Exterior tile floors.
    - b. Tile floors in wet areas.
    - c. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
    - d. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
  - 2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
  - 3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
  - 1. Ceramic Mosaic Tile: 1/16 inch.
  - 2. Quarry Tile: 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Glazed Wall Tile: 1/16 inch.
- H. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.

- I. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
  - 1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- J. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in modified dry-set mortar (thin set).
  - 2. Do not extend waterproof membrane or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in modified dry-set mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on waterproof membrane or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.
- K. Metal Edge Strips: Install at any location where tile edges end not at wall joints or where tile has exposed edges.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
  - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
  - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect

metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with Kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

### 3.8 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
  - 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F125-Full; thin set mortar on crack isolation membrane.
    - a. Ceramic Tile Type: See finish schedule in drawings.
    - b. Thin set Mortar: Medium-bed, modified dry-set mortar.
    - c. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
- B. Interior Wall Installations, Wood Studs or Furring:
  - 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W244C or TCNA W244F; thin set mortar on cementitious backer units or fiber-cement backer board over vapor-retarder membrane.
    - a. Ceramic Tile Type: See finish schedule in drawings.
    - b. Thin set Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
    - c. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout, unless indicated otherwise.

END OF SECTION 09 30 13

## SECTION 09 51 13 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for interior ceilings.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 5 percent of quantity installed.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

### ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

09 51 13 - 1

- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products of the following manufactures form the basis for design and quality intended.
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Lancaster, PA
  - 2. USG Interiors, Chicago, IL.
  - 3. Or approved equal.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Provide acoustical panel ceilings designed and installed to withstand the effects of earthquake motions according to the following:
  - 1. California Building Code (CBC) requirements, Seismic Design Category D, including the following:
    - a. ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures," including Section 13, "Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components."
      - 1) Comply with the additional requirements of CBC Section 1617A.1.21.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A according to ASTM E 1264.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

- D. Urea Formaldehyde: Acoustical panel products shall contain no urea formaldehyde. Low-content products (less than 13.5 ppb urea formaldehyde) shall be evaluated on an individual case basis.
- E. Low-Emitting Material: Provide acoustical ceiling panels that are third-party certified to have been tested and passed the following indoor air quality standard:
  - 1. Comply with the volatile organic compound emissions requirements of California Section 01350 as described in CA Department of Health Services Standard Practice CA/DHS/EHLB/R-174.

## 2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc; Products as indicated on drawings: [www.armstrong.com](http://www.armstrong.com).
    - a. Basis of Design Product other mfgs will be considered if equal products are available.
  - 2. Or approved equal.
  - 3. Provide components of each system from one manufacturer.
- B. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels according to ASTM E 1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Product General Requirements
  - 1. Repair cut units to match uncut units including tegular edges.
- D. Refer to Finish Schedule for ACP ceiling tile information.

## 2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Basis-of-Design: Heavy-Duty Armstrong Suprafine XL Grid System (ICC-ES ESR-1308).
- B. Suspension Systems - General: ASTM C 635; die cut and interlocking components, with stabilizer bars, clips, splices, perimeter moldings, and hold down clips as required.
- C. Color: white.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Support Channels and Hangers: Galvanized steel; size and type to suit application, seismic requirements, and ceiling system flatness requirement specified.
- B. Perimeter Moldings: Same material and finish as grid.
- C. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.

## ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

09 51 13 - 3



D. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:

1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
2. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304, nonmagnetic.
3. Nickel-Copper-Alloy Wire: ASTM B 164, nickel-copper-alloy UNS No. N04400.
4. Size: Wire diameter enough for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.106-inch- diameter wire.

E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8-inch-wide; formed with 0.04-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- diameter bolts.

F. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed to secure acoustical panels in place during a seismic event.

G. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.

H. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.

## 2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

A. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements. Edge Trim: 4" White Axiom Classic, AX4STR.

1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with ASTM C 635/C 635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.

B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders unless otherwise indicated and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install acoustical panel ceilings according to ASTM C 636/C 636M, seismic design requirements, manufacturer's written instructions and the following:
  - 1. DSA IR 25-2.13.
- B. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or post installed anchors.
- C. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
  - 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  - 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- D. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- E. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide precise fit.
  - 1. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners' level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. Periodic inspection during the installation of suspended ceiling grids according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections of completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners in successive stages and when installation of ceiling suspension systems on each floor has reached 20 percent completion, but no panels have been installed. Do not proceed with installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers show compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Within each test area, testing agency will select one of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and post installed anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for 200 lbf 200 lbf (890 N) of tension; it will also select one of every two post installed anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for 440 lbf 440 lbf (1957 N) of tension.
  - 2. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 passes consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.
- D. Acoustical panel ceiling hangers, anchors, and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09 51 13

El Monte High School HVAC Project  
El Monte Union High School District  
El Monte, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22201-01  
DSA Submittal

## ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

09 51 13 - 7

## SECTION 09 91 13 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Dunn-Edwards Corporation (a Nippon Paint Holdings Co. Ltd. company).
  - 2. Frazee, Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
  - 3. Vista Paint Corporation.
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include but are not limited to products listed in the finish schedule on drawings.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

# EXTERIOR PAINTING

09 91 13 - 2

- C. Colors: As indicated on drawings.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  2. Fiber-Cement Board: 12 percent.
  3. Wood: 15 percent.
  4. Portland Cement Plaster: 12 percent.
  5. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.
- D. Exterior Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- E. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.

## EXTERIOR PAINTING

09 91 13 - 3

- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Exterior galvanized steel items shall not be painted unless noted otherwise.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
  - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
  - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide enough difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

## EXTERIOR PAINTING

09 91 13 - 4



- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. All items to be painted shall receive a minimum of primer and two coats of paint, typical.
- B. Steel and Iron Substrates:
  - 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI EXT 5.1N:

### EXTERIOR PAINTING

09 91 13 - 5

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, epoxy, anti-corrosive MPI #101.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #163.

C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

- 1. Latex System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.

D. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:

- 1. Latex System MPI EXT 3.1A:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.

E. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates (Semi-Gloss, Acrylic Paint):

- 1. Latex System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #10.

END OF SECTION 09 91 13

## SECTION 09 91 23 - INTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.

3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Dunn-Edwards Corporation (a Nippon Paint Holdings Co. Ltd. company).
  2. Frazee; Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
  3. PPG Industries.
  4. Vista Paint Corporation.
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include but are not limited to products listed in the finish schedule on drawings.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, paints and coatings shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:
  - 1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
  - 2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
  - 3. Dry-Fog Coatings: 400 g/L.
  - 4. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.
  - 5. Anticorrosive and Antirust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: 250 g/L.
  - 6. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 340 g/L.
  - 7. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
  - 8. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
  - 9. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.
- D. Colors: As indicated in the finish schedule on drawings.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  - 2. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

## INTERIOR PAINTING

09 91 23 - 4

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat but provide enough difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
    - h. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or another paintable jacket material.
  - 2. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or another paintable jacket material.
    - h. Other items as directed by Architect.

3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:
  1. Water-Based Concrete Floor Sealer System MPI INT 3.2G:
    - a. First Coat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, matching topcoat.
    - b. Topcoat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99.
- B. Steel Substrates:
  1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 5.1S:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based MPI #107.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #147.



C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 5.3N:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #147.

D. Gypsum Board Substrates:

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 9.2M:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, MPI #50.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
  - a. Topcoat (ceiling, typ.): Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #143.
  - b. Topcoat (walls): Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, eggshell (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #147.

END OF SECTION 09 91 23

## SECTION 10 21 13.19 - PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solid-plastic toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 10 28 00 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories mounted on toilet compartments.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.
- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
  - 3. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
  - 4. Show locations of floor drains.
  - 5. Show overhead support or bracing locations.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6-inch-square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
  - 2. Each type of hardware and accessory.
- D. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents and source.
  - 1. Door Hinges: One hinge(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 2. Latch and Keeper: One latch(es) and keeper(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 3. Door Bumper: One bumper(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 4. Door Pull: One door pull(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 5. Fasteners: Ten fasteners of each size and type.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the California Building Code for toilet compartments designated as accessible.
  - 1. Wheelchair accessible compartment shall comply with Section 11B-604.8.1.
  - 2. Door and door hardware for accessible compartments shall be self-closing and shall comply with CBC Section 11B-404 except that if the approach is to the latch side of an ambulatory compartment door, clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 44" minimum. CBC Figure 11b-604.8.2.
  - 3. A door pull complying with CBC Section 11B-404.2.7 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch.
  - 4. Toe clearance for at least one side portion of a wheelchair accessible compartment shall comply with CBC Section and Figure 11B-604.8.1.4. It shall be 9 inches high minimum above the finish floor and 6 inches deep minimum beyond the compartment side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members. It shall be 12 inches high minimum

### PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

10 21 13.19 - 2

above the finish floor for children's use. Partition components at toe clearance shall be smooth without sharp edges or abrasive surfaces. Toe clearance at the side partition is not required in a compartment greater than 66 inches wide.

## 2.2 SOLID-PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Accurate Partitions Corp.; ASI Group (basis of design).
  - 2. Bradley Corporation.
  - 3. Marlite.
  - 4. Scranton Products.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Overhead braced.
- C. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung.
- D. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Solid, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) panel material, not less than 1 inch thick, seamless, with eased edges, no-sightline system, and with homogenous color and pattern throughout thickness of material. Partitions to be fabricated from polymer resins compounded under high pressure, forming a single component which is waterproof, nonabsorbent and has a self-lubricating surface that resists marks from pens, pencils, markers and other writing instruments. All plastic components shall be covered with a protective plastic coating.
  - 1. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum or stainless-steel strip fastened to exposed bottom edges of solid-plastic components to hinder malicious combustion.
  - 2. Doors and panels to be 55 inch high and mounted 14 inches above finished floor
  - 3. Color and Pattern: Black Paisley
- E. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Manufacturer's standard design; 3 inch high polymer shoe with stainless steel tamper resistant torx head sex bolt.
  - 1. Polymer Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Brackets (Fittings):
  - 1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; satin stainless steel.

## 2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories.
  - 1. Hinges: heavy-duty extruded aluminum wrap-around hinges through-bolted to pilasters and doors with stainless steel tamper resistant Torx head sex bolts.
  - 2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty surface-mounted cast-stainless-steel latch unit designed to resist damage due to slamming, with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper, and with provision for emergency access. Provide units that comply

- with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's heavy-duty combination cast-stainless-steel hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories. Mount with through-bolts. Install at 48" max. height in accessible stalls.
  4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty rubber-tipped cast-stainless-steel bumper at out-swinging doors. Mount with through-bolts.
  5. Door Pull: Manufacturer's heavy-duty cast-stainless-steel pull at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Heavy-duty extruded aluminum (6463 - T5 alloy) with anti-grip design. The head rail is to have a clear anodized finish. Fasten to head rail bracket with stainless steel tamper resistant torx head sex bolts and fasten to the pilasters with stainless steel tamper resistant torx head screws.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless-steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- D. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.
- E. Colors: To match existing partitions or as selected by Architect from MFR's full range.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
- C. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch-wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
  - 1. Maximum Clearances:
    - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
    - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
  - 2. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.
    - a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.
- C. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 10 21 13.19

## SECTION 10 28 00 – TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Public-use washroom accessories.
  - 2. Warm-air dryers.
  - 3. Under lavatory guards.
  - 4. Custodial accessories.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
  - 3. Include electrical characteristics.
- B. Samples: Full size, for each exposed product and for each finish specified.
  - 1. Approved full-size Samples will be returned and may be used in the Work.
- C. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
  - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
  - 2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
  2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OWNER-FURNISHED MATERIALS

- A. Owner-Furnished Materials (Installed by contractor):
1. Paper towel dispensers
  2. Soap dispensers
  3. Toilet paper dispensers (except at accessible toilets/stalls).

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. California Building Code:
1. Elements of sanitary facilities shall be mounted at location in compliance with CBC Sections 11B-602 through 11B-612
  2. Grab bars in toilet facilities and bathing facilities shall comply with CBC Section 11B-609. Grab bars and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements and shall have rounded edges. The space around the grab bars shall be as follows:
    - a. 1-1/2 inch between the grab bar and wall.
    - b. 1-1/2-inch minimum between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends.
    - c. 12 inch minimum between the grab bar and projecting objects above.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.



## 2.3 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Bobrick (Basis-of-Design)
  - 2. Approved Equal
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use washroom accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser (accessible stall):
  - 1. Basis-of-Design: Bobrick B-3888
  - 2. Double roll, recessed, continuous flow, stainless steel unit with tumbler lock.
- D. Toilet Seat Cover Dispenser:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design: Bobrick B221
  - 2. Satin-finish stainless steel. Dispense 250 single- or half-fold toilet seat covers or one box.
- E. Surface-Mounted Paper Towel Dispenser
  - 1. Basis-of-Design: Bobrick B262
  - 2. Description: Unit dispenses C-fold and multifold paper towels.
  - 3. Mounting: Surface.
  - 4. Minimum Towel-Dispenser Capacity: 400 C-fold or 525 multifold paper towels.
  - 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- F. Grab Bar:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design: Bobrick B5806 series.
  - 2. Standard Duty Grab Bars:
    - a. Push/Pull Point Load: 250 pound-force, minimum.
    - b. Dimensions: 1-1/4 inch outside diameter, minimum 0.05-inch wall thickness, exposed flange mounting, 1-1/2-inch clearance between wall and inside of grab bar.
    - c. Length and Configuration: As indicated on drawings.
- G. Sanitary-Napkin Disposal Unit:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design: Bobrick B-254
  - 2. Stainless steel, surface-mounted or recessed as indicated, self-closing door, locking bottom panel with full-length stainless-steel piano-type hinge, removable receptacle.
  - 3. Operation: Electronic sensor activated with timed power cut-off switch.
  - 4. Cover Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
  - 5. Electrical Requirements: 11.5 amps, 1370 Watts at 120 Vac Nominal.
  - 6. Size: 16 inches long by 6 inches deep.
  - 7. Material and Finish: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch-thick stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B19, flat products; ASTM B16/B16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B30, castings.

- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A153/A153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units' level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F446.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 10 28 00

## SECTION 22 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Sleeves.
  - 5. Escutcheons.
  - 6. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 7. Concrete bases.
  - 8. Supports and anchorages.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than plumbing and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and plumbing equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

#### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series or BAg1, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12.

#### 2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.

- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
- D. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- E. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

#### 2.4 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
- B. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- C. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
- D. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

#### 2.5 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.6 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PLUMBING DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

### 3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss,

expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
  - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- O. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

- P. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- Q. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- R. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.



3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.8 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

END OF SECTION 22 05 00

## SECTION 22 05 23 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following general-duty valves:
  - 1. Copper-alloy ball valves.
  - 2. Bronze gate valves.
- B. See Division 21 fire-suppression piping and fire pump Sections for fire-protection valves.
- C. See Division 22 piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated. Include body, seating, and trim materials; valve design; pressure and temperature classifications; end connections; arrangement; dimensions; and required clearances. Include list indicating valve and its application. Include rated capacities; furnished specialties; and accessories.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASME Compliance for Ferrous Valves: ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for dimension and design criteria.
- B. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

## 2.2 VALVES, GENERAL

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article for applications of valves.
- B. Bronze Valves: NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- D. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Valve Actuators:
  - 1. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - 2. Lever Handle: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller, except plug valves.
- F. Extended Valve Stems: On insulated valves.
- G. Valve Flanges: ASME B16.1 for cast-iron valves, ASME B16.5 for steel valves, and ASME B16.24 for bronze valves.
- H. Valve Grooved Ends: AWWA C606.
  - 1. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
    - a. Caution: Use solder with melting point below 840 deg F for angle, check, gate, and globe valves; below 421 deg F for ball valves.
  - 2. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- I. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

## 2.3 COPPER-ALLOY BALL VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Two-Piece, Copper-Alloy Ball Valves:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Hammond Valve.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
    - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- B. Copper-Alloy Ball Valves, General: MSS SP-110.

- C. Two-Piece, Copper-Alloy Ball Valves: Bronze body with full-port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE or TFE seats; and 600-psig minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.

## 2.4 BRONZE GATE VALVES

### A. Manufacturers:

#### 1. Type 2, Bronze, Rising-Stem, Solid-Wedge Gate Valves:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Hammond Valve.
- c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- d. NIBCO INC.

### B. Bronze Gate Valves, General: MSS SP-80, with ferrous-alloy handwheel.

### C. Type 2, Class 150, Bronze Gate Valves: Bronze body with rising stem and bronze solid wedge and union-ring bonnet.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

#### A. Refer to piping Sections for specific valve applications. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

- 1. Shutoff Service: Ball or gate valves.
- 2. Throttling Service: Ball valves.

#### B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

#### C. Domestic Water Piping: Use the following types of valves:

- 1. Ball Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Two-piece, 600-psig CWP rating, copper alloy.
- 2. Gate Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Type 2, Class 150, bronze.

#### D. Select valves, except wafer and flangeless types, with the following end connections:

- 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded ends.
- 3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
- 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded ends.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- C. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- D. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- E. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 2. Dual-Plate Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with keyed coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23

## SECTION 22 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Metal framing systems.
  - 4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 5. Fastener systems.
  - 6. Equipment supports.
- B. See Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
- C. See Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-suppression piping.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- C. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.

- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
  - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
  - 2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - 3. Equipment supports.
- C. Welding certificates.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.
- B. Manufacturers:
  - 1. AAA Technology & Specialties Co., Inc.
  - 2. Bergen-Power Pipe Supports.
  - 3. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  - 4. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  - 5. Empire Industries, Inc.
  - 6. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
  - 7. Globe Pipe Hanger Products, Inc.
  - 8. Grinnell Corp.
  - 9. GS Metals Corp.
  - 10. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  - 11. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 12. PHS Industries, Inc.



13. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
14. Tolco Inc.

- C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
- E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

## 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.
- B. Manufacturers:
  1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  2. Tolco Inc.
  3. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.
- C. Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

## 2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Description: 100-psig- minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.
- B. Manufacturers:
  1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
  3. PHS Industries, Inc.
  4. Pipe Shields, Inc.
  5. Rilco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  6. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.

- D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.
- E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.
    - c. ITW Ramset/Red Head.

## 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  - 7. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  - 8. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.

2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
  3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.
- M. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
  - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
  - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
  - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
  - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
  - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 22 05 29

## SECTION 22 05 48 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Isolation pads.
  - 2. Isolation mounts.
  - 3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
  - 4. Freestanding and restrained spring isolators.
  - 5. Housed spring mounts.
  - 6. Elastomeric hangers.
  - 7. Spring hangers.
  - 8. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
  - 9. Pipe riser resilient supports.
  - 10. Resilient pipe guides.
  - 11. Seismic snubbers.
  - 12. Restraining braces and cables.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
  - 1. In accordance with Section 1632 of Table 126-0 of Volume 2, Title 24, 2016.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
    - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated in accordance with Section 1632 of Table 126-0 of Volume 2, Title 24, 2016



- b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
    3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
  - B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and for designing vibration isolation bases.
    2. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stress and that none will exist.
    3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail overall dimensions, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.
    4. Seismic-Restraint Details:
      - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
      - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
      - c. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
  - C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
  - D. Welding certificates.
  - E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
  - F. Field quality-control test reports.
  - G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-mounting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the CBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPM number from OSHPD, preapproved by ICC-ES, or preapproved by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - 2. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - 3. Mason Industries.
  - 4. Vibration Isolation.
- B. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
  - 1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
- C. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
  - 1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
  - 2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- D. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.
  - 1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.

2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- E. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
  6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
- F. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
  2. Restraint: Seismic or limit-stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- G. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.
1. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
  2. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
  3. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.
- H. Elastomeric Hangers: Single or double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
- I. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.

4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
  7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- J. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
  8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- K. Pipe Riser Resilient Support: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of 2 steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- thick neoprene. Include steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions. Design support for a maximum load on the isolation material of 500 psig and for equal resistance in all directions.
- L. Resilient Pipe Guides: Telescopic arrangement of 2 steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- thick neoprene. Where clearances are not readily visible, a factory-set guide height with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion and contraction shall be fitted. Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.2 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. California Dynamics Corporation.
  2. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  3. Mason Industries.
  4. Vibration Isolation.
- B. Steel Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- C. Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
  4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

## 2.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  2. Hilti, Inc.
  3. Mason Industries.
  4. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
  5. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
- B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
  2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.

3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- thick resilient cushion.
- D. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- E. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
- F. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- G. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- H. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- I. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- J. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
- K. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## 2.4 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
  1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
  2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
  3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
  4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Restraints:
  - 1. Install seismic snubbers on plumbing equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
  - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inches.
  - 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- B. Piping Restraints:
  - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
  - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
  - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.

- E. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- F. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- G. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- H. Drilled-in Anchors:
  - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for piping flexible connections.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.



3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  7. Measure isolator deflection.
  8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
  9. Air-Mounting System Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  10. Air-Mounting System Operational Test: Test the compressed-air leveling system.
  11. Test and adjust air-mounting system controls and safeties.
  12. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Adjust active height of sprint isolators.
- D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 22 05 48

## SECTION 22 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
  - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter Color: White Yellow Insert color.
  - 3. Background Color: Black.
  - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
  - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

### 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## 2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
  - 1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
  - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  - 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 9 Section "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.

5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Condensate Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Yellow.
  - b. Letter Color: Black.
2. Natural Gas Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Yellow.
  - b. Letter Color: Black.
3. Domestic Water Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Black.
  - b. Letter Color: Yellow.
4. Sanitary Waste, Vent and Storm Drainage Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Yellow.
  - b. Letter Color: Black.

### 3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: 2 inches, round.
    - b. Hot Water: 2 inches, round.
  2. Valve-Tag Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Natural.
    - b. Hot Water: Natural.
  3. Letter Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Black.
    - b. Hot Water: Black.

### 3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 22 05 53

## SECTION 22 11 16 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes domestic water piping inside the building.
- B. Water meters will be furnished and installed by utility company.
- C. See Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and fittings.
- D. See Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for water distribution piping specialties.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for potable domestic water piping and components.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Pipe and Fitting Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.
- B. Transition Couplings for Aboveground Pressure Piping: Coupling or other manufactured fitting the same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- C. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types K and L, water tube, annealed temper.
  - 1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  - 2. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.

3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

## 2.2 VALVES

- A. Bronze and cast-iron, general-duty valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Balancing and drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPE AND FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges may be used on aboveground piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-Building-Slab, Water-Service Piping on Service Side of Water Meter: Refer to Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping."
- E. Domestic Water Piping on Service Side of Water Meter inside the Building: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
  1. NPS 4 to NPS 6: Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- F. Under-Building-Slab, Domestic Water Piping on House Side of Water Meter, NPS 4 and Smaller: Hard copper tube, Type K; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- G. Aboveground Domestic Water Piping: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
  1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.



### 3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use bronze ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use cast-iron butterfly or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 2. Throttling Duty: Use bronze ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use cast-iron butterfly valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 3. Hot-Water-Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping.
  - 1. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
  - 2. Install stop-and-waste drain valves where indicated.
- D. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Calibrated balancing valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

### 3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Install under-building-slab copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- D. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Pressure gages are specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping," and drain valves and strainers are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- E. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.
- F. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

### 3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6 ROUGHING-IN FOR WATER METERS

- A. Rough-in domestic water piping for water meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- B. Water meters will be furnished and installed by utility.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe hanger and support devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls, if indicated.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.

- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- G. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- B. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve, and extend and connect to the following:
  - 1. Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water supply and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  - 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures."
  - 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect domestic water piping as follows:
  - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
    - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
    - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
  - 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
  - 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Test domestic water piping as follows:
  - 1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.

2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping using purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16

## SECTION 22 11 19 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
  - 1. Vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Hose bibbs.
  - 3. Water hammer arresters.
  - 4. Trap-seal primer valves.
- B. See Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
- C. See Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. NSF Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
  - 2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 1.5 VACUUM BREAKERS

#### A. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Chicago Faucets
  - b. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
3. Body: Bronze, non-removable, with manual drain.
4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

### 1.6 HOSE BIBBS

#### A. Hose Bibbs HB-1 and HB-2:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: (Refer to plans for model number)
  - a. Acorn Engineering
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Divisions of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
5. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
6. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
8. Vacuum Breaker: Integral non-removable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
9. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough chrome finish.
10. Finish for Service Areas: Rough chrome finish.
11. Finish for Finished Rooms: Polished chrome finish.
12. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Operating key.
13. Operation for Service Areas: Operating key.
14. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
15. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.

16. Include wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

## 1.7 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

### A. Water Hammer Arresters WHA-1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: (Refer to plans for model number)
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. AMTROL, Inc.
  - d. Josam Company.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## 1.8 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER VALVES

### A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Valves TP-1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: (Refer to plans for model number)
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - d. PPP. Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

### 2.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.

- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
  - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  - 1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
  - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- E. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each water pressure-reducing valve,.
- F. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- G. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- H. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- I. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 2. Double-check backflow-prevention assemblies.
  - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 4. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
  - 5. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
- J. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 2.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:



1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer and double-check backflow-prevention assembly according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

## 2.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 22 11 19

## SECTION 22 11 23 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping specialties.
  - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 4. Valves.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig (690 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or less.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. The contractor shall submit complete data as hereinafter specified. Said data, assembled in individual brochures, shall be submitted in seven (7) copies. Each item shall be identified by the

paragraph number and page number as shown in the Specifications. Brochures shall be clearly labeled with project name and Architectural project number. Should corrections be necessary, the Contractor shall resubmit within fifteen (15) calendar days after the submittals are returned by the Architect

B. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Piping specialties.
2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- C. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Architect Construction Manager Owner no fewer than five (5) working days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of natural-gas service without Architect's Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  - 4. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
    - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
  - 5. Corrosion Control: Refer to Soil Corrosivity Study and Report for further requirements.
- B. PE Pipe: ASTM D 2513, SDR 11.
  - 1. PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D 3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
  - 2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.

## 2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
  - 2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
  - 3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
  - 4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
  - 5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa).
  - 6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
  - 7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 8. Maximum Length: 72 inches ((1830 mm)).

## 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 200 psig (862 kPa).
  - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 3. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch (25 mm) and smaller.
  - 4. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) to NPS 2 (DN 50) shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 200 psig (862 kPa).
  - 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
  - 3. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Homestead.
    - b. Walworth.
  - 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  - 3. Plug: Bronze.
  - 4. Ends: Threaded, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  - 5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
  - 6. Pressure Class: 200 psig.
  - 7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Walworth.
2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
7. Operator: Square head or lug type.
8. Pressure Class: 200 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

F. Valve Boxes:

1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

2.5 EARTHQUAKE VALVES

A. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following: (Refer to plans for model number)
  - a. KOSO.
  - b. Pacific Seismic Products, Inc.
3. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Maximum Operating Pressure: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa).
5. Cast-aluminum body with stainless-steel internal parts.
6. Nitrile-rubber, reset-stem o-ring seal.
7. Valve position, open or closed, indicator.
8. Composition valve seat with clapper held by spring or magnet locking mechanism.
9. Level indicator.
10. End Connections: Threaded for valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

## 2.6 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to fit around pipe or tube, and OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With exposed-rivet hinge, set screw, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

## 2.8 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored yellow.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to NFPA 54 to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 54 requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

#### 3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 24 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- E. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.

#### 3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.



- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install escutcheons at penetrations of interior walls, ceilings, and floors.

1. New Piping:

- a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
  - b. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - c. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
  - d. Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - e. Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw.
  - f. Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
  - g. Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw.
  - h. Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- K. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
  - L. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
  - M. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
  - N. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces and, utility spaces, above ceilings.

1. Prohibited Locations:

- a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
  - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- O. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- P. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- Q. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- R. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install earthquake valves outside buildings according to listing.
- D. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

### 3.6 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
  - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
  - 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
  - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
  1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches (2438 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  5. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (15.8 mm).

### 3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- C. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches (1800 mm) of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

### 3.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.10 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping and valves, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat).
    - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.

### 3.12 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be the following:
  - 1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
- B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

### 3.13 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG (3.45 kPa)

- A. Aboveground, branch piping 2 inch and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40 Black Steel pipe with #150 Black Banded malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40 Black Steel pipe with #150 Black Banded malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

- C. Piping Under buildings; NOT Permitted
- D. Galvanized steel pipe and fittings shall NOT be used.

### 3.14 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Connections to Existing Gas Piping: Use valve and fitting assemblies made for tapping utility's gas mains and listed by an NRTL.
- B. Underground:
  - 1. PE valves.
  - 2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze plug valves.
  - 3. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Cast-iron, lubricated plug valves.

### 3.15 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller at service meter shall be the following:
  - 1. Semi-steel Lubricated plug valve.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger at service meter shall be the following:
  - 1. Semi-Steel flanged plug valve.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Semi-Steel lubricated plug valve.
- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger shall be the following:
  - 1. Semi-steel flanged, lubricated plug valve.
- E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be the following:
  - 1. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23

## SECTION 22 13 16 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following for soil, waste, vent and condensate piping inside the building:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Special pipe fittings.
  - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.
- B. Video taped sanitary waste piping

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- B. Flat Work: Concrete walks, concrete driveways, and asphalt paving.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 5 P.S.I.
- B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall be capable of withstanding the effects of seismic events determined according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping; "NSF-tubular" for plastic continuous waste piping; and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

### 2.3 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A888-13 including Annex A1 from accredited ANSI inspection agency or CISPI 301-12 including Annex A1 from accredited ANSI inspection agency.
  - 1. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe
    - a. Manufacturers:
      - 1) A, B & I Foundry.
      - 2) Tyler Pipe & Coupling
      - 3) Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company
  - 2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings (Above Ground Use): With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
    - a. Manufacturers:

- 1) ANACO-HUSKY.
  - 2) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
  - 3) Mission Rubber Co.
  - 4) Clamp-All Corp.
3. Heavy -Duty, Cast-Iron Couplings (Below Grade Use): ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
- a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) ANACO-HUSKY.

## 2.4 COPPER PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L tube, drawn temper.

1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings.

## 2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS:

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastic Piping Systems Components and Related Materials" for plastic piping components. Include markings with "NSF-DWV" for plastic drain, waste and vent, and "NSF=sewer" for plastic sewer piping
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665, drain, waste and vent.
- C. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F891, Schedule 40.
- D. PCV Socket Fittings: ASTM D2665, made of ASTM D3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and fit to Schedule 40 pipe.
- E. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F656.
- F. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2564

## 2.6 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- G. Shielded Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Mission Rubber Co.



- H. Rigid, Unshielded, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

- 1. Manufacturers:

- a. ANACO.

- I. Wall-Penetration Fittings: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and flexing sections for up to 20-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

- 1. Manufacturers:

- a. SIGMA Corp.

## 2.7 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105, high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- B. Form: Sheet.
- C. Color: Black.
- D. Corrosion Control: Refer to Soil Corrosivity Study and Report for further requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Refer to Division 31 Section for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
- C. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
- E. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, cast-iron couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
- F. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, cast-iron couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
- G. Condensate Piping: Type L hard drawn copper pipe with wrought copper solder fittings and couplings.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Sanitary sewer piping outside the building is specified in Division 33.
- B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. In accordance with Mason Seismic restraints guidelines.
- D. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers.
- E. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

- F. Install wall-penetration fitting at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight.
  - G. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
    - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
  - H. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
  - I. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
  - J. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
    - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
    - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
    - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
  - K. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
    - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - L. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
  - M. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - N. All interior condensate piping shall be insulated with closed cell foam insulation: with FHC 25/50 composite rating.
- 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
  - B. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.

- C. All joints of buried hubless cast iron pipe and cast iron couplings shall be field wrapped.
  - 1. Prior to wrapping, fittings and field joints shall be washed with a non-oily solvent and then cleaned with a wire brush. After cleaning, fittings and field joints shall be coated and wrapped as follows:
    - a. Coat of Koppers "Jet-Set" coal tar primer, applied uniformly to dry surfaces.
    - b. Two layers of 2" wide 35 mils thick Polyken 931 black butyl rubber molding tape with 1" lap, covered with one layer of 3/4" wide 15 mils thick Polyken 930 black polyethylene pressure sensitive tape with 1/4" lap.
    - c. Field wrapping shall extend 3 inches beyond joint.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 2. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs according to the following:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Support vertical piping at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- J. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste System: Do not interrupt Existing Sanitary Waste System to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions:
  - 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than seven (7) days in advance of proposed interruption.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption without Architect's Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.
- B. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- C. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
- E. Connect condensate to equipment with pipe sizes as indicated, but in no case shall the piping be smaller than the equipment condensate pipe size.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in for not less than one hour. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 5 P.S.I.; water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.9 VIDEO TAPED SANITARY WASTE PIPING

- A. Video taping shall include new and existing waste piping, and limited to the path of travel of the waste from the new construction to where the street main connection occurs.
- B. All three (3) inch and larger piping shall be subjected to video taping.
- C. The video taping shall occur after all testing of sanitary waste piping has been completed, and before flat work, such as concrete walks, and asphalt, has been installed.
- D. Film: The taping shall be provided on high resolution color film that can be displayed on a common VHS recorder.
- E. Record Drawings: The Contractor shall obtain a reproducible drawing from the Architect. The drawing shall provide accurate dimensioned record of routing of the system piping with invert elevations. Irregularities encountered such as obstructions in the pipe, broken pipe or piping that were installed differently from that shown on the drawings shall be identified, dimensioned and provided with invert elevations.
  - 1. Encountered irregularities shall be reported to the plumbing Contractor for rectification. After encountered irregularities have been corrected the Architect shall have the right to request one additional visit from the contractor performing the video recording.
  - 2. The video and the drawing are deemed to be complementary.
  - 3. Before formal acceptance of the video tape and the drawing, both items shall be delivered to the On-Site Inspector for his review. The drawings will be signed by the Inspector before being delivered to the Architect.
  - 4. If in the opinion of the Architect the record drawing is not legible or the video and the drawing are not complementary the Video Taping Contractor shall employ a satisfactory draftsman to properly perform this work.

END OF SECTION 22 13 16

## SECTION 22 13 19 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:

1. Cleanouts.
2. Floor drains.
3. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for grease interceptors.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CLEANOUTS

- A. Exposed Cast-Iron Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

- B. Cast-Iron Floor Cleanouts:



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - c. MIFAB
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Required.
7. Outlet Connection: Threaded.
8. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Polished bronze.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Light Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, drilled-and-threaded plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

## 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains FD-1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: (Refer to plans for model number)
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.

4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Required.
6. Anchor Flange: Required.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
10. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
11. Top Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Light Duty.
13. Inlet Fitting: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
14. Trap Material: Cast iron.
15. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.

- c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
- 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- G. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.
- C. Corrosion Control: Refer to Soil Corrosivity Study and Report for further requirements.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19

## SECTION 22 14 13 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following storm drainage piping inside the building.

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Special pipe fittings.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CAST -IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A888-13 including Annex A1 from accredited ANSI inspection agency or CISPI 301-12 including Annex A1 from accredited ANSI inspection agency.

1. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) A, B & I Foundry.

- 2) Tyler Pipe & Coupling
  - 3) Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company
2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings (Above Ground Use): With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) ANACO-HUSKY.
    - 2) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
    - 3) Mission Rubber Co.
    - 4) Clamp-All Corp.
3. Heavy -Duty, Cast-Iron Couplings (Below Grade Use): ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) ANACO-HUSKY.

## 2.2 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS:

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastic Piping Systems Components and Related Materials" for plastic piping components. Include markings with "NSF-DWV" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- C. Cellular-Core PCS Pipe: ASTM F891, Schedule 40.
- D. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D2665, made of ASTM D3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- E. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F656.
- F. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2564.

## 2.3 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105, high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- B. Form: Sheet.
- C. Color: Black.
- D. Corrosion Control: Refer to Soil Corrosivity Study and Report for further requirements.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure ratings may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
- C. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Storm sewer and drainage piping outside the building are specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
- B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- C. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- D. Install wall-penetration-fitting system at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight.
- E. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- F. Make changes in direction for storm piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- G. Lay buried building drain piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install

required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

- H. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Storm Drain: 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
- I. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- J. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- B. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221413



## SECTION 22 14 23 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following storm drainage piping specialties:

1. Roof drains.
2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ROOF DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron Roof Drains:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; or a comparable product by one of the following: (Refer to plans for model number)
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - 1) Roof Drain (RD-1): 15" diameter with hubless cast iron body with bottom outlet, flashing ring, underdeck clamp, sump receiver gravel stop and cast iron dome strainer with vandelproof mounting.
    - 2) ASME A112.21.2M

#### 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Downspout Boots:

1. Description: ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe.
2. Size: Same as or larger than connected downspout.

B. Conductor Nozzles:

1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
2. Size: Same as connected conductor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Roof materials are specified in Division 07.
  1. Install roof-drain flashing collar or flange so that there will be no leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  2. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- C. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- D. Install cast-iron soil pipe downspout boots at grade with top of hub 12 inches above grade.
- E. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- F. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

#### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.
- C. Corrosion Control: Refer to Soil Corrosivity Study and Report for further requirements.

END OF SECTION 221423

## SECTION 23 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 3. Concrete bases.
  - 4. Supports and anchorages.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series or BAg1, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss,

expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- M. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- N. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.5 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base as detailed.

1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit. See Detail 13 on S0.3.
2. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
3. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
4. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.7 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

END OF SECTION 23 05 00



## SECTION 23 05 13 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.
- B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 23 05 13

## SECTION 23 05 33 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Metal framing systems.
  - 4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 5. Fastener systems.
  - 6. Equipment supports.
- B. See Division 23 Section "Pipe Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
- C. See Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.
- D. See Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

#### 1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

#### 1.03 REQUIREMENTS

- A. Supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water shall be in accordance with approved drawings. Where conditions exist that are not detailed, installation shall comply with OSHPD Pre-Approved anchorage: Mason OPM #0043-13, Vibrex OPM #0203-13 or approved equivalent.
- B. Equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components shall be in accordance with approved drawings. Where conditions exist that are not detailed, installation shall comply with OSHPD Pre-Approved anchorage: Mason OPM #0043-13, Vibrex OPM #0203-13 or approved equivalent.
- C. Seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment shall be in accordance with approved drawings. Where conditions exist that are not detailed, installation shall comply with OSHPD Pre-Approved anchorage: Mason OPM #0043-13, Vibrex OPM #0203-13 or approved equivalent.

#### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.

2. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  3. Powder-actuated fastener systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
  2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
  3. Equipment supports.
- C. Welding certificates.

#### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

#### 2.02 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Mason Industries.
  2. MW Sausse.
  3. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  4. Elcen.
  - 5.
- C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
- E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

## 2.03 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.04 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.
- B. Manufacturers:
  - 1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  - 2. Tolco Inc.
  - 3. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.
- C. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish, unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.
- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

## 2.05 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Description: 100-psig- minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.
- B. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  - 2. Grinnell.
  - 3. Elcen.
  - 4. Pipe Shields, Inc.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.
- D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.
- E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.06 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Refer to post-installed concrete anchors indicated on Structural plans and specifications. ICC ESR is required for all fasteners, system/components.

## 2.07 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.

## 2.08 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  - 7. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  - 8. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  - 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  - 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  - 7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  - 8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  - 9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  - 2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
  - 3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.



### 3.02 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.1 (for power piping) and ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.
- M. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.

- c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.1 for power piping and ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
  - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
5. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.03 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.04 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

### 3.06 PAINTING

- A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 23 05 33

## SECTION 23 05 48 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Restrained spring isolators.
  - 2. Restrained vibration isolation roof-curb.
  - 3. Seismic snubbers.
  - 4. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
  - 5. Restraining cables.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A.  $A_v$ : Effective peak velocity related acceleration coefficient.
- B. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning & Development for the State of California. OSHPD assigns a unique anchorage preapproval "OPM" number to each seismic restraint it tests. The number describes a specific device applied as tested.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A.  $A_v$ : According to seismic code of Governing Jurisdiction.
- B. Component Seismic Coefficient: Refer to equipment schedule for value for each piece of equipment.
- C. Performance Criteria Factor: Refer to equipment schedule for value for each piece of equipment.
- D. Attachment Amplification Factor: Refer to equipment schedule for value for each piece of equipment.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include load deflection curves for each vibration isolation device.

- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Include the following:
  - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 2. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stress and that none will exist.
  - 3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.
  - 4. Seismic-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of seismic restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.
  - 5. Submittals for Interlocking Snubbers: Include load deflection curves up to 1/2-inch deflection in x, y, and z planes.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that all specified equipment will withstand seismic forces identified in "Performance Requirements" Article above. Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
    - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis performed according to OSHPD and shall bear anchorage preapproval "OPM" number, from OSHPD or another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Testing and calculations must include both shear and tensile loads and 1 test or analysis at 45 degrees to the weakest mode.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. MicroMetl
  - 2. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - 3. M. W. Sausse'.
- B. Restrained Spring Isolators (RSI): Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.
  - 1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to wind loads or if weight is removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, elastomeric isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
  - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of the rated vertical stiffness.
  - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- C. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
  - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

## 2.3 RESTRAINED VIBRATION ISOLATION ROOF-CURB (RSC)- 20 TONS AND GREATER

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. MicroMetl
  2. Mason Industries, Inc.
  3. M. W. Sausse'.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand 125-mph wind impinging laterally against side of equipment.
- C. Lower Support Assembly: Sheet-metal "Z" section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper floating frame. Upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist wind and seismic forces. Lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials, and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly.
- D. Spring Isolators: Adjustable, restrained spring isolators shall be mounted on 1/4-inch- thick, elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
  1. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.
    - a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt.
    - b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
    - c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
    - d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of the rated vertical stiffness.
    - e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  2. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
    - a. Material: Bridge-bearing neoprene, complying with AASHTO M 251.
- E. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.

- F. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

## 2.4 VIBRATION ISOLATION SEISMIC CURB (ISC)

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. MicroMetl
  - 2. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - 3. M. W. Sausse'.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand 125-mph wind impinging laterally against side of equipment. See M0.6 for additional information.
- C. Lower Support Assembly: Sheet-metal "Z" section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper floating frame. Upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist wind and seismic forces. Lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly.
- D. Spring Isolators: Adjustable, restrained spring isolators shall be mounted on 1/4-inch- thick, elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
  - 1. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.
    - a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt.
    - b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
    - c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
    - d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of the rated vertical stiffness.
    - e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  - 2. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
    - a. Material: Bridge-bearing neoprene, complying with AASHTO M 251.
- E. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.
- F. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.



## 2.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES (PIPING AND SUSPENDED EQUIPMENT)

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - 2. TOLCO Incorporated.
  - 3. Unistrut Diversified Products Co.; Wayne Manufacturing Division.
  - 4. M. W. Sausse'.
  - 5. B- Line Systems.
- B. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: 1-piece, molded, bridge-bearing neoprene complying with AASHTO M 251 and having a durometer of 50, plus or minus 5, with a flat washer face.
- C. Seismic Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
  - 1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
  - 2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: 1-piece, molded, bridge-bearing neoprene complying with AASHTO M 251 and having a durometer of 50, plus or minus 5.
- D. Restraining Cables: Galvanized steel aircraft cables with end connections made of steel assemblies that swivel to final installation angle and utilize two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
- E. Anchor Bolts: Seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488/E 488M.

## 2.6 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
  - 1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
  - 2. All hardware shall be electrogalvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
  - 3. Baked enamel for metal components on isolators for interior use.
  - 4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance.

- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations as specified in Division 07.
- B. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on either side of equipment.
- C. Install seismic snubbers on isolated equipment. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
- D. Install restraining cables at each trapeze and individual pipe hanger. At trapeze anchor locations, shackle piping to trapeze. Install cables so they do not bend across sharp edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- E. Install steel angles or channel, sized to prevent buckling, clamped with ductile-iron clamps to hanger rods for trapeze and individual pipe hangers. At trapeze anchor locations, shackle piping to trapeze. Requirements apply equally to hanging equipment. Do not weld angles to rods.
- F. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:
  - 1. Isolator seismic-restraint clearance.
  - 2. Isolator deflection.
  - 3. Snubber minimum clearances.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping systems have been filled and equipment is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop.
- D. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
- E. Adjust snubbers according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

- F. Adjust seismic restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.
- G. Torque anchor bolts according to equipment manufacturer's written recommendations to resist seismic forces.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. After completing equipment installation, inspect vibration isolation and seismic-control devices. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris.

### 3.6 VIBRATION ISOLATOR AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT SCHEDULE

- A. Supported Equipment:
  - 1. Package Rooftop AC units:
    - a. Isolation Type:
    - b. Deflection: 2"
- B. Suspended Equipment:
  - 1. Inline Fans:
    - a. Isolator Type: Spring
    - b. Minimum Deflection: 1".
    - c.
    - d.
    - e.
    - f. END OF SECTION 23 05 48

## SECTION 23 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Duct labels.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTAL

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter Color: Black.
  - 3. Background Color: White.
  - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow or Orange.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## 2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.

- C. Background Color: Blue.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

#### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

#### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.

4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

B. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Refrigerant Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Yellow.
  - b. Letter Color: Black.

3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
  2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
  3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
  4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

END OF SECTION 23 05 53

## SECTION 23 05 93 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes TAB to produce design objectives for the following:
  - 1. Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - 2. HVAC equipment quantitative-performance settings.
  - 3. Verifying that automatic control devices are functioning properly.
  - 4. Reporting results of activities and procedures specified in this Section.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Certified TAB Reports: Submit two copies of reports prepared, as specified in this Section, on approved forms certified by TAB firm.
- B. Warranties specified in this Section.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Firm Qualifications: Engage a TAB firm certified by AABC.
- B. Certification of TAB Reports: Certify TAB field data reports. This certification includes the following:
  - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
  - 2. Certify that TAB team complied with approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard forms from AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems."

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the efforts of factory-authorized service representatives for systems and equipment, HVAC controls installers, and other mechanics to operate HVAC systems and equipment to support and assist TAB activities.



- B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. National Project Performance Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems" forms stating that AABC will assist in completing requirements of the Contract Documents if TAB firm fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee includes the following provisions:

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
  - 1. Verify that balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are required by the Contract Documents. Verify that quantities and locations of these balancing devices are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- B. Examine approved submittal data of HVAC systems and equipment.
- C. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- D. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system. Calculate system effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from those presented when the equipment was performance tested at the factory. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," Sections 7 through 10; or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems--Duct Design," Sections 5 and 6. Compare this data with the design data and installed conditions.
- E. Examine system and equipment installations to verify that they are complete and that testing, cleaning, adjusting, and commissioning specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- F. Examine system and equipment test reports.

- G. Examine HVAC system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are properly installed, and that their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- H. Examine systems for functional deficiencies that cannot be corrected by adjusting and balancing.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment to ensure that clean filters have been installed, bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine plenum ceilings used for supply air to verify that they are airtight. Verify that pipe penetrations and other holes are sealed.
- K. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- L. Examine equipment for installation and for properly operating safety interlocks and controls.
- M. Examine automatic temperature system components to verify the following:
  - 1. Dampers, valves, and other controlled devices are operated by the intended controller.
  - 2. Dampers and valves are in the position indicated by the controller.
  - 3. Integrity of valves and dampers for free and full operation and for tightness of fully closed and fully open positions. This includes dampers in multizone units, mixing boxes, and variable-air-volume terminals.
  - 4. Automatic modulating and shutoff valves, including two-way valves and three-way mixing and diverting valves, are properly connected.
  - 5. Thermostats and humidistats are located to avoid adverse effects of sunlight, drafts, and cold walls.
  - 6. Sensors are located to sense only the intended conditions.
  - 7. Sequence of operation for control modes is according to the Contract Documents.
  - 8. Controller set points are set at indicated values.
  - 9. Interlocked systems are operating.
  - 10. Changeover from heating to cooling mode occurs according to indicated values.
- N. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Complete system readiness checks and prepare system readiness reports. Verify the following:
  - 1. Permanent electrical power wiring is complete.
  - 2. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
  - 3. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
  - 4. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
  - 5. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
  - 6. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.

7. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems" and this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures. After testing and balancing, close probe holes and patch insulation with new materials identical to those removed. Restore vapor barrier and finish according to insulation Specifications for this Project.
- C. Mark equipment and balancing device settings with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct airflow measurements.
- D. Check airflow patterns from the outside-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers, through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- H. Check for airflow blockages.
- I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling unit components.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air duct system.

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure fan static pressures to determine actual static pressure as follows:
    - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practicable and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from flexible connection and downstream from duct restrictions.
    - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
  - 2. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
    - a. Simulate dirty filter operation and record the point at which maintenance personnel must change filters.
  - 3. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices such as sound traps, heat recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
  - 4. Compare design data with installed conditions to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Compare actual system effect factors with calculated system effect factors to identify where variations occur. Recommend corrective action to align design and actual conditions.
  - 5. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Make required adjustments to pulley sizes, motor sizes, and electrical connections to accommodate fan-speed changes.
  - 6. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full cooling, full heating, economizer, and any other operating modes to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
  - 1. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
    - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
  - 2. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer, model, and serial numbers.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record compressor data.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Refrigerant Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENTS

- A. During TAB, report the need for adjustment in temperature regulation within the automatic temperature-control system.
- B. Measure indoor wet- and dry-bulb temperatures every other hour for a period of two successive eight-hour days, in each separately controlled zone, to prove correctness of final temperature settings. Measure when the building or zone is occupied.
- C. Measure outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.

### 3.10 TEMPERATURE-CONTROL VERIFICATION

- A. Verify that controllers are calibrated and commissioned.

- B. Check transmitter and controller locations and note conditions that would adversely affect control functions.
- C. Record controller settings and note variances between set points and actual measurements.
- D. Check the operation of limiting controllers (i.e., high- and low-temperature controllers).
- E. Check free travel and proper operation of control devices such as damper and valve operators.
- F. Check the sequence of operation of control devices. Note air pressures and device positions and correlate with airflow and water flow measurements. Note the speed of response to input changes.
- G. Check the interaction of electrically operated switch transducers.
- H. Check the interaction of interlock and lockout systems.
- I. Check main control supply-air pressure and observe compressor and dryer operations.
- J. Record voltages of power supply and controller output. Determine whether the system operates on a grounded or nongrounded power supply.
- K. Note operation of electric actuators using spring return for proper fail-safe operations.

### 3.11 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system airflow and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus 5 to plus 10 percent.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: 0 to minus 10 percent.

### 3.12 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Typewritten, or computer printout in letter-quality font, on standard bond paper, in three-ring binder, tabulated and divided into sections by tested and balanced systems.
- B. Include a certification sheet in front of binder signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 1. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- C. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field report data, include the following:
  - 1. Fan curves.
  - 2. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  - 4. Other information relative to equipment performance, but do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

D. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data in the final report, as applicable:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of TAB firm.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB firm who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:
  - a. Indicated versus final performance.
  - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
  - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports varies from indicated values.
14. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
  - a. Settings for outside-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
  - b. Conditions of filters.
  - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
  - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
  - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
  - f. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
  - g. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

E. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outside, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
3. Balancing stations.
4. Position of balancing devices.

### 3.13 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional testing, inspecting, and adjusting during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

El Monte High School HVAC Project  
El Monte Union High School District  
El Monte, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22201-01  
DSA Submittal

END OF SECTION 23 05 93



## SECTION 23 07 13 - DUCT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply, return, and outdoor air.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
  - 2. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

#### 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.

### 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation.
  3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
  4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK Flashing Sealants:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: Aluminum.
  6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Alpha Associates, Inc.

## 2.9 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc.; an American Biltrite company.
    - c. Venture Tape.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

### A. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
    - 2) Gemco.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

### B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

### C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. C & F Wire.

## 2.11 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.



2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078400 "Firestopping".
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078400 "Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
  - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  - 3. Install pins and washers on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.

- f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
- 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
- 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
- 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
- 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.7 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and return.
  - 2. Supply and return.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Fibrous-glass ducts.

2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### 3.8 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, supply-air, return air, and outside-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density, 8.0 installed R-value.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. Ft, 8.0 installed R-value. nominal density.

### 3.9 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Supply-air and return-air duct insulation shall be lined as described in 233113 "Metal Ducts":

END OF SECTION 23 07 13

## SECTION 23 09 00 – BUILDING MANAGEMENT AND CONTROL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED:

- A. The Building Automation System (BAS) manufacturer shall furnish and install a fully integrated building automation system as an extension to the existing District Wide Carrier i-Vu System, to match the district's standard incorporating direct digital control (DDC) for energy management, equipment monitoring and control, and subsystems as herein specified. The installation of the control system shall be performed under the direct supervision of the controls manufacturer with the shop drawings, bill of materials, component designation or identification number and sequence of operation all bearing the name of the manufacturer.
- B. All materials and equipment used shall be standard components, regularly manufactured for this and/or other systems and not custom designed especially for this project. All systems and components shall have been thoroughly tested and proven in actual use for at least two years.
- C. BAS manufacturer shall be responsible for all BAS and Temperature Control wiring for a complete and operable system. All wiring shall be done in accordance with all local/national codes and Division 26. All exposed low voltage control wiring throughout the building shall be run in conduit. All low voltage electrical wiring above ceiling may be run in plenum cable. Room sensor cables concealed behind walls shall be run in conduit, with room sensor conduit extending above wall into accessible ceiling. Cable is to be supported off building structure. Support off ductwork, pipe racks, etc. is not acceptable.

#### 1.2 WORK BY OTHER DISCIPLINES

- A. Mechanical Contractor provides:
  - 1. All package unit control panels.
  - 2. Furnish & install all smoke fire/smoke, outdoor air, return air, exhaust air, and mixing dampers; with adjacent access doors.
- B. Electrical Contractor provides:
  - 1. 120 volt and 20 amp circuits and circuit breakers from normal and/or emergency power panel to direct digital control system panels.
  - 2. Wiring of all power feeds through all disconnects and starters to electrical motor.
  - 3. Wiring of any remote start/stop switches and manual or automatic motor speed control devices not furnished by BAS manufacturer
  - 4. Conduit w/ pull strings between buildings for network communication
  - 5. Other conduits as shown on the plans.
  - 6. Duct smoke detectors & their wiring

#### 1.3 GENERAL PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

- A. The building automation system shall be an extension to the existing Siemens Apogee System.

- B. Provide Siemens standard, native protocol for the communications system. The system shall have the capability to interface with standard protocols where specified on the mechanical plans.
  - C. System shall be capable of high speed Ethernet communication using TCP/IP protocol.
  - D. The Operator Workstation shall be new, and all new work will communicate with this workstation. Additional workstations are not to be installed.
    - 1. Provide system graphics for each controlled device and/or integrated systems as required by the owner. Origin of information shall be transparent to the operator and shall be controlled, displayed, trended, etc. as if the points were hardwired to the BAS.
  - E. The building automation system shall consist of the following:
    - 1. Stand-alone Primary DDC Controllers (PXC Product Line)
    - 2. Stand-alone Application Specific Controllers (TECs)
    - 3. Point Modules
  - F. The system shall be modular in nature and shall permit expansion of both capacity and functionality through the addition of sensors, actuators, DDC Controllers, Application Specific Controllers and operator devices.
  - G. System architectural design shall eliminate dependence upon any single device for alarm reporting and control execution. Each DDC Controller shall operate independently by performing its own specified control, alarm management, operator I/O, and data collection. The failure of any single component or network connection shall not interrupt the execution of any control strategy, reporting, alarming and trending function, or any function at any operator interface device.
  - H. DDC Controllers shall be able to access any data from, or send control commands and alarm reports directly to, any other DDC Controller or combination of controllers on the network without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device.
  - I. DDC Controllers shall be able to assign password access and control priorities to each point individually. The logon password (at any PC workstation or portable operator terminal) shall enable the operator to monitor, adjust or control only the points that the operator is authorized for. All other points shall not be displayed at the PC workstation or portable terminal. (e.g., all base building and all tenant points shall be accessible to any base building operators, but only certain base building and tenant points shall be accessible to tenant building operators). Passwords and priority levels for every point shall be fully programmable and adjustable.
- 1.4 PRODUCTS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED UNDER THIS SECTION
- A. Not applicable:

1.5 APPROVED CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. The contractor shall use the Carrier i-Vu System. No other manufacturer shall be accepted. This item is being sole sourced per Public Contract Code Section 3400, subdivision (b) (2) to match equipment in use at the project either completed or in the course of completion.
- B. No substitutions shall be accepted. No known equal.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The BAS system shall be designed and installed, commissioned and serviced by manufacturer trained personnel. BAS contractor shall have an in-place support facility within 100 miles of the site with technical staff, spare parts inventory and necessary test and diagnostic equipment. The BAS contractor shall provide an experienced project manager for this work, responsible for supervision of the design, installation, start up and commissioning of the BAS. The Bidder shall be regularly engaged in the installation and maintenance of BAS systems and shall have a minimum of ten (10) years of demonstrated technical expertise and experience in the installation and maintenance of BAS systems similar in size and complexity to this project.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be the catalogued products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production and installation of automatic temperature control systems and shall be manufacturer's latest standard design that complies with the specification requirements.
- C. BAS shall comply with UL 916 PAZX and 864 UDTZ, ULC, and other subsystem listings as applicable, and herein specified, and be so listed at the time of bid.
- D. All electronic equipment shall conform to the requirements of FCC Regulation, Part 15, Governing Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Interference and be so labeled.
- E. This system shall have a documented history of compatibility by design for a minimum of 15 years. Future compatibility shall be supported for no less than 10 years. Compatibility shall be defined as the ability to upgrade existing field panels to current level of technology, and extend new field panels on a previously installed network. Any existing field panel microprocessor must be able to be connected and directly communicate with new field panels without bridges, routers or protocol converters with the exception for Apogee Ethernet Microprocessors.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Submittal Requirements. Provide electronic copies of shop drawings and other submittals on hardware and equipment to be installed or furnished. Begin no work until submittals have been approved for conformity with design intent. When manufacturer's data sheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product, clearly indicate applicable data by highlighting or by other means. Provide submittal as a single, complete set. Valves and long lead time items may be submitted separately for approval to meet construction schedules.
- B. Submittal data shall consist of the following:
  - 1. Direct Digital Control System Hardware:

- a. Complete bill of materials indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number of equipment to be used.
    - b. Manufacturer's description and technical data, such as product specification sheets:
    - c. Wiring diagrams and layouts for each control panel. Show all termination numbers.
  2. Controlled Systems:
    - a. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, wire types, and DDC Controller locations. Zone riser diagrams showing all zone controllers, network wiring, and power wiring.
    - b. Schematic diagram of each controlled system. Label control points with point names. Graphically show locations of control elements.
    - c. Schematic wiring diagram of each controlled system. Label control elements and terminals.
    - d. Bill of Material
    - e. Complete description of control system operation including sequences of operation. Sequence of operation shall be provided by the Mechanical Engineer, and modified as necessary by the BAS contractor to match the equipment installed and district standards.
    - f. Physical point list for each system controller including both inputs and outputs (I/O), point numbers, and controlled device associated with each I/O point.
  3. Contractor shall submit documentation in the following phased delivery schedule:
    - a. Valve schedules and long lead items (if necessary to meet construction schedule)
    - b. Control Submittal:
      - 1) System Riser Diagrams
      - 2) Sequence of Operations
      - 3) Mechanical Control Schematics
      - 4) Electrical Wiring Diagrams
      - 5) Control Panel Layouts
      - 6) Product Specification Sheets
    - c. Record drawings
  - C. Project Record Documents: Submit electronic copy of record documents upon completion of installation. Submittal shall consist of:
    1. Project Record Drawings. As-built versions of the submittal package.
- 1.8 WARRANTY
  - A. Provide all services, materials and equipment necessary for the successful operation of the entire BAS system for a period of one year after beneficial use.
  - B. The adjustment, required testing, and repair of the system includes all computer equipment, transmission equipment and all sensors and control devices.



- C. If requested by owner, the service modem can be installed. The on-line support services shall allow the local BAS subcontractor to dial out over telephone lines to monitor and control the facility's building automation system. This remote connection to the facility shall be within 2 hours of the time that the problem is reported. This coverage shall be extended to include normal business hours, after business hours, weekends and holidays. Owner shall provide phone lines for this service.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURER

- A. The contractor shall use the Carrier i-Vu System. No other manufacture shall be accepted. This item is being sole sourced per Public Contract Code Section 3400, subdivision (b) (2) to match equipment in use at the project either completed or in the course of completion.
- B. No substitutions shall be accepted. No known equal.

### 2.2 COMMUNICATION

- A. The design of the BAS shall support networking of operator workstations and Primary DDC Controllers. The network architecture shall consist of two levels, an Ethernet based primary network for all operator workstations, servers, and primary DDC controllers, and a secondary Floor Level Networks (FLN) for terminal equipment application specific controllers.
- B. Primary Network Communication
  - 1. The Primary Ethernet Network shall be installed and maintained by the owner. The BAS shall reside on the campus network. One Ethernet connection point shall be brought to each building by the owner, including the wiring and all necessary hardware. The BAS shall provide any additional wiring and hardware if multiple connections to the Ethernet are required. The BAS contractor is to coordinate with the owner for IP Addressing and gateway information.
  - 2. Any controller residing on the primary network shall connect to Ethernet network without the use of a PC or a gateway with a hard drive.
  - 3. Any PC on the Primary Network shall have transparent communication with controllers on the building level networks connected via Ethernet.
  - 4. Any break in Ethernet communication from the PC to the controllers on the Primary Network shall result in a notification at the PC.
  - 5. The standard client and server workstations on the Primary Network shall reside on industry standard Ethernet utilizing standard TCP/IP, IEEE 802.3.
  - 6. System software applications will run as a service to allow communication with Primary Network Controllers without the need for user log in. Closing the application or logging off shall not prevent the processing of alarms, network status, panel failures, and trend information.
- C. Primary Network – DDC Controller Panel to Panel Communication:

1. All Primary DDC Controllers shall directly reside on the primary Ethernet network so that communications may be executed directly between Primary DDC Controllers, directly between server and Primary DDC Controllers on a peer-to-peer basis.
2. Systems that operate via polled response or other types of protocols that rely on a central processor, file server, or similar device to manage panel-to-panel or device-to-device communications shall not be acceptable, except where integration is required.
3. All operator interfaces shall have the ability to access all point status and application report data or execute control functions for any and all other devices. Access to data shall be based upon logical identification of building equipment. No hardware or software limits shall be imposed on the number of devices with global access to the network data.
4. The primary network shall use TCP/IP over Ethernet. All devices must:
  - a. Auto-sense 10/100 Mbps networks.
  - b. Receive an IP Address from a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Server or be configured with a Fixed IP Address.
  - c. Allow MMI access to an individual Primary Network Controller using industry standard Telnet software to view and edit entire Primary Network.
5. The primary network shall provide the following minimum performance:
  - a. Provide high-speed data transfer rates for alarm reporting, report generation from multiple controllers and upload/download efficiency between network devices.
  - b. Message and alarm buffering to prevent information from being lost.
  - c. Error detection, correction, and re-transmission to guarantee data integrity.
  - d. Synchronization of real-time clocks between Primary DDC Controllers, including automatic daylight savings time corrections.
  - e. The primary network shall allow the Primary DDC Controllers to access any data from, or send control commands and alarm reports directly to, any other Primary DDC Controller or combination of controllers on the network without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device. Primary DDC Controllers shall send alarm reports to multiple operator workstations without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device. The network shall also allow any Primary DDC Controller to access, edit, modify, add, delete, back up, restore all system point database and all programs.

D. Secondary Network – Application Specific Controller Communication:

1. Communication over the secondary network shall be the Siemens' standard protocol and match district standards.
2. This level communication shall support a family of application specific controllers for terminal equipment.
3. The Application Specific Controllers shall communicate bi-directionally with the primary network through Primary DDC Controllers for transmission of global data.
4. Where appropriate for the equipment being installed, the short board version of the TEC shall be used to match campus standards. (p/n 540-110, 540-105)

2.3 OPERATOR INTERFACE:

A. Workstation hardware:

1. Provide new workstation for the district; new workstation shall be compatible with system.
- B. Operator Interface Software:
  1. Operator interface software is new.
    - a. Dynamic Color Graphics must match the district's standards seamlessly, including font size, color, state colors, layout, commanding and navigation.
- C. Remote Access:
  1. Remote access to the workstation shall be provided and maintained by the owner.

## 2.4 PRIMARY DDC CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

- A. General
  1. Furnish the following applications software to form a complete operating system for building and energy management as described in this specification. This section describes only the capability of the control system. Not all features will be used on all projects. See the mechanical plans and sequence of operation for requirements.  
The software programs specified in this Section shall be provided as an integral part of Primary DDC Controllers and shall not be dependent upon any higher level computer or another controller for execution.
  2. All points, panels and programs shall be identified by up to a 30-character name. All points shall also be identified by up to a 16-character point descriptor. The same names shall be displayed at both Primary DDC Controller and the Operator Interface.
  3. All digital points shall have a user defined two-state status indication with up to 8 characters (e.g., Summer, Enabled, Disabled, Abnormal).
  4. Primary DDC Controllers shall have the ability to perform energy management routines including but not limited to time of day scheduling, calendar-based scheduling, holiday scheduling, temporary schedule overrides, start stop time optimization, automatic daylight savings time switch over, night setback control, enthalpy switch over, peak demand limiting, temperature-compensated duty cycling, heating/cooling interlock, supply temperature reset, priority load shedding, and power failure restart. Specific routines shall be determined by the mechanical plans and sequence of operation.
  5. The Primary DDC Controllers shall have the ability to perform the following pre tested control algorithms:
    - a. Two position control
    - b. Proportional control
    - c. Proportional plus integral control
    - d. Proportional, integral, plus derivative control
    - e. Automatic tuning of control loops
    - f. Model-Free Adaptive Control
- B. System Security
  1. User access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
  2. Passwords shall restrict the user to the objects, applications, and system functions as assigned by the system manager.

3. User Log On/Log Off attempts shall be recorded.
- C. User Defined Control Applications
1. Controllers shall be able to execute custom, job-specific processes defined by the user, to automatically perform calculations and special control routines.
  2. It shall be possible to use any system measured point data or status, any system calculated data, a result from any process, or any user-defined constant in any controller in the system.
  3. Any process shall be able to issue commands to points in any and all other controllers in the system.
  4. Each controller shall support plain language text comment lines in the operating program to allow for quick troubleshooting, documentation, and historical summaries of program development.
- D. Scheduling
1. Scheduling shall be created on the Insight workstation or at the panel.
  2. Schedules shall reside in the Primary DDC Controller and shall not rely on external processing or network.
  3. The operator shall be able to define the following information:
    - a. Time, day
    - b. Commands such as on, off, auto, etc.
    - c. Time delays between successive commands.
    - d. There shall be provisions for manual overriding of each schedule by an authorized operator.
  4. It shall be possible to schedule calendar-based events up to one year in advance based on the following:
    - a. Weekly Schedule. Provide separate schedules for each day of the week. Each of these schedules should include the capability for start, and stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer. When a group of objects are scheduled together as an Event, provide the capability to adjust the start and stop times for each member.
    - b. Exception Schedules. Provide the ability for the operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by the standard schedule for that day of the week.
    - c. Holiday Schedules. Provide the capability for the operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules. These schedules may be placed on the scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year. The operator shall be able to define the length of each holiday period.
- E. Automatic Daylight Savings Time Switchover: The system shall provide automatic time adjustment for switching to/from Daylight Savings Time.
- F. Night setback control. The system shall provide the ability to automatically adjust setpoints for night control.

- G. Loop Control. A Model-Free Adaptive Control algorithm or alternatively a PID (proportional-integral-derivative) closed-loop control algorithm with direct or reverse action and anti-windup shall be supplied. The algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value that is used to position an output or stage a series of outputs. The controlled variable, setpoint, and weighting parameters shall be user-selectable.
- H. Sequencing. Provide application software based upon the sequences of operation specified to properly sequence equipment.
- I. Totalization
  - 1. Run-Time Totalization. Primary DDC Controllers shall have the ability to automatically accumulate and store run-time hours for all digital input and output points. A high runtime alarm shall be assigned, if required, by the operator.
  - 2. Consumption totalization. Primary DDC Controllers shall have the ability to automatically sample, calculate and store consumption totals on a daily, weekly or monthly basis for all analog and digital pulse input type points.
- J. Data Collection
  - 1. A variety of historical data collection utilities shall be provided to manually or automatically sample, store, and display system data for all points.
  - 2. Primary DDC Controllers shall store point history data for selected analog and digital inputs and outputs:
    - a. Any point, physical or calculated may be designated for trending. Any point, regardless of physical location in the network, may be collected and stored in each Primary DDC Controllers point group. Trending data to follow district standards.
  - 3. Trend data shall be stored at the Primary DDC Controllers and uploaded to the workstation when retrieval is desired. Uploads shall occur based upon either user-defined interval, manual command or when the trend buffers are full. All trend data shall be available for use in third-party personal computer applications.

## 2.5 PRIMARY DDC CONTROLLERS

- A. Primary DDC Controllers shall be the Siemens Apogee PXC product line. If the PXC product line is being retired, the Primary DDC Controllers shall be of the current Siemens Apogee product line.
- B. Primary DDC Controllers shall be 32-bit, multi-tasking, multi-user, real-time 100 MHz digital control processors consisting of modular hardware with plug-in enclosed processors, communication controllers, power supplies and input/output point modules. Controller size shall be sufficient to fully meet the requirements of this specification and the attached point list.
- C. Each Primary DDC Controller shall have sufficient memory, a minimum of 24 megabyte, to support its own operating system and databases, including control processes, energy management applications, alarm management applications, historical/trend data for points specified, maintenance support applications, custom processes, operator I/O, and dial-up communications.

- D. Provide Universal I/O capability, including software configurable universal inputs and universal outputs.
- E. Primary DDC Controller shall have an integral real-time clock.
- F. Each Primary DDC Controller shall support firmware upgrades without the need to change hardware.
- G. Each Primary DDC Controller shall support:
  - 1. Monitoring of industry standard analog and digital inputs, without the addition of equipment outside the Primary DDC Controller cabinet.
  - 2. Monitoring of industry standard analog and digital outputs, without the addition of equipment outside the Primary DDC Controller cabinet.
- H. Manual Override. Where available as a standard option, the operator shall have the ability to manually override automatic or centrally executed commands at the Primary DDC Controller via local, point discrete, integral hand/off/auto operator override switches for all digital control type points and gradual switches for all analog control type points. These override switches shall be operable whether the panel processor is operational or not. Each Primary DDC Controller shall monitor and alarm the hand, off and auto positions of integral HOA switches.
- I. Self Diagnostics. Each Primary DDC Controller shall continuously perform self diagnostics, communication diagnosis, and diagnosis of all panel components. The Primary DDC Controller shall provide both local and remote annunciation of any detected component failures, low battery conditions or repeated failure to establish communication for any system.
- J. Power loss. In the event of the loss of power, the database or operating system software shall be saved with a battery backup. Non-volatile memory shall be incorporated for all critical controller configuration data and battery backup shall be provided to support the real-time clock and all volatile memory for a minimum of 30 days.
  - 1. Upon restoration of normal power, the HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller shall automatically resume full operation without manual intervention.
  - 2. Should HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller memory be lost for any reason, the user shall have the capability of reloading the HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controller via the local RS-232C port, via telephone line dial-in or from a network workstation PC.
- K. Immunity to power and noise.
  - 1. Controller shall be able to operate at 90% to 110% of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80% nominal voltage.
    - a. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios up to 5 W at 1 m (3 ft).
- L. Panel Layout
  - 1. Each panel with hardwired points shall have a panel layout diagram included in the enclosure showing the point address, point name, and a description.

- M. HVAC Mechanical Equipment Controllers shall provide a RS 232C serial data communication port for operation of operator I/O devices such as industry standard printers, operator terminals, modems and portable laptop operator's terminals.

2.6 APPLICATION SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS (ASC) – TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONTROLLERS (TEC'S)

A. General

1. Where appropriate and specified on the mechanical plans and sequence of operation, TEC's shall be provided for the following:
  - a. Variable Air Volume (VAV ) boxes
  - b. Fan Coil Units (FCU)
  - c. Unit Conditioners
  - d. Roof Top Units (RTU's)
2. Each Primary DDC Controller shall be able to communicate with application specific controllers (ASCs) over the Secondary Network to control terminal equipment only.
3. Each ASC shall operate as a stand-alone controller capable of performing its specified control responsibilities independently of other controllers in the network. Each ASC shall be a microprocessor-based, multi-tasking, digital control processor.
4. Each ASC shall include all point inputs and outputs necessary to perform the specified control sequences. The ASC shall accept input and provide output signals that comply with industry standards. Controllers utilizing proprietary control output signals shall not be acceptable. Outputs utilized either for two-state, modulating floating, or proportional control, allowing for additional system flexibility.
5. Space Temperature Sensors. Each controller performing space temperature control shall be provided with a matching space temperature sensor.
  - a. As a standard for occupied spaces such as classrooms and offices, room temperature sensors shall be Siemens Series 2000 with display, temperature adjustment, override button, and auxiliary communication port.
  - b. As a standard for hallways, room temperature sensors shall be flush mounted.
6. Communication. Each controller shall perform its primary control function independent of other Secondary Network communication, or if Secondary Network communication is interrupted. Reversion to a fail-safe mode of operation during Secondary Network interruption is not acceptable.
7. The controllers shall be able to return to full normal operation without user intervention after a power failure of unlimited duration.
8. Power Supply. The ASCs shall be powered from a 24 Vac source and shall function normally under an operating range of 18 to 28 Vac, allowing for power source fluctuations and voltage drops. Power supply for the ASC must be rated at a minimum of 125% of ASC power consumption and shall be of the fused or current limiting type.
9. Environment. The controllers shall function normally under ambient conditions of 32 to 122°F (0 to 50°C) and 10% to 95% rh (non-condensing). Provide each controller with a suitable cover or enclosure to protect the circuit board assembly.
10. Immunity to noise. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5-120 Hz and from keyed radios up to 5 W at 1 m (3 ft).

## 2.7 INPUT/OUTPUT INTERFACE:

- A. Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into the system through Primary DDC Controllers, ASC's or point modules.
- B. All input points and output points shall be protected such that shorting of the point to itself, to another point, or to ground will cause no damage to the controller. All input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24V of any duration, such that contact with this voltage will cause no damage to the controller.
- C. Binary inputs shall allow the monitoring of On/Off signals from remote devices. The binary inputs shall provide a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and shall be protected against the effects of contact bounce and noise. Binary inputs shall sense "dry contact" closure without external power (other than that provided by the controller) being applied.
- D. Pulse accumulation input objects. This type of object shall conform to all the requirements of binary input objects and also accept up to ten (10) pulses per second for pulse accumulation.
- E. Analog inputs shall allow the monitoring of low-voltage (0 to 10 Vdc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals (thermistor, RTD). Analog inputs shall be compatible with—and field configurable to—commonly available sensing devices.
- F. 24 Vdc shall be available next to the point signal for powering the output device.
- G. Binary outputs shall provide for On/Off operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse width modulation control. Outputs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
- H. Analog outputs shall provide a modulating signal for the control of end devices. Outputs shall provide either a 0 to 10 Vdc or 4 to 20 mA signal as required to provide proper control of the output device.
- I. Tri-State Outputs. Provide tri-state outputs (two coordinated binary outputs) for control of three-point floating type electronic actuators without feedback. Use of three-point floating devices shall be limited to zone control and terminal unit control applications (VAV terminal units, duct-mounted heating coils, zone dampers, radiation, etc.). Control algorithms shall run the zone actuator to one end of its stroke once every 24 hours for verification of operator tracking.

## 2.8 POWER SUPPLIES AND LINE FILTERING

- A. Control transformers shall be UL listed. Furnish Class 2 current-limiting type or furnish over-current protection in both primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service in accordance with NEC requirements. Limit connected loads to 80% of rated capacity.

## 2.9 FIELD DEVICES

- A. Provide instrumentation as specified on the mechanical plans and as required to meet the sequence of operation. Provide instrumentation to match district standards.



B. Temperature Sensors

1. Room Temperature Sensors

- a. As a standard for occupied spaces such as classrooms and offices, room temperature sensors shall be Siemens Series 2000 with display, temperature adjustment, override button, and auxiliary communication port.
- b. As a standard for hallways, room temperature sensors shall be flush mounted, Siemens 540-995, 540-520, 544-973 or 544-374

2. Duct Temperature Sensors

- a. Connected to a DDC Controller
  - 1) Single Point for supply air and return air: Siemens Model 544 100 ohm Platinum RTD
  - 2) Averaging for mixed air: Siemens Model 544 100 ohm Platinum RTD
- b. Connected to a TEC
  - 1) Single Point, 100,000 ohms , Siemens Model 536-811

3. Outside Air Sensor

- a. Temperature Monitoring Range: -58/122 deg F
- b. Output Signal: 4 to 10 mA DC
- c. Accuracy at Calibration Point: +/- 0.5 deg F

C. Humidity Sensor

1. Room Sensors

- a. Siemens Model QFA
- b. Accuracy of 5% at room temperature of 73 deg F

2. Duct Sensor

- a. Siemens Model QFM
- b. Accuracy of 5% at temperature of 73 deg F

D. Air Quality Sensor

1. Room Sensor

- a. Siemens Model QPA
- b. Less than or equal to +/- 50 ppm +2% of measured value

2. Duct Sensor

- a. Siemens Model QPM or equal.
  - b. Less than or equal to +/- 50 ppm +2% of measured value
- E. Line Voltage Thermostats
  - 1. Powers 134-1084
- F. Air Differential Pressure Sensor
  - 1. Range shall be appropriate for the application
  - 2. Output signal: 4 to 20 mA
  - 3. Accuracy: +/- 1.0% of FS
- G. Door Contacts
  - 1. Sensors shall be by Sentrol.
- H. Electric Damper Actuators
  - 1. All actuators shall be manufactured, brand labeled, or distributed by Siemens. Siemens Model GMA, GCA, or GDE as appropriate
  - 2. The actuator shall have mechanical or electronic stall protection to prevent damage to the actuator throughout the rotation of the actuator.
  - 3. All 24 Vac/Vdc actuators shall operate on Class 2 wiring.
  - 4. Upon start up and after power loss, the actuator must immediately respond to control signals. Actuators requiring calibration to determine end stops are not acceptable.
  - 5. All actuators that provide a factory mounted electrical appliance or plenum rated cabling must be marked with numbers on the wires as well as color coded.
  - 6. Provide built-in dual end switches as required for the sequence of operation.
  - 7. Actuators shall be designed for mounting directly to the damper shaft without the need for connecting linkages.
  - 8. All actuators having more than 100 lb-in torque output shall have a self-centering damper shaft clamp that guarantees concentric alignment of the actuator's output coupling with the damper shaft. The self-centering clamp shall have a pair of opposed "v" shaped toothed cradles; each having two rows of teeth to maximize holding strength. A single clamping bolt shall simultaneously drive both cradles into contact with the damper shaft.
  - 9. Butterfly valves shall be Tyco or Bray.

### PART 3 – EXECUTION

#### 3.1 COORDINATION

- A. Site
  - 1. The project coordination between trades is the responsibility of the prime contractor who is the one tier higher contractual partner such as mechanical contractor, general contractor, construction manager, owner or owner's representative as applicable.

2. The controls contractor shall follow prime contractor's job schedule and coordinate all project related activities through the prime contractor except otherwise agreed or in minor job site issues. Reasonable judgment shall be applied.

B. Project Management

1. Provide a designated project manager who will be responsible for the following:
  - a. Coordinate with all applicable trades and subcontractors
  - b. Authorized to accept and execute orders or instructions from owner/architect
  - c. Attend project meetings as necessary to avoid conflicts and delays
  - d. Make necessary field decisions relating to this scope of work
  - e. Coordination/Single point of contact

C. Life Safety

1. Duct smoke detectors required for air handler shutdown are supplied under Division 26 of this specification. Wiring for fan shut down by Division 26.
2. Fire/smoke dampers and actuators required for fire rated walls are provided under another Section of Division 23. Control of these dampers shall be by Division 28.

D. Coordination with controls specified in other sections or divisions.

1. Other sections and/or divisions of this specification include controls and control devices that are to be part of or interfaced to the control system specified in this section. These controls shall be integrated into the system and coordinated by the contractor as follows:
  - a. Each supplier of controls product is responsible for the configuration, programming, startup, and testing of that product to meet the sequences of operation described in this section.

3.2 GENERAL WORKMANSHIP

- A. Install equipment, piping, and wiring/raceway parallel to building lines (i.e., horizontal, vertical, and parallel to walls) wherever possible.
- B. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- C. Install all equipment in readily accessible locations
- D. All equipment, installation, and wiring shall comply with acceptable industry specifications and standards for performance, reliability, and compatibility and be executed in strict adherence to local codes and standard practices.

3.3 WIRING

- A. All control and interlock wiring shall comply with national and local electrical codes and Division 26 of this specification.

- B. All low-voltage wiring shall meet NEC Class 2 requirements. (Low-voltage power circuits shall be sub fused when required to meet Class 2 current limit.)
- C. Where NEC Class 2 (current-limited) wires are in concealed and accessible locations, including ceiling return air plenums, approved cables may be run not in conduit provided that cables are UL Listed for the intended application. For example, cables used in ceiling plenums shall be UL Listed specifically for that purpose.
- D. All wiring in mechanical, electrical, or service rooms shall be installed in conduit.
- E. Do not install Class 2 wiring in conduit containing Class 1 wiring. Boxes and panels containing high voltage wiring and equipment may not be used for low-voltage wiring except for the purpose of interfacing the two (e.g., relays and transformers).
- F. All plenum rated wiring shall be installed as continuous lengths, with no splices permitted between termination points
- G. All wiring in conduit shall be installed as continuous lengths, with no splices permitted between termination points or between junction boxes.
- H. Size and type of conduit and size and type of wire shall be the responsibility of the contractor, in keeping with the manufacturer's recommendations and NEC requirements, except as noted elsewhere.

#### 3.4 COMMUNICATION WIRING

- A. All cabling shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner. Follow manufacturer's installation recommendations for all communication cabling.
- B. Do not install communication wiring in raceway and enclosures containing Class 1 wiring.
- C. Contractor shall verify the integrity of the entire network following the cable installation. Use appropriate test measures for each particular cable.
- D. All communication wiring shall be labeled to indicate origination and destination data.

#### 3.5 PROGRAMMING

- A. Provide sufficient internal memory for the specified sequences of operation and trend logging. There shall be a minimum of 25% of available memory free within the primary controller for future use.
- B. Point Naming: System point names shall be modular in design, allowing easy operator interface without the use of a written point index. Point Naming standard shall be agreed upon between owner and BAS contractor.
- C. Software Programming shall be complete to provide a fully functional system that matches district standards and the sequence of operation.
- D. Operator Interface

1. Standard graphics—Provide graphics for all mechanical systems and floor plans of the building. This includes each chilled water system, hot water system, chiller, boiler, air handler, and all terminal equipment. Point information on the graphic displays shall dynamically update. Show on each graphic all input and output points for the system. Also show relevant calculated points such as setpoints.
2. All graphics shall match existing district standards.
3. The contractor shall provide all the labor necessary to install, initialize, start up, and troubleshoot all operator interface software and its functions as described in this section. This includes any operating system software, the operator interface database, and any third-party software installation and integration required for successful operation of the operator interface.

### 3.6 CONTROL SYSTEM CHECKOUT AND TESTING

- A. The controls contractor shall verify the installation and performance of the control system and verify that it meets the design intent. Contractor shall follow their company standard practices.
- B. District representative shall be invited to observe the startup process. Construction schedule and activities shall not be modified to accommodate the district representative.

### 3.7 TRAINING

- A. The Contractor shall provide competent instructors to give full instruction to designated personnel in the adjustment, operation and maintenance of the system installed. Factory employed/certified instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all aspects of the subject matter they are to teach. All training shall be held during normal work hours of 8:00 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. weekdays.
- B. Provide 16 hours of site specific training for Owner's operating personnel.
- C. Training shall include demonstration of the system at the workstation and an on-site tour of panel, sensor, and equipment locations.

### 3.8 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

- A. Provide fully implemented application and custom software and controls necessary to accomplish the control sequences required for operation of each unit as follows:
  1. Package Unit Control
  2. VAV Terminal Units
  3. Exhaust Fans
  4. Split Systems
  5. Utilities Metering
  6. Lighting
- B. This is a general sequence of operation. Controls contractor to modify the sequence of operation to match equipment being installed and maintain district standards.
- C. Units shall be enabled by the DDC System via occupancy schedule.

- D. Momentary "After Hours Call" switches, located on each space temperature sensor shall allow occupants to operate the system during unscheduled periods. Each activation of this switch shall provide operation for the next 2 hours.
- E. Roof Top Unit Control
  - 1. Where appropriate, the short board form the TEC shall be utilized to match district standards.
  - 2. When reasonable, the TEC's shall be mounted above the room temperature sensor in the ceiling space.
  - 3. Terminal Equipment Controllers shall monitor and control the temperature in the rooms. The Tenant will be able to adjust the space temperature setpoint via the space sensor; the district can enable or disable the setpoint dial at the workstation. If the temperature exceeds a preset reference temperature an alarm will be generated back to the OWS.
  - 4. One hour prior to tenant occupancy, the unit shall go into occupied mode; outside air shall be utilized if it is within a reasonable temperature range.
  - 5. During unoccupied modes, the unit shall control to the unoccupied set points, 58 deg for heating and 84 degrees for cooling. The fan shall cycle on and off.
  - 6. Filter differential pressure shall not be monitored/or alarmed. Filter replacement shall follow the district maintenance schedule.
  - 7. Door switches shall be placed on exterior classroom and roll-up doors. When the door switch is in the "closed" position, the package unit shall be enabled to perform temperature control. When the door is not closed, the unit shall be disabled.
  - 8. The fan status and supply air temperature shall be monitored.
  - 9. Indoor Air Quality and Demand Ventilation (when available on the mechanical unit and specified on the mechanical plans)
    - a. Units with controllable outside air, return air, and exhaust air dampers are preferred.
    - b. Pre-heat and pre-cool functions may be required to implement demand control ventilation.
    - c. When available on the mechanical equipment being installed, the BAS shall control the dampers when possible. This will not apply to RTU's that come with manufacturer controlled economizer and power exhaust options.
    - d. The room CO2 shall be monitored where shown on plans. If the room CO2 rises above 800ppm, the BAS shall modulate the dampers to provide additional ventilation (when possible).
  - 10. Dry Bulb Temperature Economizer Control (when applicable on the mechanical unit and specified on the mechanical plans and sequence of operation)
- F. VAV Terminal Units
  - 1. The variable volume (VAV) terminal unit is controlled independent of system pressure fluctuations by a DDC Actuating Terminal Equipment Controller. The space served by the VAV terminal unit is controlled in Occupied and Unoccupied modes as follows:
  - 2. Occupied
    - a. The VAV terminal unit is controlled within user defined maximum and minimum supply air volume settings. The controller monitors the room temperature sensor and air velocity sensor and modulates the supply air damper and reheat coil valve (where applicable) in sequence to maintain the room temperature at set point.

3. Unoccupied

- a. The terminal unit is controlled using the night set point. The controller may reset to the Occupied mode for a predetermined time period upon a signal from the control system or manually at the room sensor.

G. Typical Exhaust Fan Control

1. The toilet exhaust fans shall be interlocked with the local light switch by Div 16.
2. General exhaust fans shall be software interlocked by the BAS to the associated units.
3. Electric room and mechanical room exhaust fans shall have a line voltage thermostat furnished by the controls contractor, installed by div.16.

H. Split Systems

1. Where possible, a TEC shall be used to control the split system unit.
2. Where control is not possible, the room temperature shall be monitored by the BAS.

I. Utilities Metering

1. The main power circuit coming into the campus shall be monitored by a Siemens Digital Energy Monitor.
2. DEM to be provided by Carrier, installed by Division 26.

J. Lighting Control

1. The exterior lights shall be controlled by the BAS.
  - a. A digital photocell shall be connected to the BAS. When the exterior lighting is scheduled to be on and the photocell is "off", the BAS shall enable the exterior lighting.
  - b. An override switch shall be located at the main entrance to the building. When activated, the exterior lighting shall be enabled regardless of scheduling or photocell activity
  - c. Exterior lighting shall be controlled by contactors furnished and installed by Division 26.
2. When a lighting control panel is used for interior lighting, the control panel shall be provided with BACnet IP communication protocol (by others).

END OF SECTION 23 09 00

## SECTION 23 31 13 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 2. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Sheet metal materials.
  - 4. Duct liner.
  - 5. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 6. Hangers and supports.
  - 7. Seismic-restraint devices.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
  - 2. Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts" for FRP ducts.
  - 3. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements, California Mechanical Code, and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible", California Mechanical Code, and ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Seismic Hazard Level A: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.48.



- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
  - 1. Liners and adhesives.
  - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 3. Seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
  - 4. Elevation of top of ducts.
  - 5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
  - 6. Fittings.
  - 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
  - 8. Seam and joint construction.
  - 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
  - 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
  - 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
  - 12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal:
  - 1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
  - 2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
  - 3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
  - 4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
  - 5. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
  - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.

4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
  3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Lindab Inc.
    - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - c. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods

unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
    - 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
    - 2) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  - 2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  - 3. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
    - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. Rubatex International, LLC.
  2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
    - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Insulation Pins and Washers:
1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
  6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
  7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
  8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    - a. Fan discharges.
    - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.

- c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
- 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
  - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
- 10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
  - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  - 4. Water resistant.
  - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
  - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  - 2. Type: S.
  - 3. Grade: NS.
  - 4. Class: 25.
  - 5. Use: O.
  - 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

E. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods and nuts.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- D. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- E. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized steel assemblies, complying with ASTM A 603, with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- F. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- G. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.7 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Mason Industries, Inc.
- B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.

- C. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603, galvanized or ASTM A 492, stainless-steel cables with end connections made of galvanized or stainless steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- F. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.



- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines".
- M. Line the first 20 feet length of connected supply and return ducts at each package rooftop A/C unit, for noise attenuation and thermal insulation (unless noted otherwise on drawings).

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.

3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports, unless indicated otherwise on drawings.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
  2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.
- G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.

2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.7 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099000 "Painting."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  2. Test the following systems:
    - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg:
  3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
  6. Give seven days advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
  1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.

2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
    - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
  - D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. If a duct system fails to pass tests and inspections, the entire duct system shall be cleaned and re-tested again at no additional cost to owner.
  - E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.9 DUCT CLEANING
- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
  - B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
    1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
    2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
    3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
  - C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
    1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
    2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
  - D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
    1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
    2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
    3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, condensate drain pans, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
    4. Coils and related components.
    5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
    6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
    7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
  - E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

### 3.10 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.11 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel.
- B. Supply Ducts:
  1. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch.
  2. Minimum SMACNA Leakage Class: 12
  3. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12
- C. Return Ducts:
  1. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch.
  2. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
  3. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
  1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
    - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
  2. Ducts Connected to Package A/C units and Air-handling units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
- E. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
- F. Liner:
  1. Air Ducts (except ducts serving Food Prep and Cafeteria): Fibrous glass, Type I, 2 inches thick.
  2. Fan Plenums (except ducts serving Food Prep and Cafeteria): Fibrous glass, Type II, 2 inches thick.
  3. Food Prep/Cafeteria air ducts and fan plenums: Flexible elastomeric 2-inches thick.
- G. Elbow Configuration:
  1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
  - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
  - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam or Welded.

H. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 23 31 13

## SECTION 23 33 00 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Backdraft dampers.
2. Volume dampers.
3. Turning vanes.
4. Duct-mounting access doors.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Flexible ducts.
7. Duct accessory hardware.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Backdraft dampers.
2. Volume dampers.
3. Turning vanes.
4. Duct-mounting access doors.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.



2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

## 2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Comply with 2016 California Mechanical Code for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M and having G90 coating designation; ducts shall have mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces exposed to view.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.3 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Duro Dyne Corp.
  2. Greenheck.
  3. Ruskin Company.
- B. Description: Multiple-blade, parallel action gravity balanced, with blades of maximum 6-inch width, with sealed edges, assembled in rattle-free manner with 90-degree stop, steel ball bearings, and axles; adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
- C. Frame: 0.052-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.
- D. Blades: 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
- E. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- F. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- G. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- H. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

## 2.4 VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  2. METALAIRE, Inc.

3. Ruskin Company.
  - B. General Description: Factory fabricated, with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades for stability. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class.
  - C. Standard Volume Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
    1. Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, galvanized sheet steel channels, minimum of 0.064 inch thick, with mitered and welded corners; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
    2. Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 0.064-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    3. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
    4. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze.
    5. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
  - D. Jackshaft: 1-inch- diameter, galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
    1. Length and Number of Mountings: Appropriate to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
  - E. Damper Hardware: Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.
- 2.5 TURNING VANES
- A. Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for vanes and vane runners. Vane runners shall automatically align vanes.
  - B. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Fabricate 1-1/2-inch- wide, single-vane, curved blades of galvanized sheet steel set 3/4 inch o.c.; support with bars perpendicular to blades set 2 inches o.c.; and set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
      - b. Duro Dyne Corp.
      - c. Ward Industries, Inc.
  - C. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

## 2.6 DUCT-MOUNTING ACCESS DOORS

- A. General Description: Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- B. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and rectangular; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel where indicated. Include 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    - b. Greenheck.
    - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - d. Ward Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  - 3. Provide number of hinges and locks as follows:
    - a. Less Than 12 Inches Square: Secure with two sash locks.
    - b. Up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
    - c. Up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
    - d. Sizes 24 by 48 Inches and Larger: One additional hinge.
- C. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber.
- D. Insulation: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## 2.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Duro Dyne Corp.
  - 3. Ward Industries, Inc.
- B. General Description: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

## 2.8 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers:

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  2. Hart & Cooley, Inc.
  3. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
  4. Casco.
- B. Noninsulated-Duct Connectors: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
- C. Insulated-Duct Connectors: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
- D. Flexible Duct Clamps: Stainless-steel band with stainless steel hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action, in sizes 3 through 18 inches to suit duct size.

## 2.9 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION AND INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.
- B. Provide duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers in ducts with liner; avoid damage to and erosion of duct liner.

- E. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches lead from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install at a minimum of two duct widths from branch takeoff.
  - F. Provide test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
  - G. Install duct access doors to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and terminal units as follows:
    - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
    - 2. Downstream from volume dampers, turning vanes, and equipment.
    - 3. Adjacent to fire or smoke dampers, providing access to reset or reinstall fusible links.
    - 4. To interior of ducts for cleaning; before and after each change in direction, at maximum 50-foot spacing.
    - 5. On sides of ducts where adequate clearance is available.
  - H. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, rectangular access doors:
    - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
    - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
    - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
    - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
    - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
    - 6. Body Plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
  - I. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, round access doors:
    - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 inches in diameter.
    - 2. Two-Hand Access: 10 inches in diameter.
    - 3. Head and Hand Access: 12 inches in diameter.
    - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 18 inches in diameter.
    - 5. Body Access: 24 inches in diameter.
  - J. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
  - K. Install flexible connectors immediately adjacent to equipment in ducts associated with fans and motorized equipment supported by vibration isolators.
  - L. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to low pressure ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
  - M. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- 3.2 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.

El Monte High School HVAC Project  
El Monte Union High School District  
El Monte, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22201-01  
DSA Submittal

- B. Final positioning of manual-volume dampers is specified in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

END OF SECTION 23 33 00

## SECTION 23 34 23 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Loren Cook Company.
3. Or Equal.

B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.

1. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
  1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
  2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
  3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
  4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
  5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
  1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
  2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
  3. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
- F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
  1. Configuration: Built-in cant and mounting flange.
  2. Overall Height: 8 inches.
  3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
  4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
  5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

## 2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
- B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.



- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with stainless steel hardware.
- B. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- C. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and elastomeric hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch.
- D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

#### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

#### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.

2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  5. Adjust belt tension.
  6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
  7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
  9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
  10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
  11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 23 34 23

## SECTION 23 37 13 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
2. Louver face diffusers.
3. Fixed face grilles.

B. Related Sections:

1. See architectural drawings for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers CD-1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Krueger.
  - b. METALAIR, Inc.
  - c. Price Industries.
  - d. Titus.

2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Material: Steel.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
5. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches.
6. Face Style: Plaque.
7. Mounting: As required for ceiling type, concealed hardware.
8. Pattern: Adjustable.
9. Accessories:
  - a. Plaster ring.

B. Louver Face Diffuser SWS:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - b. Price Industries.
  - c. Titus.
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Material: Steel.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
5. Face Size: See plans.
6. Mounting: As required for soffit type, concealed hardware.
7. Pattern: Adjustable core style.

2.2 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Fixed Face Grille RG-1/EG-1/TG-1/SWR

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Krueger.
  - b. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - c. Price Industries.
  - d. Titus.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Arrangement:  $\frac{3}{4}$ " blades spacing at 30 to 40 degree angle.
5. Frame: 1 inch wide.
6. Mounting: As required for ceiling or soffit type, concealed hardware.
7. Accessories:
  - a. Plaster frame.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 37 13

## SECTION 23 41 00 - PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes factory-fabricated air-filter devices and media used to remove particulate matter from air for HVAC applications.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include dimensions; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each unit indicated.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ARI 850.
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 52.1 and ASHRAE 52.2 for method of testing and rating air-filter units.
- C. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Airguard Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Farr Co.
  - 3. Flanders Filters, Inc.
- B. Disposable Panel Filters: Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel-type, disposable air filters with holding frames.
  - 1. Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive.
  - 2. Frame: Cardboard frame with perforated metal retainer.
  - 3. Duct-Mounting Frames: Welded, galvanized steel with gaskets and fasteners and suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

- C. Extended-Surface, Disposable Panel Filters: Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface filters with holding frames.
  - 1. Media: Fibrous material formed into deep-V-shaped pleats and held by self-supporting wire grid.
  - 2. Media and Media-Grid Frame: Nonflammable cardboard.
  - 3. Duct-Mounting Frames: Welded, galvanized steel with gaskets and fasteners, and suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.
- B. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.
- C. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling unit installations.

END OF SECTION 23 41 00

## SECTION 23 81 19 - ROOFTOP AIR CONDITIONERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following rooftop air conditioners:

1. Cooling and heating units 6 tons and smaller.

- B. Pitched isolation roof curb.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each model indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection. Prepare the following by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer:

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases. See Sheet M0.6.
2. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Field quality-control test reports.

- D. Operation and maintenance data.

- E. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- B. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration."

- C. Energy-Efficiency Ratio: Equal to or greater than prescribed by State of California Title 24, Part 6 Addendum AB-970.



- D. Coefficient of Performance: Equal to or greater than prescribed by State of California Title 24, Part 6 Addendum AB-970.
- E. Comply with NFPA 54 for gas-fired furnace section.
- F. ARI Compliance for Units with Capacities Less Than 135,000 Btuh: Rate rooftop air-conditioner capacity according to ARI 210/240, "Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment."
  - 1. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with ARI 270, "Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment."
- G. ARI Compliance for Units with Capacities 135,000 Btuh and More: Rate rooftop air-conditioner capacity according to ARI 340/360, "Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment."
  - 1. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with ARI 270, "Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment."

#### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of rooftop air conditioners that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 3. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 4. Warranty Period for Variable-Speed Fan Motors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2- PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ROOFTOP AIR CONDITIONERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Carrier
  - 2. Trane
  - 3. Or Equal
- B. Basis of design is Carrier units. If contractor submits on listed alternates, he shall assume responsibility for any and all necessary structural, electrical, plumbing, architectural and HVAC modifications, and coordinate such.

- C. Description: Factory assembled and tested; designed for exterior installation; consisting of compressor, indoor and outside refrigerant coils, indoor fan and outside coil fan, refrigeration and temperature controls, filters, and dampers.
- D. Casing: Galvanized-steel construction with enamel paint finish, removable panels or access doors with neoprene gaskets for inspection and access to internal parts, minimum 1/2-inch- thick thermal insulation, knockouts for electrical and piping connections, exterior condensate drain connection, and lifting lugs.
- E. Indoor Fan: Forward curved, centrifugal, belt driven by single-speed motor.
- F. Outside Coil Fan: Propeller type, directly driven by motor.
- G. Refrigerant Coils: Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
- H. Compressor: Hermetic scroll compressor with integral vibration isolators, internal overcurrent and over temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.
- I. Refrigeration System:
  - 1. Compressor.
  - 2. Outside coil and fan.
  - 3. Indoor coil and fan.
  - 4. Four-way reversing valve and suction line accumulator.
  - 5. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
  - 6. Refrigerant dryer.
  - 7. High-pressure switch.
  - 8. Low-pressure switch.
  - 9. Thermostat for coil freeze-up protection during low-ambient temperature operation or loss of air.
  - 10. Low-ambient switch.
  - 11. Brass service valves installed in discharge and liquid lines.
  - 12. Charge of refrigerant.
- J. Filters: 2-inch- thick, fiberglass, pleated, throwaway filters in filter rack. FARR 30/30 Class II. C.S.F.M. No. 3175-0140:006
- K. Heat Exchanger: Aluminized-steel construction for natural-gas-fired burners with the following controls:
  - 1. Redundant single or dual gas valve with manual shutoff.
  - 2. Direct-spark pilot ignition.
  - 3. Electronic flame sensor.
  - 4. Induced-draft blower.
  - 5. Flame rollout switch.
- L. Economizer: Return- and outside-air dampers with neoprene seals, outside-air filter, and hood.
  - 1. Damper Motor: Fully modulating spring return with adjustable minimum position.

2. Control: Electronic-control system uses mixed-air temperature and selects between outside-air and return-air enthalpy to adjust mixing dampers.
  3. Relief Damper: Gravity actuated with bird screen and hood.
- M. Power Connection: Provide for single connection of power to unit with control-circuit transformer.
- N. Unit Controls: In accordance with 230593.
- O. Isolation Curb: Rigid upper and lower steel structure with vibration isolation springs having 1-inch static deflection and vertical and horizontal restraints; with elastomeric waterproof membrane
1. Galvanized steel construction with:
    - a. Wood nailer strips.
    - b. Base plate.
    - c. Acoustical package with two layers of gypsum board attached to upper base member.
    - d. Flexible duct supports including flexible connections at duct drops.
  2. Pitched construction, top level.
    - a. Determine pitch from field conditions.
  3. Match unit base.
    - a. Gaskets between unit and curb.
  4. Seals:
    - a. Continuous neoprene wind and water seals.
    - b. Seal between base and curb.
    - c. Seal between base and bottom of unit.
  5. Manufacturers:
    - a. MicroMetl

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb, maintaining manufacturer's recommended clearances.
- B. Isolation Curb Support: Install units on isolation curbs and install flexible duct connectors and the following vibration isolation and seismic-control devices. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section "Duct Accessories."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
  - 1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in "Plumbing Piping and Valves." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with ground joint union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
- C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  - 1. Install ducts to termination in roof curb.
  - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  - 3. Terminate return-air duct through roof structure and insulate space between roof and bottom of unit with 2-inch- thick, acoustic duct liner.
- D. Electrical System Connections: Coordinate with Division 26 Sections for power wiring, switches, and motor controls.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field quality-control tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. After installing rooftop air conditioners and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest as specified above.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. In accordance with 230593.

END OF SECTION 23 81 19

SECTION 238127 - VARIABLE REFRIGERANT VOLUME (VRV) SPLIT-SYSTEM HEAT PUMP,  
BRANCH SELECTOR AND FAN COIL UNITS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.
- B. The variable capacity, heat pump heat recovery air conditioning system shall be a Trane (simultaneous cooling and heating) split system heat pump.  
The system shall consist of a outdoor unit, Branch Selector Panel, multiple indoor units, and DDC (Direct Digital Controls). Each indoor unit or group of indoor units shall be capable of operating in any mode independently of other indoor units or groups. System shall be capable of changing mode (cooling to heating, heating to cooling) with no interruption to system operation. To ensure owner comfort, each indoor unit or group of indoor units shall be independently controlled and capable of changing mode automatically when zone temperature strays 1.8 degrees F from set point for ten minutes. The sum of connected capacity of all indoor air handlers shall range from 50% to 150% of outdoor rated capacity.  
The Trane system is the basis of design for this project.

1.2 SUBMITTAL

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.
- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The units shall be listed by Electrical Laboratories (ETL) and bear the ETL label.
- B. All wiring shall be in accordance with the California Electrical Code (C.E.C.).
- C. The units shall be manufactured in a facility registered to ISO 9001 and ISO14001 which is a set of standards applying to environmental protection set by the International Standard Organization (ISO).
- D. A full charge of R-410A for the condensing unit only shall be provided in the condensing unit.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Unit shall be stored and handled according to the manufacturer's recommendation.

#### 1.05 WARRANTY

- A. The units shall be covered by the manufacturer's limited warranty for a period of one (1) year from date of acceptance.

The system must be:

1. Installed by a certified Daikin Dealer.

Then the units shall be covered by an extended manufacturer's limited warranty for a period of ten (10) years from date of acceptance.

In addition the compressor shall have a manufacturer's limited warranty for a period of ten (10) years from date of acceptance.

If, during this period, any part should fail to function properly due to defects in workmanship or material, it shall be replaced.

All manufacturer technical and service manuals must be readily available for download by any local contractor should emergency service be required. Registering and sign-in requirements which may delay emergency service reference are not allowed.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. DESIGN BASIS:

1. The HVAC equipment basis of design is Daikin North America. All bidders shall furnish the minimum system standards as defined by the base bid model numbers, model families or as otherwise specified herein (see Appendix A HVAC Equipment Alternate General Information). In any event, the contractor shall be responsible for all specified items and intents of this document without further compensation.

#### 2.02 HVAC SYSTEM DESIGN

- A. SYSTEM DESCRIPTION:

1. The variable capacity heat recovery air conditioning system shall be a Daikin Variable Refrigerant Volume Series (heat or cool model) system as specified.
2. The system shall consist of multiple evaporators, branch selector boxes, REFNET™ joints and headers, a three-pipe refrigeration distribution system using PID control and Daikin VRV® condenser unit.
3. The condenser shall be a direct expansion (DX), air-cooled heat recovery, multi-zone air-conditioning system with variable speed inverter driven compressors using R-410A refrigerant.

4. The condensing unit may connect an indoor evaporator nominal capacity up to 200% of the condensing unit nominal capacity. All zones are each capable of operating separately with individual temperature control.
5. A dedicated hot gas pipe shall be required to ensure optimum heating operation performance.
  - a. Two-pipe, heat recovery systems utilizing a lower temperature mixed liquid/gas refrigerant to perform heat recovery are not acceptable due to reduced heating capabilities.
6. The Daikin condensing unit shall be able to connect to indoor unit models FXSQ, and shall range in capacity from 5,800 Btu/h to 96,000 Btu/h in accordance with Daikin's engineering data book detailing each available indoor unit.
  - a. The indoor units shall be connected to the condensing unit utilizing Daikin's REFNET™ specified piping joints and headers to ensure correct refrigerant flow and balancing. T style joints are not acceptable for a variable refrigerant system.
7. Operation of the system shall permit either individual cooling or heating of each indoor unit simultaneously or all of the indoor units associated with each branch of the cool/heat selector box. Each indoor unit or group of indoor units shall be able to provide set temperature independently via a local remote controller, an Intelligent Controller, an Intelligent Manager or a BMS interface.
8. Branch selector boxes:
  - a. The branch selector boxes shall have the capacity to control up to 290 MBH (cooling) downstream of the branch selector box.
  - b. Each branch of the branch selector box shall consist of three electronic expansion valves, refrigerant control piping and electronics to facilitate communications between the box and main processor and between the box and indoor units.
  - c. The branch selector box shall control the operational mode of the subordinate indoor units. The use of three EEV's ensures continuous heating during defrost (multiple condenser systems), no heating impact during changeover and reduced sound levels.
  - d. The use of solenoid valves for changeover and pressure equalization shall not be acceptable due to refrigerant noise.
9. The REYQ\_AA condensing unit model numbers and the associated number of connectable indoor units per REYQ\_AA condensing unit is indicated in the following table. Each indoor unit or group of indoor units shall be independently controlled.

MODEL NUMBER	NOMINAL CAPACITY (Tons)	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF INDOOR UNITS
REYQ72AAYD*	6	12
REYQ96AAYD*	8	16

**B. VRF *EMERION* FEATURES AND BENEFITS**

1. Voltage Platform - The condensing units shall be available with a 460V/3ph/60 Hz power supply.
2. Single-module outdoor units shall be available from 6 to 20 T in nominal cooling capacity and can be combined to offer up to 40 T in a dual-module configuration, which helps

- minimize the overall space required for mechanical equipment and optimize total project costs.
3. The condensing unit shall feature a sealed E-box with a minimum of IP55 rating to provide high dust and moisture protection for reliability
  4. Each system shall be able to enlarge from single to dual module without the need for installed main pipe size changes. The manufacturer shall provide predefined pipe sizes and design rules ensuring reliable system operation and offering design flexibility in phased installation applications.
  5. Stable Operation – System shall provide stable inverter operation at varied ambient conditions.
  6. No Drain Pan Heater – System shall be capable of heating operation without the need for a drain pan heater. If alternate manufacturer is chosen, an additional drain pan heater shall be provided by the manufacturer.
  7. Auto Changeover – System shall, below the field selected outdoor ambient temperature provide signal to initiate auxiliary or back up heat.
  8. Advanced Zoning - A single system shall provide for up to 64 zones.
  9. Independent Control - Each indoor unit shall use a dedicated electronic expansion valve with up to 2000 positions for independent control.
  10. VFD Inverter Control and Variable Refrigerant Temperature - Each condensing unit shall use high efficiency, variable speed all “inverter” based flash vapor injection compressor(s) coupled with inverter fan motors to optimize part load performance. The system capacity and refrigerant temperatures shall be modulated automatically to set suction and condensing pressures while varying the refrigerant volume for the needs of the cooling or heating loads. The control will be automatic and customizable depending on load and weather conditions.
    - a. Indoor shall use PID to control superheat to deliver a comfortable room temperature condition and optimize efficiency.
  11. Configurator software - Each system shall be available with configurator software package to allow for remote configuration of operational settings and also for assessment of operational data and error codes.
    - a. If this software is not provided by an alternate manufacturer, for each individual outdoor unit the contractor shall do the settings manually and keep detailed records for future maintenance purposes.
  12. Each system shall include a built-in data recorder that can store up to 45 minutes of operational data which can help identify the issue in case of a product failure
  13. Heating during Defrost and Oil Return– 16 T and above VRV systems shall maintain continuous heating during defrost and oil return operation. Reverse cycle (cooling mode) in these modes shall not be permitted due to the potential reduction in space temperature.
  14. Low Ambient Cooling - Each system shall be capable of low ambient cooling operation to -4°FDB (-20°CDB).
  15. Independent Control - Each indoor unit shall use a dedicated electronic expansion valve for independent control.
  16. Flexible Design –
    - a. Systems shall be capable of up to 540ft (165m) [623 ft. (190m) equivalent] of linear piping between the condensing unit and furthest located indoor unit.
    - b. Systems shall be capable of up to 3,280ft (1,000m) total “one-way” piping in the piping network.



- c. Systems shall have a vertical (height) separation of up to 361 ft between the condensing unit and the indoor units.
  - d. Systems shall be capable of up to 295ft (90m) from the first REFNET™ / branch point.
  - e. The condensing unit shall have the ability to connect an indoor unit evaporator capacity of up to 200% of the condensing unit nominal capacity.
  - f. Systems shall be capable of 98ft (30m) vertical separation between indoor units.
  - g. Condensing units shall be supported with a fan motor ESP up to 0.32" WG as standard to allow connection of discharge ductwork and to prevent discharge air short circuiting.
- 17. Oil return – Each system shall be furnished with a centrifugal oil separator and active oil recovery cycle.
  - 18. Simple wiring – Systems shall use 16/18 AWG, 2 wire, stranded, non-shielded and non-polarized daisy chain control wiring.
  - 19. Space saving – Each system shall not exceed the dimensions shown below:

MODEL NUMBER	Dimensions in Inch (H x W x D)
REYQ72AAYD*	65-3/8 x 36-5/8 x 30-1/8
REYQ96AAYD*	65-3/8 x 48-13/16 x 30-1/8

- 20. Each condensing unit shall include a multi-functional digital display that can provide system operation status such as operating refrigerant temperatures, pressures, outdoor electronic expansion valve opening and compressor operation time.
- 21. Each condensing unit shall include a service window that can provide easy access to system field settings and operation status without completely removing the condensing unit panel.
- 22. Advanced diagnostics – Systems shall include a self-diagnostic, auto-check function to detect a malfunction and display the type and location.
- 23. Each condensing unit shall incorporate contacts for electrical demand shedding with optional 3 stage demand control with 12 customizable demand settings.
- 24. Advanced controls – Each system shall have at least one remote controller capable of controlling up to 16 indoor units.
- 25. Each system shall be capable of integrating with open protocol BACnet, LonWorks and Modbus building management systems.
- 26. Low sound levels - Each system shall use indoor and condensing units with quiet operation as low as 27 dB(A).
- 27. The system shall be certified and listed in OSHPD directory for seismic certification
- 28. The condensing unit can be installed up to 200 ft above the ground without requiring any additional field modifications to the unit to comply with the Florida Miami Dade Wind code requirements.
- 29. The condensing unit shall be factory equipped with a Schrader valve for connection to a pressure relief kit for compliance with City of Chicago Pressure relief code.

C. PERFORMANCE:

- 1. The VRV REYQ\_AA system shall perform as indicated below:

MODEL NUMBER	SYSTEM IEER (Ducted)	SYSTEM IEER (Non-Ducted)
REYQ72AAYD*	23.00	28.00
REYQ96AAYD*	25.30	30.00
MODEL NUMBER	SYSTEM EER (Ducted)	SYSTEM EER (Non-Ducted)
REYQ72AAYD*	12.80	15.70
REYQ96AAYD*	12.80	14.60

MODEL NUMBER	SYSTEM COP@47°F (Ducted)	SYSTEM COP@47°F (Non-Ducted)
REYQ72AAYD*	3.58	4.35
REYQ96AAYD*	3.56	4.30

MODEL NUMBER	SYSTEM COP@17°F (Ducted)	SYSTEM COP@17°F (Non-Ducted)
REYQ72AAYD*	2.40	2.50
REYQ96AAYD*	2.25	2.48

1. Performance Conditions:
  - a. Cooling: Indoor temperature of 80°FDB (26.7°CDB), 67°FWB (19.5°CWB) and outdoor temperature of 95°FDB (35°CDB).
  - b. Heating: Indoor temperature of 70°FDB (21.1°CDB) and outdoor temperature of 47°FDB (8.3°CDB), 43°FWB (6.1°CDB).
  - c. Equivalent piping length: 25ft (7.5m)
2. Cooling or Cooling Dominant Operation:
  - a. The standard operating range in cooling or cooling dominant simultaneous cooling/heating will be 23°FDB (-5°CDB) ~ 122°FDB (50°CDB).
  - b. Cooling mode indoor room temperature range will be 57-77°FWB (13.8 - 25°CWB).
  - c. Each system as standard shall be capable of onsite reprogramming to allow low ambient cooling operation down to -4°FDB (-20°CDB).
3. Heating or Heating Dominant Operation:
  - a. The standard operating range in heating or heating dominant simultaneous cooling/heating will be -13° – 61°FWB (-25 – 16°CWB).
    - 1) If an alternate equipment manufacturer is selected, the mechanical contractor shall provide, at their own risk and cost, all additional material and labor to meet low ambient operating condition and performance
  - b. Heating mode indoor room temperature range will be 59°FDB - 80°F DB (15°CDB – 26.7°CDB).

## 2.03 EQUIPMENT

### A. ELECTRICAL:

1. The power supply to the condensing unit shall be:

POWER SUPPLY VOLTAGE	VOLTAGE RANGE
460V / 3ph / 60 Hz	416V – 508V (±10%)

MODEL	MCA	MOP
REYQ72AAYD*	12.4 A	15 A
REYQ96AAYD*	16.4 A	20 A

### B. WIRING:

1. The control voltage between the indoor and condensing unit shall be 16VDC non-shielded, stranded 2 conductor cable.
2. The control wiring shall be a two-wire multiplex transmission system, making it possible to connect multiple indoor units to one condensing unit with one 2-cable wire, thus simplifying the wiring installation.
3. The control wiring maximum lengths shall be as shown below:

	CONDENSER TO INDOOR UNIT	CONDENSER TO CENTRAL CONTROLLER	INDOOR UNIT TO REMOTE CONTROL
CONTROL WIRING LENGTH	6,560ft (2,000m)	3,280ft (1,000m)	1640 ft. (500m)
WIRE TYPE	16/18 AWG, 2 wire, non-polarity, non-shielded, stranded		

### C. REFRIGERANT PIPING:

1. The system shall be capable of refrigerant piping up to 540ft (165m) actual or 623ft (190m) equivalent from the condensing unit to the furthest indoor unit, a total combined liquid line length of 3,280ft (1,000m) of piping between the condensing and indoor units, without any oil traps or additional components
2. REFNET™ piping joints and headers shall be used to ensure proper refrigerant balance and flow for optimum system capacity and performance.
  - a. T style joints shall not be acceptable as this will negatively impact proper refrigerant balance and flow for optimum system capacity and performance.

D. PAINT/CORROSION RESISTANCE:

1. Paint and corrosion resistance shall be at a minimum per the table below:

COMPONENT	VRV EMERION		
	BASE MATERIAL	SURFACE TREATMENT	COATING THICKNESS
			External & Internal Surface
EXTERNAL PANEL BASE	Galvanized steel	POLYESTER	≥1.5 mils
EXTERNAL FRONT PANEL	Galvanized steel	POLYESTER	≥1.5 mils
PILLAR	Galvanized steel	POLYESTER	≥1.5 mils
COMPRESSOR COVER	ASTM material	Resin Paint	≥0.78 mils
FIN GUARD	Iron wire	Resin Paint	≥0.79 mils
FAN GUARD AND DRUM	Polypropylene	No treatment required	N/A
FAN	Acrylonitrile - glass	No treatment required	N/A
FAN MOTOR FRAME	Resin	No treatment required	N/A
FAN MOTOR SHAFT	Carbon steel	No treatment required	N/A
FAN MOTOR SUPPORT	Galvanized steel	POLYESTER	≥1.5 mils
HEAT EXCHANGERS (FIN ONLY)	Aluminum	Polymer Anti-corrosion surface treatment	Salt Spray 1000 hours, blister rating 10
ELECTRICAL PARTS BOX	Hot-dip zinc-coated steel	No treatment required	N/A
ELECTRICAL PARTS BOARD	Glass cloth / Glass nonwoven cloth material	Insulation Varnish	No specific thickness
SCREWS	Carbon steel wire rods	High corrosion resistance treatment	≥0.28 mils

2.04 OUTDOOR/CONDENSING UNIT

A. GENERAL:

1. The condensing unit is designed specifically for use with VRV series components.
2. The refrigeration circuit of the condensing unit shall consist of Daikin inverter scroll compressors, motors, fans, condenser coil, electronic expansion valves, solenoid valves, 4-way valve, distribution headers, capillaries, filters, shut off valves, oil separators, service ports, liquid receiver and suction accumulator.
3. High/Low pressure gas line, liquid and suction lines must be individually insulated between the condensing and indoor units.
4. The condensing unit can be wired and piped with access from the left, right, rear or bottom.

5. The connection ratio of indoor units to condensing unit shall be permitted up to 200% of nominal capacity.
6. Each condensing system shall be able to support the connection of up to 64 indoor units dependent on the model of the condensing unit.
7. The sound pressure level standard shall be that value as listed in the Daikin engineering manual for the specified models at 3 feet from the front of the unit. The condensing unit shall be capable of operating automatically at further reduced noise during night time or via an external input.
8. The system will automatically restart operation after a power failure and will not cause any settings to be lost, thus eliminating the need for reprogramming.
9. The condensing unit shall be modular in design and should allow for side-by-side installation.
10. The following safety devices shall be included on the condensing unit; high pressure sensor and switch, low pressure sensor, control circuit fuses, crankcase heaters, fusible plug, overload relay, inverter overload protector, thermal protectors for compressor and fan motors, over current protection for the inverter and anti-recycling timers.
11. To ensure the liquid refrigerant does not flash when supplying to the various indoor units, the circuit shall be provided with a sub-cooling feature.
12. Oil recovery cycle shall be automatic occurring 2 hours after start of operation and then every 8 hours of operation.
13. The condensing unit shall be capable of heating operation at -13°F (-25°C) wet bulb ambient temperature without additional low ambient controls or an auxiliary heat source.
14. 16 T and above VRV systems shall continue to provide heat to the indoor units in heating operation while in the defrost mode.

**B. UNIT CABINET:**

1. The condensing unit shall be completely weatherproof and corrosion resistant. The unit shall be constructed from rust-proofed galvanized steel panels coated with a baked enamel finish.
2. Each condensing unit shall have a three-segment panel design which allows for direct access to outdoor fans, critical mechanical and electrical components separately for ease of installation and service.
3. Each outdoor unit shall have separate knock-outs for both refrigerant piping and wiring on the bottom panel.

**C. FAN:**

1. The condensing unit shall consist of one or more propeller type, direct-drive fan motors that have multiple speed operation via a DC (digitally commutating) inverter. Reference table below.

MODEL NUMBER	FAN MOTOR OUTPUT (W) & QUANTITY
REYQ72AAYD*	950 x 1
REYQ96AAYD*	650 x 2

2. The condensing unit fan motor shall have multiple speed operation of the DC (digitally commutating) inverter type, and be of high external static pressure and shall be factory set as standard at 0.12 in. WG. A field setting switch to a maximum 0.32 in. WG pressure is available to accommodate field applied duct for indoor mounting of condensing units.

3. The condensing unit shall have configurable settings for intermittent fan operation to help minimize snow accumulation on fan blades when the system is off.
4. Each outdoor unit fan shall be a vertical discharge configuration and the nominal airflow rate for each module will range from 6,200CFM to 14,505 CFM dependent on model specified.
5. The fan motor shall have inherent protection and permanently lubricated bearings and be mounted.
6. The fan motor shall be provided with a fan guard to prevent contact with moving parts.

D. SOUND:

1. Nominal sound pressure levels shall be as shown below.

MODEL NUMBER	SOUND PRESSURE LEVEL dB(A)
REYQ72AAYD*	58 dBA

2. Night setback control of the fan motor for low noise operation by way of automatically limiting the maximum speed shall be a standard feature. Operation sound level shall be selectable from 3 steps.

OPERATION SOUND dB(A)	NIGHT MODE SOUND PRESSURE LEVEL dB(A) APPROX.
Level 1	55
Level 2	50
Level 3	45

E. CONDENSER COIL:

1. The condenser coil shall be manufactured from copper tubes expanded into aluminum fins to form a mechanical bond.
2. The heat exchanger coil shall be of a waffle louver fin and rifled bore tube design to ensure high efficiency performance.
3. The heat exchanger on the condensing units shall be manufactured from Hi-X seamless copper tube with N-shape internal grooves mechanically bonded on to aluminum fins to an e-Pass Design.
4. The fins shall be coated with an anti-corrosion hydrophilic blue coating as standard from factory with a salt spray test rating of 1000hr per ASTM B117 test standards.
5. The outdoor coil shall have three-circuit heat exchanger design eliminating the need for a drain pan heater. The lower part of the coil shall be used for inverter cooling and be on or off during operation enhancing the defrost operation.
  - a. An alternate manufacturer must provide a drain pan heater to enable adequate defrosting of the unit in defrost operation.
6. The condensing unit shall be factory equipped with condenser coil guards on all sides.

F. COMPRESSOR:

1. The Daikin inverter scroll compressors shall be variable speed (PVM inverter) controlled which is capable of changing the speed to follow the variations in total cooling and heating load as determined by the suction gas pressure as measured in the condensing unit.

- a. In addition, samplings of evaporator and condenser temperatures shall be made so that the high/low pressures detected are read every 20 seconds and calculated. With each reading, the compressor capacity (INV frequency) shall be controlled to eliminate deviation from target value.
  - 1) Non –inverter-driven compressors, which may cause starting motor current to exceed the nominal motor current (RLA) and require larger wire sizing, shall not be allowed.
2. The inverter driven compressors in the condensing unit shall be of highly efficient reluctance DC (digitally commutating), hermetically sealed scroll “P-type”.
3. Neodymium magnets shall be adopted in the rotor construction to yield a higher torque and efficiency in the compressor instead of the normal ferrite magnet type.
  - a. At complete stop of the compressor, the neodymium magnets will position the rotor into the optimum position for a low torque start.
4. The capacity control range shall be as low as 1% to 100%.
5. The compressor’s motor shall have a cooling system using discharge gas, to avoid sudden changes in temperature resulting in significant stresses on winding and bearings.
6. Each compressor shall be equipped with a crankcase heater, high pressure safety switch, and internal thermal overload protector.
7. Oil separators shall be standard with the equipment together with an intelligent oil management system.
8. The compressor shall be mounted on vibration dampening rubber grommets to minimize the transmission of vibration, eliminating the standard need for external spring isolation.
9. In the event of compressor failure, the remaining compressors, if applicable, shall continue to operate and provide heating or cooling as required at a proportionally reduced capacity. The microprocessor and associated controls shall be manually activated to specifically address this condition for single module and manifold systems.
10. In the case of multiple condenser modules, combined operation hours of the compressors shall be balanced by means of the Duty Cycling Function, ensuring sequential starting of each module at each start/stop cycle, completion of oil return, completion of defrost or every 8 hours. When connected to a central control system sequential start is activated for all system on each DIII network.
11. Compressor configurations:

MODEL NUMBER	COMPRESSOR MOTOR OUTPUT (W)	QUANTITY	COMPRESSOR TYPES
REYQ72AAYD*	4390	1	Inverter controlled
REYQ96AAYD*	2740 + 2740	2	Inverter controlled

## 2.05 BRANCH SELECTOR UNITS

### A. GENERAL:

#### 1. SINGLE-PORT BRANCH SELECTOR BOX

- a. The BSQ36TVJ, BSQ60TVJ, and BSQ96TVJ, are designed specifically for use with VRV IV, VRV IV X, VRV EMERION, VRV AURORA, and T-series Water Cooled heat recovery system components.

- b. The single port branch selector boxes BSQ\_T shall provide individual control and changeover for one group of indoor units.
- c. These BSQ\_T branch controllers shall support low ambient cooling down to -4F° to connected indoor units.
- d. These selector boxes shall be factory assembled, wired, and piped.
- e. These branch selector boxes shall have a heat-by-pass control loop inside the units to prevent overheating of space during heating cycles
- f. These selector boxes must be mounted indoors.
- g. When simultaneously heating and cooling, the units in heating mode shall energize their subcooling electronic expansion valve.

2. STANDARD MULTI-PORT T-SERIES BRANCH SELECTOR BOX

- a. The BS4Q54TVJ, BS6Q54TVJ, BS8Q54TVJ, BS10Q54TVJ and BS12Q54TVJ, are designed specifically for use with VRV IV, VRV IV X, VRV EMERION, VRV AURORA, and T-series Water Cooled heat recovery system components.
- b. These branch selector boxes shall provide individual control and changeover for multiple groups of indoor units.
- c. These selector boxes shall be factory assembled, wired, and piped.
- d. These selector boxes must be mounted indoors.
- e. When simultaneously heating and cooling, the units in heating mode shall energize their subcooling electronic expansion valve.

3. MULTI-PORT FLEX BRANCH SELECTOR BOX SERIES

- a. The BSF4Q54TVJ, BSF6Q54TVJ, and BSF8Q54TVJ are designed specifically for use with VRV IV, VRV IV X, VRV EMERION VRV AURORA, and T-series Water Cooled heat recovery system components.
- b. These branch selector boxes shall provide individual control and changeover for multiple groups of indoor units.
- c. These branch selector boxes shall allow for Field selectable LEFT/RIGHT/PASS THROUGH piping configuration.
- d. These branch selector boxes shall allow multiple branch selector boxes to be connected downstream of the first Branch selector box in series in series.
- e. These Branch selector boxes when connected in series shall be able to support a total indoor load of up to 230MBH.
- f. The EEV heads and motors used in the branch selector box shall be accessible via a quick access panel without disassembly of the electrical box.
- g. The electrical box of the 4-port branch selector box shall be field re-locatable to left, right, and back side of the main cabinet.
- h. These branch selector boxes shall allow connected indoor units to operate in cooling mode down to -4F without any additional field installed accessories
- i. Labels shall be displayed close to the incoming 3 pipes to facilitate clear identification and eliminate cross piping.
- j. The branch selector boxes shall employ EEV with the ability to control up to 6000 pulses
- k. These selector boxes shall be factory assembled, wired, and piped.
- l. These selector boxes must be mounted indoors.
- m. When simultaneously heating and cooling, the units in heating mode shall energize their subcooling electronic expansion valve.

4. The number of connectable indoor units shall be in accordance with the table below:



BRANCH SELECTOR TYPE	MODEL NUMBER	MAXIMUM CONNECTABLE COOLING CAPACITY	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONNECTABLE INDOOR UNITS PER BRANCH
SINGLE-PORT	BSQ36TVJ	36,000 Btu/h	4
	BSQ60TVJ	60,000 Btu/h	8
	BSQ96TVJ	96,000 Btu/h	8
MULTI-PORT T-SERIES	BS4Q54TVJ	144,000 Btu/h	5
	BS6Q54TVJ	216,000 Btu/h	5
	BS8Q54TVJ	290,000 Btu/h	5
	BS10Q54TVJ	290,000 Btu/h	5
	BS12Q54TVJ	290,000 Btu/h	5
MULTI-PORT FLEX-SERIES	BSF4Q54TVJ	144,000 Btu/h*	5
	BSF6Q54TVJ	216,000 Btu/h*	5
	BSF8Q54TVJ	290,000 Btu/h*	5

\* For multiple branch selector box connected in series, refer to the engineering manual for details.

#### B. UNIT CABINET

1. These units shall have a galvanized steel plate casing.
2. Each cabinet shall house 3 electronic expansion valves for refrigerant control per branch.
3. The cabinet shall contain one subcooling heat exchanger per branch.
4. The unit shall have sound absorption thermal insulation material made of flame and heat resistant foamed polyethylene.
5. Nominal sound pressure levels shall be measured and published on the submittals by the manufacturer. The sound levels must not exceed the values below.
  - a. If an alternative manufacturer is selected, the mechanical contractor shall provide, at their own cost and expense, any additional material and labor to meet the below published sound levels

BRANCH SELECTOR TYPE	MODEL NUMBER	SOUND LEVEL dB(A) OPERATION	SOUND LEVEL dB(A) MAX
SINGLE PORT	BSQ36TVJ	35	40
	BSQ60TVJ	41	45
	BSQ96TVJ	41	45
MULTI-PORT STANDARD T- SERIES	BS4Q54TVJ	38	45
	BS6Q54TVJ	39	47
	BS8Q54TVJ	39	47
	BS10Q54TVJ	40	48
	BS12Q54TVJ	40	48
MULTI-PORT FLEX-SERIES	BSF4Q54TVJ	37	47
	BSF6Q54TVJ	40.5	50
	BSF8Q54TVJ	40.5	50

#### C. DIMENSIONS:

1. The branch selector units shall not exceed dimensions stated in the table below.

BRANCH SELECTOR TYPE	MODEL NUMBER	HEIGHT Inches (mm)	WIDTH Inches (mm)	DEPTH Inches (mm)
SINGLE PORT	BSQ36TVJ	8-1/8 (207)	15-1/4 (388)	12-13/16 (326)
	BSQ60TVJ	8-1/8 (207)	15-1/4 (388)	12-13/16 (326)
	BSQ96TVJ	8-1/8 (207)	15-1/4 (388)	12-13/16 (326)
MULTI-PORT STANDARD T- SERIES	BS4Q54TVJ	11-3/4 (298)	14-9/16 (370)	18-15/16 (480)
	BS6Q54TVJ	11-3/4 (298)	22-13/16 (580)	18-15/16 (480)
	BS8Q54TVJ	11-3/4 (298)	22-13/16 (580)	18-15/16 (480)
	BS10Q54TVJ	11-3/4 (298)	32-5/16 (820)	18-15/16 (480)
	BS12Q54TVJ	11-3/4 (298)	32-5/16 (820)	18-15/16 (480)
MULTI-PORT FLEX-SERIES	BSF4Q54TVJ	9 -1/2 (241)	13-3/4 (348)	23-3/4 (603)
	BSF6Q54TVJ	9 -1/2 (241)	23-3/8 (593)	23-3/4 (603)
	BSF8Q54TVJ	9 -1/2 (241)	23-3/8 (593)	23-3/4 (603)

**D. REFRIGERANT VALVES:**

- The unit shall be furnished with 3 electronic expansion valves per branch to control the direction of refrigerant flow. The use of solenoid valves for changeover and pressure equalization shall not be acceptable due to refrigerant noise.
- The refrigerant connections must be of the braze type.
- In multi-port units, each port shall have its own electronic expansion valves. If common expansion/solenoid valves are used, redundancy must be provided.
- Multiple indoor units may be connected to a branch selector box with the use of a REFNET™ joint provided they are within the capacity range of the branch selector.
- These branch selector boxes shall support up to the maximum capacity per port shown in the table below:

BRANCH SELECTOR TYPE	MODEL NUMBER	MAXIMUM CAPACITY PER PORT
SINGLE PORT	BSQ36TVJ	36,000 Btu/h
	BSQ60TVJ	60,000 Btu/h
	BSQ96TVJ	96,000 Btu/h
MULTI-PORT T-SERIES	BS4Q54TVJ	54,000 Btu/h
	BS6Q54TVJ	54,000 Btu/h
	BS8Q54TVJ	54,000 Btu/h
	BS10Q54TVJ	54,000 Btu/h
	BS12Q54TVJ	54,000 Btu/h
MULTI-PORT FLEX- SERIES	BSF4Q54TVJ	54,000 Btu/h
	BSF6Q54TVJ	54,000 Btu/h
	BSF8Q54TVJ	54,000 Btu/h

**E. CONDENSATE REMOVAL:**

- The unit shall be hermetically sealed to prevent condensation build up inside the unit, and not require use of a secondary condensate collection pan. A safety device or secondary drain pan, condensate pump, and condensate piping to a code approved receptacle shall be installed by the mechanical contractor to comply with the applicable mechanical code, if an alternate manufacturer is selected.

## 2.06 EQUIPMENT

- A. All Units: Factory assembled, wired, piped, and factory tested for function and safety.
  - 1. Refrigerant: R-410a
  - 2. Performance certification: AHRI 1230
  - 3. Safety certification: UL 1995 by UL or Intertek-ETL
  - 4. Provide outdoor/condensing units capable of serving indoor unit capacity up to 200% of t.
  - 5. Provide units capable of serving the zones indicated on the drawings.
  - 6. Thermal Performance: Provide heating and cooling capacity as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Electrical Characteristics:
  - 1. Power – Condensing Units (as applicable)
    - a. 460 Volts, 3-Phase, 60 Hz
  - 2. Branch Selector Units
    - a. 208/230 Volts, 1-Phase, 60 Hz
  - 3. Indoor Units
    - a. 208/230 Volts, 1-Phase, 60 Hz
- C. System Controls:
  - 1. Include self-diagnostic, auto-check functions to detect malfunctions and display the type of malfunction and location.
- D. Unit Controls:
  - 1. Provide controls as required to perform input functions necessary to operate the system.
  - 2. Provide controls as manufactured by the manufacturer of the units.
  - 3. Provide interfaces for remote control and building automation systems as specified.
- E. Wiring:
  - 1. Communication Wiring: 18 AWG, 2-conductor, non-shielded, stranded cable.
  - 2. Communication wiring shall not be polarity sensitive.
  - 3. Communication wiring shall be capable of daisy chain configuration.
- F. Refrigerant Piping:
  - 1. Heat pump systems shall consist of two-pipe refrigerant system including liquid and suction gas lines.
  - 2. Heat recovery systems shall consist of three-pipe refrigerant system including a high/low pressure gas line, liquid and suction lines. Two-pipe heat recovery systems utilizing a lower temperature mixed liquid/gas refrigerant line are not permitted due to reduced heating capabilities.

3. Refrigerant flow balancing shall be by means of Refnet refrigerant branches and headers designed to ensure proper refrigerant flow and refrigerant balancing between branches. T-style joints are prohibited.
4. All refrigerant lines shall be fully insulated between the condensing unit and indoor units.

## 2.07 INDOOR/EVAPORATOR UNITS

### A. General Requirements:

1. All indoor/evaporator units shall be factory assembled and tested DX-fan coil units, operable with refrigerant R-410a.
2. All units shall be completely factory assembled and tested, and shall be charged with dehydrated air prior to shipment from the factory.
3. All units shall be equipped with an electronic expansion valve controlled using a PID loop to automatically adjust the refrigerant flow rate through the unit.
4. All units shall be equipped with a programmed drying operation that dehumidifies while limiting changes in room temperature when used with Daikin remote controllers BRC1E73 and BRC2A71.
5. All units shall feature self-diagnostics, auto-restart functionality, 3-minute fused time delay, and a test run switch.
6. All refrigerant piping, both liquid and suction, shall be fully insulated from the outdoor unit.

### B. FXSQ\_TA – MSP Concealed Ducted Unit (Medium Static)

1. General: Daikin indoor unit FXSQ-TA shall be a built-in ceiling concealed fan coil unit. The unit shall be available in (11) capacities from 5,800 Btu/h to 54,000 Btu/h.
2. Performance: Each unit's performance is based on nominal operating conditions:

Model Number	Cooling (Btu/h) (Indoor 80°FDB / 67°FWB, Outdoor 95°FDB, 25 ft pipe length)	Heating (Btu/h) (Indoor 70°FDB, Outdoor 47°FDB / 43°FWB, 25 ft pipe length)
FXSQ05TAVJU	5,800	6,500
FXSQ07TAVJU	7,500	8,500
FXSQ09TAVJU	9,500	10,500
FXSQ12TAVJU	12,000	13,500
FXSQ15TAVJU	15,000	16,500
FXSQ18TAVJU	18,000	20,000
FXSQ24TAVJU	24,000	27,000
FXSQ30TAVJU	30,000	34,000
FXSQ36TAVJU	36,000	40,000
FXSQ48TAVJU	48,000	54,000
FXSQ54TAVJU	54,000	60,000

### 3. Unit Cabinet

- a. The unit cabinet shall be constructed of heavy gauge galvanized steel.

- b. The unit shall be internally insulated and shall be capable of installation in indoor environments up to 80% relative humidity without requiring additional field installed insulation.
- c. The unit shall ship from the factory in a rear-return configuration, and shall be field-convertible to a bottom-return configuration.
- d. The unit shall be equipped with a return air thermistor.

4. Fan Motor

- a. The fan shall be a direct-drive, brushless DC fan motor with (3) user-selectable fan speeds (H, M, L).
- b. The fan motor shall be capable of delivering nominal CFM for the follow ranges:

Model Number	Fan ESP (in. w.g.)
FXSQ05TAVJU	0.12 – 0.60
FXSQ07TAVJU	0.12 – 0.60
FXSQ09TAVJU	0.12 – 0.60
FXSQ12TAVJU	0.12 – 0.60
FXSQ15TAVJU	0.12 – 0.60
FXSQ18TAVJU	0.20 – 0.60
FXSQ24TAVJU	0.20 – 0.60
FXSQ30TAVJU	0.20 – 0.60
FXSQ36TAVJU	0.20 – 0.60
FXSQ48TAVJU	0.20 – 0.60
FXSQ54TAVJU	0.20 – 0.54

- c. The unit shall be equipped with internal controls to allow the fan motor to be manually adjusted, via field setting, to deliver nominal airflow CFM at a variety of external static pressures. Models FXSQ05TAVJU through FXSQ15TAVJU shall have (13) available fan curves. Models FXSQ18TAVJU through FXSQ54TAVJU shall have (11) available fan curves.
- d. The unit shall be equipped with internal controls to allow the fan to automatically select the operating fan curve to deliver nominal airflow CFM (within +/- 10%) when the connect ductwork has been designed with a total external static within the range of the FXSQ\_TAVJU. This setting shall be accessible as a setting to be used during startup and commissioning of the system.
- e. The fan motor shall be capable of Auto fan speed control when the unit is connected to the BRC1E73 Navigation Remote Control or the DCM601A71 Intelligent Touch Manager centralized control. The Auto fan speed control shall automatically adjust the unit's fan speed in response to the difference between the indoor unit's current set point and the current room temperature measurement. The Auto fan speed control shall utilize (5) fan speeds.
- f. The fan motor shall be thermally protected.
- g. The fan motor shall be internally isolated using rubber grommets to reduce transmission of vibrations to the unit.

5. Fan Blade

- a. The fan blade shall be constructed of lightweight polymer.
- b. The fan blade shall be statically and dynamically balanced to minimize vibration.

6. Coil

- a. Coils shall be of the direct expansion type, constructed from copper tubes expanded into aluminum fins to form a mechanical bond.
- b. The coil shall be of a waffle louver fin and high heat exchange, rifled bore tube design to ensure highly efficient performance.
- c. The coil shall be 2 or 3 row cross fin copper evaporator coil with 18 fpi design, completely factory tested.
- d. The refrigerant connections shall be flare connections.
- e. Factory mounted thermistors shall be installed on the liquid and gas lines.

7. Condensate Drainage

- a. The unit shall be equipped with a condensate drain pan under the coil.
- b. The condensate drain outlet shall be of PVC construction and VP25 (1" ID, 1-1/4" OD).
- c. The unit shall be equipped with a factory-integral condensate pump capable of 25-5/16" lift from the condensate drain outlet. The condensate pump shall be equipped with a float switch to automatically stop unit operation and provide a system error code in the event drain pan water level rises too high.

8. Electrical and Wiring

- a. Provide a separate power supply connection of 208/230V, 1 phase, 60 hertz. The allowable voltage range shall be 187 to 253 volts.
- b. Refer to the engineering data book for all other electrical data including MCA, MOCP, and FLA values.
- c. The transmission (control) wiring distance between the indoor unit and outdoor unit shall be a maximum of 3,280 feet (total 6,560 feet).
- d. The transmission (control) wiring between the indoor unit and the remote controller shall be a maximum distance of 1,640 feet.

9. Control

- a. The unit shall be controlled with a Daikin remote controller to perform input functions necessary to operate the system.
- b. The unit shall be compatible with interfacing with a building management system (BMS) via optional BACnet or LonWorks gateways.
- c. The unit shall be compatible with a Daikin Intelligent Touch Manager advanced multi-zone controller.

10. Accessories:

- a. BRC1E73 Navigation Remote Controller (wired)
- b. DCM601A71 Intelligent Touch Manager
- c. BACnet Gateway

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Rig and install in full accordance with manufacturer's requirements, project drawings, and contract documents. Refer to the manufacturer's installation manual for full requirements.

B. Location:

1. Locate indoor and outdoor units as indicated on drawings. Provide service clearance per manufacturer's installation manual. Adjust and level outdoor units on support structure.

C. Components / Piping:

Installing contractor shall provide and install all accessories and piping for a fully operational system. Refer to manufacturer's installation manual for full instructions.

Traps, filter driers, and sight glasses are NOT to be installed on the refrigerant piping or condensate lines.

Standard ACR fittings rated for use with R410A are to be used for all connections. Proprietary manufacturer-specific appurtenances are not allowed.

Refrigerant pipe for shall be made of phosphorus deoxidized copper, and has two types.

1. ACR "Annealed": Soft copper pipe, can be easily bent with human's hand.
2. ACR "Drawn Temper": Hard copper pipe (Straight pipe), being stronger than Type-O pipe of the same radical thickness.

The maximum operation pressure of R410A air conditioner is 4.30 MPa [623psi] . The refrigerant piping should ensure the safety under the maximum operation pressure. Refer to recommend piping specifications in Mitsubishi Electric's engineering manual. Pipes of radical thickness 0.7mm or less shall not be used.

Flare connection should follow dimensions provided in manufacturer's installation manuals.

D. Insulation:

1. Refrigerant lines, as well as any valves, shall be insulated end to end with 1" closed-cell pipe insulation for piping up to 1" in diameter, or  $\frac{3}{4}$ " for piping 1-1/8" and larger, with a thermal conductivity no greater than 0.27 BTU-in/hr sq.ft °F. If state or local codes require insulation other than that specified above, the greater insulation shall be used.

E. Electrical:

1. Installing contractor shall coordinate electrical requirements and connections for all power feeds with electrical contractor. Refer to Division 26 for additional information.

F. Third Party Controls:

1. Installing contractor shall coordinate all BAS/BMS control requirements and connections with controls contractor.

### 3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

- C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.04 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.05 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238127



## SECTION 26 01 00 – BASIC ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SCOPE

- A. This section supplements all sections of this division and shall apply to all phases of work hereinafter specified, shown on the drawings, or required to provide a complete installation of electrical systems for the Project. The work required under this division is not limited to the electrical specifications and drawings. Refer to all bid documents including Civil, Architectural, Structural, and Mechanical documents which may designate Work to be accomplished. The intent of the Specifications is to provide a complete and operable electrical system, which shall include all documents that are a part of the entire Project Contract.
  - 1. Work included: Furnish all labor, material, tools, equipment, facilities, transportation, skilled supervision necessary for, and incidental to, performing operations in connection with furnishing, delivery, and installation of the work in this division complete as shown or noted on the Drawings and specified herein.
- B. Related Work Specified Elsewhere:
  - 1. Refer to all sections in the general contract conditions, Contract Requirements and Division 1, General Requirements.
- C. Work Installed but Furnished by Others:
  - 1. The electrical work includes the installation or connection of certain materials and equipment furnished by others. Verify installation details. Foundations for apparatus and equipment will be furnished by others unless otherwise noted or detailed.

#### 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Guarantee See General Conditions:
  - 1. Except as may be specified under other Sections in the specification, guarantee equipment furnished under the specifications for a period of one year, except for equipment required to have a longer guarantee period, from date of final completion. Guarantee all work against defective workmanship, material, and improper installation. Upon notification of failure, correct deficiency immediately and without additional cost to the Owner.
  - 2. Standard warranty of manufacturer shall apply for replacement of parts after expiration of the above period. Manufacturer shall furnish replacement parts to the Owner or his service agency as approved. Furnish to the Owner, through the Architect, printed manufacturer's warranties complete with material included and expiration dates, upon completion of project. Conform to Division 01.

- B. Equipment Safety: All electrical materials and equipment shall be new and shall be listed by Underwriter's Laboratories and bear their label, or listed and certified by a nationally recognized testing authority where UL does not have an approval. Custom made equipment must have complete test data submitted by the manufacturer attesting to its safety.
- C. Codes and Regulations:
  - 1. Design, manufacturer, testing and method of installation of all apparatus and materials furnished under the requirements of these specifications shall conform to the latest publications or standard rules of the following:
    - a. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers - IEEE
    - b. National Electrical Manufacturers' Association - NEMA
    - c. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. - UL
    - d. National Fire Protection Association - NFPA
    - e. American Society for Testing and Materials - ASTM
    - f. American National Standards Institute - ANSI
    - g. California Electrical Code – CEC, Title 24, Part 3
    - h. California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Subchapter 5
    - i. California Building Code-CBC, Title 24 Parts 1 &2
    - j. State & Municipal Codes in Force in the Specific Project Area
    - k. Occupational Safety & Health Administration – OSHA
    - l. California State Fire Marshal
    - m. California Fire Code- CFC, Title 24 Part 9
    - n. National Electrical Testing Association - NETA
  - 2. The term "Code", when used within the specifications, shall refer to the Publications, Standards, ordinances and codes, listed above. In the case where the codes have different levels of requirements the most stringent rules shall apply.
- D. Requirements of Regulatory Agencies:
  - 1. Codes, Permits, and Fees: Where the Contract Documents exceed minimum requirements, the Contract Documents take precedence. Where code conflicts occur, the most stringent shall apply. The most stringent condition shall be as interpreted by the Engineer.
    - a. Comply with all requirements for permits, licenses, fees and Code. Permits, licenses, fees, inspections and arrangements required for the Contractor at his expense shall obtain the Work, unless otherwise specified.
    - b. Comply with the requirements of the applicable utility companies serving the Project. Make all arrangements with the utility companies for proper coordination of the Work.
- E. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. See Division 01 for additional requirements.
  - 2. Time Schedules for Submission and Ordering: The Contractor shall prepare, review and coordinate his schedule of submissions carefully, determining the necessary lead time for preparing, submitting, checking, ordering and delivery of materials and equipment for timely arrival. The Contractor shall be responsible for conformance with the overall construction schedule.

3. Submittals will be checked for general compliance with specifications only. The Contractor shall be responsible for deviations from the drawings or specifications and for errors or omissions of any sort in submittals.
  4. Submit a complete list of materials and equipment proposed for the job, including manufacturers names and catalog numbers.
  5. Shop drawings shall be submitted in completed groups of materials (i.e., lighting fixtures or switchgear). The Contractor shall add and sign the following paragraph on equipment and materials submitted for review. "It is hereby certified that the (equipment) (material) shown and marked in this submittal is that proposed to be incorporated into the project; is in compliance with the Contract Drawings and specifications and can be installed in the allocated spaces". Failure to add the above written statement for compliance will result in return of submittals without review.
    - a. Bind catalog cuts, plate numbers, descriptive bulletins and drawings, 11" x 17" (275 mm x 435 mm) or smaller, in sets with covers neatly showing titles.
    - b. The Contractor shall verify dimensions of equipment and be satisfied as to Code compliance for fit prior to submitting shop drawings for approval.
    - c. Where current limiting devices are specified, submit technical data to substantiate adequate protection of equipment cascaded downstream. Submittals shall not be reviewed unless supporting calculations and data are submitted therewith.
    - d. Include complete catalog information such as construction, ratings, insulation systems, as applicable.
    - e. For any material specified to meet UL or trade standards, furnish the manufacturers or vendor's certification that the material furnished for the work does in fact equal or exceed such specifications.
    - f. Reference listings to the specifications' Sections and Article to which each is applicable.
    - g. Equipment Floor Plans: After approval of material is secured prepare a floor plan of each electrical and communication equipment space, room or yard, drawn to scale at 1/2 inch equals 1 foot and submit for approval in the same manner as for shop drawings. The layout drawings shall be exact scale.
  6. Contractor shall prepare coordinated drawings when required by Division 01 or where noted otherwise.
- F. Interpretations: The Contractor through the Architect must make Requests for interpretations of drawings and specifications. Any such requests made by equipment manufacturers or suppliers will be referred to the Contractor.
- G. Standard of Quality
1. The contract Drawings and Specifications establish the "MINIMUM STANDARD OF QUALITY" each product and/or system must meet to be considered acceptable. Products of other manufactures will be considered if the product and/or system meet or exceed the "MINIMUM STANDARD OF QUALITY" established by this Contract Document.
- H. Submit comprehensive material list, shop drawings and complete technical data for the following equipment and materials:
1. General Requirements:

- a. Panelboards.
  - b. Switchboards.
  - c. Conduits
  - d. Conductors, include all selected insulation types.
  - e. Fuses
  - f. Disconnect switches and Starters.
  - g. Pullboxes, manholes and handholes.
  - h. Control devices, standard and special receptacles, switches, outlets and finish device plates.
  - i. Cabinets for signal and telephone system, special terminals and cabinets. Include all cabinet dimensions.
  - j. Fire alarm system.
  - k. Transformers
  - l. Data/telephone cables, devices and terminations (Telecommunications).
  - m. Access Control System.
  - n. Intrusion Detection System.
- I. Utility Service:
  1. Contractor shall verify the locations shown on the drawings and shall include extensions of lines to building service from locations which are acceptable to the Owner.
  2. Verify electrical, civil, architectural and structural, dimensional and other requirements with the Owner.
  3. Should any major modifications to the work indicated be necessary to comply with the Owner requirements, notify the Architect.
- J. Record Drawings: Refer to Division 01, Contract Closeout.
- K. Work Responsibilities:
  1. The drawings indicate diagrammatically the desired locations or arrangement of conduit runs, outlets, junction boxes and equipment and are to be followed. Execute the work so as to secure the best possible installation in the available space and to overcome local difficulties due to space limitations. The Contractor is responsible for the correct placing of his work. Where conflicts occur in plans and/or specifications, the most stringent application shall apply and shall be part of the base bid.
  2. Locations shown on architectural plan or on wall elevations shall take precedence over electrical plan locations, but where a major conflict is evident, notify the Architect.
  3. In the event minor changes in the indicated locations or arrangement are necessary due to developed conditions in the building construction or rearrangement of furnishings or equipment or due to interference with other trades, such changes shall be made without extra cost.
  4. Verify dimensions and the correct location of Owner-Furnished equipment before proceeding with the roughing-in of connections.
  5. All scaled and figured dimensions are approximate of typical equipment of the class indicated. Before proceeding with work carefully check and verify dimensions and sizes with the drawings to see that the furnished equipment will fit into the spaces provided without violation of applicable Codes.
  6. Should any changes to the work indicated on the drawings or described in the specifications be necessary in order to comply with the above requirements, notify the Architect.

7. Contractor shall be responsible for coordination of coordinated drawings when required by the Architect.
  8. Replace or repair, without additional compensation any work which does not comply with or which is installed in violation of any of these requirements.
- L. Installation General: For special requirements, refer to specific equipment under these requirements.
1. Unless otherwise specified elsewhere in the specifications, do all excavating necessary for the proper installation of the electrical work.
  2. Locations of Openings: Locate chases, shafts and openings required for the installation of the electrical work during framing of the structure. Do any additional cutting and patching required. Cutting or drilling in any structural member is prohibited without approval of the Architect. Furnish all access panels to make all boxes, connections and devices accessible as required by CEC.
  3. Location of Sleeves: Where conduits pass through concrete walls, suspended slabs or metal deck floors, install sleeves of adequate size to permit installation of conduit. Sleeves shall be installed prior to pouring of concrete and shall have ends flush with the wall or extend 2 inches above floor surfaces. Verify locations.
  4. Type of Sleeves: Refer to Section 260500.
  5. Wherever conduit extends through roof, install flashings in accordance with drawings and details.
  6. Contractor shall be responsible for cutting and patching which may be required for the proper installation of the electrical work.
  7. Protect work, materials and equipment cause whatever and provide adequate and proper storage facilities during the progress of the work. Storage outdoors shall be weather protected and shall include space heaters to prevent condensation. Provide for the safety and good condition of all work until final acceptance of the work. Replace all damaged or defective work, materials and equipment before requesting final acceptance.
  8. Conduit and Equipment to be Installed: Clean thoroughly to remove plaster, spattered paint, cement and dirt on both exterior and interior. All underground conduits shall be mandrelled prior to pulling wire.
  9. Conduit and Equipment to be Painted: Clean conduit exposed to view in completed structure by removing plaster and dirt. Remove grease, oil and similar material from conduit and equipment by wiping with clean rags and suitable solvents in preparation for paint.
  10. Items with Factory Finish: Remove cement, plaster, grease and oil, and leave surfaces, including cracks and corners, clean and polished. Touch up scratched or bare spots to match finish.
  11. Site Cleaning: Remove from site all packing cartons, scrap materials and other rubbish on a weekly basis. Vacuum out all cabinets, switchgear and panels and junction boxes prior to pulling any conductors.
  12. Electrical equipment and materials exposed to public and in finished areas shall be finish-painted after installation in accordance with the Painting Section. All exposed screw-type fasteners, exterior, or interior in restrooms, shall be vandal-resistant spanner type; include tool.
- M. Excavation, Cutting and Patching:
1. Excavating, trenching and backfilling required for the work of this Division in accordance with the applicable requirements of Division 31. Excavating and backfilling connected with

electrical work, repaving cuts and providing and maintaining protective measures for the electrical work excavation required by the governing authorities having jurisdiction shall be performed as a part of the work of this Division.

2. Verify openings indicated on the drawings. Provide all cutting, patching and reinforcement of the construction of the building as required to install electrical work.

N. Tests

1. Equipment and systems for which the National Electrical Testing Association (NETA) has an approved or recommended procedure, shall be tested in accordance with that procedure. Test values shall equal values recommended by NETA. Copies of test reports shall be submitted as required under shop drawing submittals.
2. Resistance to ground tests shall be accomplished by a qualified independent testing firm to measure resistance to ground at grounding electrodes. Make tests before slabs or affected areas are poured in order that corrective measures, if required, may be taken. Submit a report showing the results of these measurements. If the resistances exceed values specified elsewhere or NETA test procedure recommendations, perform corrective measures required to reduce resistance to acceptable values.
3. Prior to energizing any motor, measure the service voltage for phase balance and report if unbalance exceeds 1% from mean.
4. Measure the three-phase voltage at no load and at maximum load conditions and submit to the engineer a report showing the results of these measurements.
5. Upon completion of the work and adjustment of all equipment, conduct an operating test. Conduct the test in the presence of an authorized representative of the Architect. Demonstrate system and equipment to operate in accordance with requirements of the Contract Documents and to be free from electrical and mechanical defects. Provide systems free from short circuits and grounds and show an insulation resistance between phase conductors and ground not less than the requirements of the governing electric code. Test circuits for proper neutral connection.
6. Complete tests prior to final inspection of project, including corrective work based on the results of the tests.
7. Perform special tests on systems and equipment as specified herein using personnel qualified to perform such tests.

- O. Protection: Protect finish parts of the materials and equipment against damage during the progress of the work and until final completion and acceptance. Cover materials and equipment in storage and during construction in such a manner that no finished surfaces will be damaged or marred. Keep moving parts clean, dry and lubricated.

P. Cleaning Up:

1. Upon completion of the work and at various time during the progress of the work, remove from the building all surplus materials, rubbish and debris resulting from the work of this Division.
2. Thoroughly clean switchgear including busses, apparatus, exposed conduit, metal work including the exterior and interior, and accessories for the work of this Division, of cement, plaster and other deleterious materials; remove grease and oil spots with cleaning solvent; carefully wipe surfaces and scrape cracks and corners clean.
3. Thoroughly polish chromium or plated work. Remove dirt and stains from lighting fixtures.
4. Leave the entire installation in a clean condition.

- Q. Completion:
1. The work will not be reviewed for final acceptance until operating and maintenance data, manufacturer's literature, panel directories and nameplates specified herein have been approved and properly posted or installed and final cleaning of equipment and premises has been completed.
  2. When the installation is complete and adjustments have been made, operate the system for a period of one week, during which time demonstrate that systems are completed and operating in conformance with the specifications.
- R. Operating and Maintenance Data: Submit complete and at one time, prior to acceptance of the installation, 4 copies of manufacturer's instructions for operation and maintenance of electrical equipment, including replacement parts lists. As specified in Division 01
- S. Inspection and Acceptance Procedures: The Architect will submit observation reports periodically during the construction phase detailing Contract deficiencies. The Contractor is responsible for making corrections immediately. Notice of Completion of the project will not be made until all items have been corrected.
- T. Final Completion of Electrical Systems:
1. Prior to Final Completion of operating electrical systems, the Contractor shall:
    - a. Provide materials of the type and quality specified and as necessary for proper operation, tested and ready for use.
    - b. Deliver to the Architect, the Record Documents per 1.3 of this section.
    - c. Furnish the required Operating and Maintenance Data/Manuals.
    - d. Clean up of the project pertaining to this Division of the work.
    - e. After installation has been completed and adjustments made, operate the system for a period of one week, during which time, demonstrate to the Architect that systems are complete and operating in conformance with Contract Documents.
    - f. Conduct tests required and as specified in this Division and submit test reports and corrective actions taken.
    - g. Submission of warranties and guarantees.
  2. Final Completion of Work Shall be Contingent On:
    - a. Contractor replacing defective materials and workmanship.
    - b. Upon completion of work and adjustments made, Contractor shall conduct an operating test for each system for approval at such time as Architect directs. Conduct test in presence of authorized representative of Architect and demonstrate that systems and equipment do operate in accordance with requirements of the Contract Documents and are free from electrical and mechanical defects.
    - c. Contractor shall provide the necessary training programs and instructions to the Owner's representative. Number of hours shall be a minimum of four (4) hours for each system or days as required under separate Sections of these Specifications. Complete operation and maintenance manuals shall be provided at least two (2) weeks prior to training.

- d. Submit copies of manufacturer's instructions and maintenance of electrical equipment including replacement parts lists. Each set shall include one set of shop drawings of equipment installed.
- U. Submittals for Change Orders: When changes are made during the construction phase, deletions and additions shall be presented in a manner that will indicate the cost of each item of material and corresponding labor. Markup shall be then added in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions as modified by the Supplementary Conditions.
- V. The Contractor at a time convenient to the Owner shall provide instruction to the Owner's operating personnel in the proper operation and maintenance of all equipment and systems. The instructors shall have received factory training and shall be thoroughly familiar with the equipment installed. The operating personnel shall receive the number of days instruction as indicated in other sections.

### 1.3 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Record Drawings: CAD: Use a computer aided drafting (CAD) system in the preparation of record drawings for this Project. Acceptable CAD systems shall be capable of producing files in AutoCAD Version 2019 compatible DWG or DXF format. Owner's consultant will furnish CAD backgrounds for use by the Contractor after construction is 85% complete except where prohibited by Contract.
- B. At all times when the work is in progress, maintain at the workplace, fabrication shop or Project Site as applies, a complete separate, clean, undamaged set of the latest stamped, actioned submittals. As work progresses, maintain records of "as installed" conditions on this set in suitable ink or chemical fluid. Update the set daily. After successful completion of Project Site testing specified herein, and after completion of Punch List corrections, copy all records of "as installed" conditions on to originals.
- C. Quantity:
  - 1. Review sets: As for Shop and Field Drawings.
  - 2. Record set: Three (3) blackline.
- D. Format: Record Drawings:
  - 1. Disk copy of Record Drawings - 1 copy of each drawing file in format noted above, CD-ROM.
- E. Content: All drawings required under "Field and Shop Drawings". Show "as installed" condition. Where room designations according to Project permanent signage differ from construction designations in the Contract Documents, show both designations.
- F. Warranty Certificates: Comply with Division 01.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not Used



El Monte High School HVAC Project  
El Monte Union High School District  
El Monte, California

DLR Group  
Project No. 75-22201-01  
DSA Submittal

PART 3 - EXECUTION

Not Used

END OF SECTION 26 01 00

## SECTION 26 01 11 - CONDUIT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Rigid metal conduit and fittings.
- B. Intermediate metal conduit and fittings.
- C. Electrical metallic tubing and fittings.
- D. Flexible metal conduit and fittings.
- E. Non-metallic conduit and fittings.
- F. Intermediate metal conduit and fittings.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI C80.1 - Rigid Steel Conduit, Zinc Coated.
- B. ANSI C80.3 - Electrical Metallic Tubing, Zinc Coated.
- C. ANSI/NEMA FB 1 - Fittings and Supports for Conduit and Cable Assemblies.
- D. CEC – California Electrical Code.
- E. NEMA RN 1 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Externally-Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit and Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- F. NEMA TC 3 - PVC Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing.
- G. FS-WW-C-581 - Specification for Galvanized Rigid Conduit.
- H. FS-WW-C-566 - Specification for Flexible Metal Conduit.
- I. FS-WC-1094A - Electrical Non-Metallic Conduit.
- J. NEMA-TC-2 - Electrical Plastic Tubing and Conduit.

### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle Products to site under provisions of Section 26 01 00.
- B. Protect conduit from corrosion and entrance of debris by storing above grade. Provide appropriate covering.
- C. Protect PVC conduit from sunlight.

### 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on Drawings.
- B. Verify routing and termination locations of conduit prior to rough-in.
- C. Conduit routing is shown on Drawings in approximate locations unless dimensioned. Route as required to complete wiring system.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONDUIT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Size: 3/4 inch for above ground and 1 inch minimum for underground installations unless otherwise specified.
- B. Conduit Installation Schedule:
  - 1. Underground conduit more than five feet from foundation wall shall be concrete encased non-metallic PVC Schedule 40 heavy wall rigid conduit.
  - 2. Underground conduit under four-inch minimum concrete floor slab shall be PVC Schedule 40 heavy wall rigid conduit.
  - 3. All telecommunication conduit in conduit shall use rigid type, no flexible conduit is permitted.
  - 4. Conduit installed in concrete or masonry, exposed outdoor locations, damp locations, hazardous locations, or where subject to mechanical injury shall be galvanized rigid steel or intermediate metal conduit.
  - 5. Conduit installed in concealed dry interior locations such as walls or ceiling of the building shall be electrical metallic tubing or flexible type.
  - 6. Conduit installed in exposed dry interior locations above eight feet shall be electrical metallic tubing.
  - 7. Conduit installed to supply power to all mechanical equipment and rotating electric equipment shall be waterproof flexible steel conduit. Conduit shall be 12" minimum in length for 2" conduit and smaller; 18" minimum length for conduit larger than 2". Conduit shall be 36" maximum in length.
  - 8. Flexible steel conduit shall be used for power receptacle and lighting fixture connections only.

2.2 METAL CONDUIT

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized rigid steel; ANSI C80.1: Standard weight that is not dipped, galvanized, electrogalvanized or sherardized, both inside and out, with threaded connections and couplings is not permitted.

2.3 PVC COATED METAL CONDUIT

- A. Description: NEMA RN 1; rigid steel conduit with external PVC coating, 20 mil thick, and internal galvanized surface.
- B. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: ANSI/NEMA FB 1; threaded type, material to match conduit.

2.4 FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT

- A. Description: Conduit - Manufactured from single strap standard weight steel, galvanized on all four sides prior to conduit fabrication. Lightweight flexible steel conduit and aluminum flexible conduit are not acceptable. Include ground conductor in all runs.
- B. Fittings: ANSI/NEMA FB 1; Die-cast fittings of the type that screw into the inside of the conduit with threaded edges at 90 degrees to the fitting body.

2.5 LIQUIDTIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT

- A. Description: Interlocked steel construction with moisture and oil-proof PVC jacket.
- B. Fittings: ANSI/NEMA FB 1: liquid tight; integral insulated throat; provisions for ground continuity.

2.6 ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)

- A. Description: ANSI C80.3; galvanized tubing;
- B. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: ANSI/NEMA FB 1; steel raintight, compression, steel locking ring type with integral insulated throat.

2.7 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT

- A. Description: NEMA TC 2; Federal Spec. WC-1094A; Schedule 40 PVC.
- B. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: NEMA TC 3 to match conduit.

## 2.8 INNERDUCT, MULTI-CHAMBER

- A. Drawing and spec reference: Fiberoptic, Innerduct.
- B. Construction:
  - 1. Multi-Chamber or Single-Chamber 1" Innerduct shall be installed within Conduit per manufacturer's recommendation, and as described elsewhere herein.
  - 2. Shall provide independent interior chambers each with a capacity equal to a trade size conduit referenced above.
- C. Approvals:
  - 1. ASTM D2239 (1985) Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SIDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter.
- D. Acceptable, subject to the above:
  - 1. Aeroquip FODuct System (800) 445-2192: (Design Basis) Provide in combinations to meet scheduled requirement.
    - a. 3ID1 - Provide on e(1) FoDuct PE5004 3 chamber innerduct in one-half of a 4" diameter conduit.
    - b. 2ID1.25 - Provide one (1) FODUCT PE5007 2 chamber innerduct in one-half of a 4" diameter conduit.
  - 2. North Supply Multi-Guard Multi-Cell Conduit.
  - 3. Approved equal by Tamaqua.
- E. Acceptable - Independent InnerDuct runs in overall rigid conduit - Multiple runs of single chamber inner duct may be provided in lieu of single, multiple chamber innerduct provided above. Contractor bears burden of selected innerduct quantity to provide an exact match of cross-sectional area of each chamber of multi-chamber assembly and to resize overall conduit to accommodate this use.
  - 1. Allied.
  - 2. Approved equal.

## 2.9 CONDUIT SUPPORTS

- A. Conduit clamps, straps, and supports: Steel or malleable iron, two-hole straps.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUIT SIZING, ARRANGEMENT AND SUPPORT

- A. The size of the conduits for the various circuits shall be as indicated on the drawings and as required by Code for the size and number of conductors to be pulled therein. Where fill is not

shown on drawings, size conduit for conductor type installed or for Type THW conductors, whichever is larger; 3/4-inch minimum size. Open ends shall be capped with approved manufactured conduit seals as soon as installed and kept capped until ready to pull in conductors. Where running thread connections are necessary, only approved manufactured conduit unions shall be used. Do not embed aluminum conduit in concrete or masonry construction, nor electrical metallic tubing in slabs on grade. Do not install any conduit in any concrete slab.

- B. Arrange conduit to maintain headroom and present a neat appearance.
- C. Route exposed conduit and conduit above accessible ceilings parallel and perpendicular to walls and adjacent piping.
- D. Maintain minimum 6-inch clearance between conduit and piping. Maintain 12-inch clearance between conduit and heat sources such as flues, steam pipes, and heating appliances.
- E. Arrange conduit supports to prevent distortion of alignment by wire pulling operations. Fasten conduit using galvanized straps, lay-in adjustable hangers, clevis hangers, or bolted split stamped galvanized hangers. Maintain 12" distance minimum between main conduit runners and ceiling system grid.
- F. Group conduit in parallel runs where practical and use conduit rack constructed of steel channel with conduit straps or clamps. Provide space for 25 percent additional conduit.
- G. Do not fasten conduit with wire or perforated pipe straps. Remove all wire used for temporary conduit support during construction, before conductors are pulled.
- H. Support conduits 1 inch and larger with pipe clamps either suspended from structural slabs with a rod with adjustable pipe ring, or mounted on wall from channel supports. Attach to concrete by expansion anchors. Powder actuated fastening devices are not permitted. Where two or more conduits 1-1/2 inch and larger or where 3 or more 3/4 inch conduits are suspended from ceiling, use trapeze type hanger from rods.
- I. Firmly support and fasten conduit in place. Support rigid metal conduit and electrical cabinet and fitting. Support flexible metal conduit at maximum intervals of 4 feet and within 12 inch of every outlet box and fitting except for lengths of not over 2 feet at connections where flexibility is required.
- J. Secure exposed conduit runs of concrete, plaster or other construction in place with cast conduit clamps affixed with expansion anchors or galvanized machine or lag screws.
- K. Do not strap or fasten rigid or electrical metallic tubing to mechanical equipment or to equipment subject to vibration or mounted on shock absorbing bases, including sprinkler or pneumatic pipe or tubing.
- L. Provide independent support for conduit rising from floor for motor connection if over 18 inches above floor. Do not attach to motors, ductwork or mechanical equipment.
- M. Conduits 1 inch and smaller which are installed above suspended ceilings shall not be secured to ceiling support wires. Support electrical, communication conduits and fixtures independent of ceiling suspension systems.

- N. Exposed conduits to view shall be installed parallel to and perpendicular to the building structure.
- O. Tag empty conduits at each accessible end with a permanent tag identifying the purpose of the conduit and the location of the other end. In wet, corrosive outdoor or underground locations, use brass, bronze, or copper 16 gage tags or lead tags secured to conduit ends with #16 or larger galvanized wire. Inscribe on the tags with steel punch dies clear and complete identifying information.
- P. Bends:
  - 1. Raceways for Sound System, Telephone System, LAN, and Video System cables shall be designed for the installation of Fiber Optic cable.
  - 2. All bends or elbows shall have a minimum radius as follows:

Conduit Size (inches)	Min. Radius (inches)
3/4	12
1	12
1-1/4	18
1-1/2	
2	24
2-1/2	24
Conduit Size (inches)	Min. Radius (inches)
3	36
3-1/2	36
4	48
5	48
6	48

- 3.2 Use factory ells at conduit bends 1-1/4" and larger. Alternative method: Use of precision conduit bending machine equivalent to Greenlee 'One Shot' or 'Smart Bender'.
  - A. Boxes where the cable changes direction shall be large enough to allow cables in the box to have a 12" minimum radius.
  - B. Make bends and offsets so the inside diameter is not effectively reduced. Make bends in parallel or banked runs from the same center line so that the bends are parallel.
- 3.3 CONDUIT INSTALLATION
  - A. Cut conduit square using a saw or pipe cutter; de-burr cut ends.
  - B. Bring conduit to the shoulder of fittings and couplings and fasten securely.
  - C. Use conduit hubs or sealing locknuts for fastening conduit to cast boxes, and for fastening conduit to sheet metal boxes in damp or wet locations.

- D. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends between boxes. Keep bends and offsets in conduit runs to an absolute minimum. For the serving utilities, make large radius bends to meet their requirements. Replace deformed, flattened or kinked conduit.
- E. Use conduit bodies to make sharp changes in direction, as around beams.
- F. Use hydraulic one-shot conduit bender or factory elbows for bends in conduit larger than 2 inch size.
- G. Avoid moisture traps where possible; where unavoidable, provide junction box with drain fitting at conduit low point.
- H. Use suitable conduit caps to protect installed conduit against entrance of dirt and moisture.
- I. Provide No. 12 AWG insulated conductor or suitable pull string or rope in empty conduit, except sleeves and nipples.
- J. Install expansion-deflection joints where conduit crosses building expansion or seismic joints and between building and walkway covers.
- K. Where conduit penetrates fire-rated walls and floors, provide mechanical firestop fittings with UL listed fire rating equal to wall or floor rating.
- L. Route conduit through roof openings for piping and ductwork where possible; otherwise, route through roof jack with pitch pocket.
- M. Do not install conduit in slabs above grade.
- N. PVC conduit shall not be used in any locations above grade.
- O. From each panel or cabinet which is flush mounted in wall, stub from top of the panel a minimum of 5-3/4 inch conduits to the nearest accessible ceiling space or other accessible location and cap for future use unless noted otherwise on the drawings.
- P. Flexible steel conduit is permitted in concealed dry interior locations at power and lighting fixture connections only.
- Q. Seal conduit from exterior outlets at first interior junction to prevent moisture from entering the building through the conduit.
- R. Use insulating fittings on conduits where entering pullboxes, junction boxes, outlet boxes, cabinets and similar enclosures, and for signal and telephone conduits terminated in cabinets or backboards.
- S. Conduit risers and ell's through concrete shall be PVC wrapped Rigid Galvanized Steel minimum.
- T. Conduit installed in corrosive atmospheres (pool mechanical, tank or chlorine rooms, etc.) shall be IMC conduit minimum and shall comply with CEC 358.10(B).



### 3.4 UNDERGROUND DUCTBANK INSTALLATION

- A. Install top of duct bank minimum 24 inches below finished grade. Adjust depth to avoid interference with gravity flow systems of any kind. Maintain minimum 12 inch clearance between duct bank and any gravity flow system.
- B. Duct lines shall have a continuous slope downward toward manholes and away from buildings with a pitch of not less than 4 inches in 100 feet. Changes in direction of runs exceeding a total of 10 degrees, either vertical or horizontal, shall be accomplished by long sweep bends having a minimum radius of curvature of 25 feet, except that manufactured bends may be used at ends of short runs of 100 feet or less, and then only at or close to the end of run.
- C. Terminate conduit in end bell at manhole and pullbox entries.
- D. Use suitable separators and chairs installed not greater than 4 feet on centers. Band conduit together with suitable banding devices. Securely anchor conduit to prevent movement during concrete or slurry placement.
- E. Provide minimum 3 inch concrete cover at bottom, top, and sides of duct bank. Refer to Trenching section for additional information.
- F. Provide two No. 4 steel reinforcing bars in top of bank under paved areas.
- G. Encase non-metallic primary and secondary feeders, telephone, fire alarm communications and data conduit installed underground 2 inches or larger in a concrete or 2 sack slurry duct bank unless noted otherwise in the Contract Documents. Space the external surfaces of conduit within a bank a minimum of 3 inches apart except that sound, telephone, data and intercommunication circuits contained within non-metallic conduit shall have a minimum separation of 12 inches from any light or power circuits that parallel them within a bank. Use appropriate manufactured plastic spacers to insure the minimum required concrete or 2-sack slurry coverage. All concrete or slurry duct power banks shall contain a yellow warning strip 12" above ductbank. Refer to Division 02.
- H. Numbers and sizes of ducts shall be as indicated. Depending on the contour of the finished grade, the high-point may be at a terminal, a manhole, a handhole, or between manholes or handholes. Manufactured steel 90-degree duct bends shall be used only for pole or equipment risers, unless specifically indicated as acceptable. The minimum manufactured bend radius shall be 18 inches for ducts of less than 3-inch diameter, and 36 inches for ducts 3 inches in diameter 48 inches for ducts or greater in diameter unless noted otherwise in the Contract Documents. Long sweep bends having a minimum radius of 25 feet shall be used for a change of direction of more than 5 degrees, horizontally or vertically. Both curved and straight sections shall be used to form long sweep bends as required, but the maximum curve used shall be 30 degrees and manufactured bends shall be used. Ducts shall be provided with end bells whenever duct lines terminate in manholes, pullboxes or handholes. Duct line markers shall be provided at the ends of long duct line stubouts or for other ducts whose locations are indeterminate because of duct curvature or terminations at completely below-grade structures. In lieu of markers, a 5-mil brightly colored plastic tape not less than 3 inches in width and suitably inscribed at not more than 10 feet on centers with a continuous metallic backing and a corrosion resistant 1-mil metallic foil core to permit easy location of the duct line, shall be placed approximately 12 inches below finished grade levels of such lines.

- I. Ducts shall be kept clean of concrete or slurry, dirt or foreign substances during construction. Field cuts requiring tapers shall be made with proper tools and match factory tapers. After a duct line is completed, a standard flexible mandrel shall be used for cleaning followed by a brush with stiff bristles. Mandrels shall be at least 12 inches long and have diameters 1/4 inch less than the inside diameter of the duct being cleaned. Pneumatic rodding may be used to draw in lead wires. A coupling recommended by the duct manufacturer shall be used whenever an existing duct is connected to a duct of different material or shape. Ducts shall be stored to avoid warping and deterioration with ends sufficiently plugged to prevent entry of any water or solid substances. Ducts shall be thoroughly cleaned before being laid. Plastic ducts shall be stored on a flat surface and protected from the direct rays of the sun.

END OF SECTION 26 01 11

## SECTION 26 01 30 - BOXES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Wall and ceiling outlet boxes.
- B. Pull and junction boxes.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/NEMA FB 1 - Fittings and Supports for Conduit and Cable Assemblies.
- B. ANSI/NEMA OS 1 - Sheet-Steel Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers and Box Supports.
- C. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum).
- D. C.E.C.- California Electrical Code.

#### 1.3 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit under provisions of Division 01.
- B. Accurately record actual locations and mounting heights of outlet, pull and junction boxes.

#### 1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of C.E.C.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify field measurements are as shown on drawings.
- B. Electrical boxes are shown on drawings in approximate locations unless dimensioned. Install at location required for box to serve intended purpose.
- C. Exact location of all outlet boxes shall be as indicated on architectural elevations. Outlets not shown shall be coordinated with the Architect prior to rough-in. Any outlets not coordinated, which

are mounted in locations not accepted by the Architect, shall be relocated at no additional cost to the Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OUTLET BOXES

- A. Sheet Metal Outlet Boxes: ANSI/NEMA OS 1; galvanized steel, 4" x 4" x 1-1/2" minimum size (unless noted otherwise).
  - 1. Luminaire and Equipment Supporting Boxes: Rated for weight of equipment supported; include 1/2-inch male fixture studs where required.
  - 2. Extra deep 5S outlet boxes (4-11/16" x 4-11/16" x 2-1/2") shall be used at data and A/V outlets. Where 5S outlet boxes require installation of 1-1/2" conduits, the outlet box shall be increased to 3-1/4" deep equal to RACO #260.
- B. Cast Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FD, cast ferrous alloy. Provide gasketed cover by box manufacturer. Provide threaded hubs.

### 2.2 PULL AND JUNCTION BOXES

- A. Sheet Metal Boxes: NEMA OS 1; galvanized steel.
- B. Surface-Mounted Cast Metal Box: NEMA 250; Type 4, flat-flanged, surface-mounted junction box.
  - 1. Material: Galvanized cast iron.
  - 2. Cover: Furnish with ground flange, neoprene gasket, and stainless-steel cover screws.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install electrical boxes as shown on Drawings, and as required for splices, taps, wire pulling, equipment connections, and compliance with regulatory requirements.
- B. Install electrical box to maintain headroom and to present a neat appearance.
- C. Install pull boxes and junction boxes above accessible ceilings and in unfinished areas only.
- D. Inaccessible Ceiling Areas: Install outlet and junction boxes no more than 6 inches from ceiling access panel or from removable recessed luminaire.
- E. Install boxes to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, as allowed by NFPA.

- F. Align adjacent wall-mounted outlet boxes for switches, thermostats and similar devices with each other.
- G. Use flush mounting outlet boxes in finished area.
- H. Do not install flush mounting boxes back-to-back in walls; provide minimum 6-inch separation. Provide minimum 24 inches separation in acoustic rated walls and fire-rated walls.
- I. Secure flush mounting box to interior wall and partition studs. Accurately position to allow for surface finish thickness. Outlet boxes on metal studs shall be attached to metal hangers, tack welded or bolted to studs; on wood studs' attachment shall be with wood screws, nails are not acceptable.
- J. Use stamped steel bridges to fasten flush mounting outlet box between studs.
- K. Install flush mounting box without damaging wall insulation or reducing its effectiveness.
- L. Use adjustable steel channel fasteners for hung ceiling outlet box.
- M. Do not fasten boxes to ceiling support wires.
- N. Support boxes independently of conduit, except cast box that is connected to two rigid metal conduits both supported within 12 inches of box.
- O. Use gang box where more than one device is mounted together. Do not use sectional box.
- P. Use gang box with plaster ring for single device outlets.
- Q. Use cast outlet box in exterior locations exposed to the weather and wet locations.
- R. Large Pull Boxes: Boxes larger than 100 cubic inches in volume or 12 inches in any dimension.
  - 1. Interior Dry Locations: Use hinged enclosure under provisions of Section 26 01 60.
  - 2. Other Locations: Use surface-mounted cast metal box.
- S. Open knockouts in outlet boxes only where required for inserting conduit.
- T. All boxes and panels/cabinets shall be covered with cardboard and duct tape to keep plaster and dirt from entering box or panels. All boxes shall be vacuum cleaned prior to pulling wires.
- U. All pull and junction boxes shall be clearly and permanently marked indicating the panel and circuit numbers of conductors within the box.
- V. Coordinate with architectural drawings for tackable wall covers and provide special extension rings for flush finish fit to comply with CEC 370.20.

3.2 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Coordinate mounting heights and locations of outlets mounted above counters, benches and backsplashes. The Contractor shall be responsible for cut-outs in tile or counter splashes where outlet boxes are to be installed.
- B. Position outlet boxes to locate luminaires as shown on reflected ceiling plan.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust flush-mounting outlets to make front flush with finished wall material.
- B. Install knockout closures in unused box openings.

END OF SECTION 26 01 30

## SECTION 26 01 60 - CABINETS AND ENCLOSURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Hinged cover enclosures.
- B. Cabinets.
- C. Terminal blocks and accessories.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum).
- B. ANSI/NEMA ICS 1 - Industrial Control and Systems.
- C. ANSI/NEMA ICS 4 - Terminal Blocks for Industrial Control Equipment and Systems.
- D. ANSI/NEMA ICS 6 - Enclosures for Industrial Control Equipment and Systems.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Division 01.
- B. Shop Drawings for Equipment Panels: Include wiring schematic diagram, wiring diagram, outline drawing and construction diagram as described in ANSI/NEMA ICS 1.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 HINGED COVER ENCLOSURES

- A. Construction: NEMA 250; Type 1, 3R, steel.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.
- C. Covers: Continuous hinge, held closed by flush latch operable by key.
- D. Panel for Mounting Terminal Blocks or Electrical Components: 14 gage steel, white enamel finish.

## 2.2 CABINETS

- A. Cabinet Boxes: Galvanized steel with removable endwalls. Provide 3/4-inch-thick plywood backboard painted matte white, for mounting terminal blocks.
- B. Cabinet Fronts: Steel, flush surface type with concealed trim clamps, screw cover front, concealed hinge and flush lock keyed to match branch circuit panelboard; finish as approved by Architect.

## 2.3 TERMINAL BLOCKS AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Terminal Blocks: ANSI/NEMA ICS 4; UL listed.
- B. Power Terminals: Unit construction type, closed-back type, with tubular pressure screw connectors, rated 600 volts.
- C. Signal and Control Terminals: Modular construction type, channel mounted; tubular pressure screw connectors, rated 300 volts.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Shop assemble enclosures and cabinets housing terminal blocks or electrical components in accordance with ANSI/NEMA ICS 6.
- B. Provide conduit hubs knockouts on enclosures.
- C. Provide protective pocket inside front cover with schematic diagram, connection diagram, and layout drawing of control wiring and components within enclosure.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cabinets and enclosures plumb; anchor securely to wall and structural supports at each corner, minimum.
- B. Provide accessory feet for free-standing equipment enclosures.
- C. Install trim plumb.
- D. Provide nameplate per Section 26 05 32.
- E. Ground and bond per Section 26 05 26.

END OF SECTION 26 01 60



## SECTION 26 04 40 - DISCONNECT SWITCHES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Disconnect switches.
- B. Fuses.
- C. Enclosures.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/UL 198C - High-Intensity Capacity Fuses; Current Limiting Types.
- B. ANSI/UL 198E - Class R Fuses.
- C. FS W-F-870 - Fuseholders (For Plug and Enclosed Cartridge Fuses).
- D. FS W-S-865 - Switch, Box, (Enclosed), Surface-Mounted.
- E. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed Switches.
- F. C.E.C. California Electrical Code.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS - DISCONNECT SWITCHES

- A. Square D
- B. Eaton Cutler-Hammer.
- C. GE.

#### 2.2 DISCONNECT SWITCHES

- A. Fusible Switch Assemblies: NEMA KS 1; quick-make, quick-break, load interrupter enclosed knife switch with externally operable handle interlocked to prevent opening front cover with switch in ON position. Handle lockable in OFF position. Fuse Clips: FS W-F- 870.

- B. Enclosures: NEMA KS 1; Type 1, for interior dry locations; Type 3R for exterior or wet locations. Furnish 1 padlock and two keys for each disconnect, Master 611 or M-20.
- C. Switch Ratings: Number of poles, voltage, current and horsepower rating as required for particular installation.

## 2.3 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS - FUSES

- A. Littelfuse.
- B. Gould Shawmut.
- C. Bussman.

## 2.4 FUSES

- A. Fuses 600 Amperes and Less: ANSI/UL 198E, Class RK1; current limiting, one-time fuse, 250 volt.
- B. Interrupting Rating: 200,000 rms amperes.
- C. Size fuses based on motor nameplate rating.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install disconnect switches where indicated on Drawings.
- B. Install fuses in fusible disconnect switches, otherwise required by Code.
- C. Properly align switches and support independent of the connecting raceway.

END OF SECTION 26 04 40

## SECTION 26 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
  - 2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
  - 3. Sleeve seals.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Common electrical installation requirements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
  - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
  - 2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
  - 3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
  - 4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

- C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

### 2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria is not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

### 3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.

- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
  - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 26 05 00

## SECTION 26 05 19 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Building wire and cable.
- B. Wiring connectors and connections.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/NFPA 70 – California Electrical Code.
- B. C.E.C. – California Electrical Code.
- C. InterNational Electrical Testing Association.
- D. OSHA, Definition B, 29 CFR 1910.7.

#### 1.3 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this Section with minimum three years documented experience.

#### 1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of C.E.C.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on Drawings.
- B. Wire and cable routing shown on Drawings is approximate unless dimensioned. Route wire and cable as required meeting Project Conditions.
- C. Where wire and cable routing is not shown, and destination only is indicated, determine exact routing and lengths required.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Determine required separation between cable and other work.
- B. Determine cable routing to avoid interference with other work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BUILDING WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Description: Single conductor insulated wire, new, manufactured not more than 6 months prior to installation, with size, type of insulation, voltage rating and manufacturer's name permanently marked on outer covering at regular intervals.
- B. Conductor: Copper.
- C. Insulation Voltage Rating: 600 volts.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that interior of building has been protected from weather.
- B. Verify that mechanical work likely to damage wire and cable has been completed.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Completely and thoroughly swab raceway before installing wire.

### 3.3 WIRING METHOD

- A. Type THHN/THWN insulation for dry interior locations, in raceway.
- B. Type THWN for exterior or wet locations, in raceway.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide conductors continuous from outlet to outlet and splice only at outlet or junction boxes.
- B. Circuit all feeders and branch circuits as shown on the drawings. Suggested deviation from the plans must be provided by the Architect.



- C. Install products in accordance with manufacturers instructions.
- D. Use solid conductor for feeders and branch circuits 10 AWG and smaller.
- E. Use stranded conductors for control circuits.
- F. Use conductor not smaller than 12 AWG for power and lighting circuits.
- G. Use conductor not smaller than 16 AWG for control circuits.
- H. Low voltage control wiring shall be No. 18 AWG minimum, insulated cable for each conductor. Voltage rating of cable shall be suitable for either Class I or Class II, remote control or signal circuit, as determined by the code and the actual installation.
- I. Use 10 AWG conductors for 20 ampere, 120 volt branch circuits longer than 75 feet (450-m).
- J. Use 10 AWG conductors for 20 ampere, 277 volt branch circuits longer than 200 feet (600-m).
- K. Install all conductors in a single raceway at one time, insuring that conductors do not cross one another while being pulled into raceway. Leave sufficient cable at all fittings or boxes and prevent conductor kinks. Keep all conductors within the allowable tension and exceeding the minimum-bending radius.
- L. Use suitable wire pulling lubricant for building wire 4 AWG and larger. Lubricants for wire pulling shall conform to UL requirements for the insulation and raceway material.
- M. Provide conductor supports as required by Code and recommended by the cable manufacturer. Where required, provide cable supports in vertical conduits similar to OZ Gedney Type CMT and provide the lower end of conduit with OZ Gedney Type KVF ventilators.
- N. No splicing or joints will be permitted in either feeder or branch circuits except at outlet or accessible junction boxes.
- O. Neatly train and lace wiring inside boxes, equipment, and panelboards.
- P. Clean conductor surfaces before installing lugs and connectors.
- Q. Make splices, taps, and terminations to carry full ampacity of conductors with no perceptible temperature rise. Keep splices in underground junction boxes, handholes, and manholes to an absolute minimum. Where splices are necessary, use resin pressure splices and resin splicing kits manufactured by the 3M Company to totally encapsulate the splice. Arrange the splicing kit to minimize the effects of moisture.
- R. Use split bolt connectors for copper conductor splices and taps, 6 AWG and larger. Tape uninsulated conductors and connector with electrical tape to 150 percent of insulation rating of conductor.
- S. Use solderless pressure connectors with insulating covers for copper conductor splices and taps, 8 AWG and smaller.

- T. Use insulated spring wire connectors with plastic caps for copper conductor splices and taps, 10 AWG and smaller.
- U. Provide all power and control conductors, that terminate on equipment or terminal strips, with solderless lugs or tork and flanged tongue terminals. Provide T & B "Sta-kon" tongue terminal. This type conductor termination is not required when the equipment is provided with solderless connectors.

### 3.5 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Identify wire and cable under provisions of Division 26.
- B. Identify each conductor with its circuit number or other designation indicated on Drawings.
- C. Conductor Identification: All branch circuit conductors (No. 10 AWG and smaller) throughout the project shall be provided with color-coded insulation as follows:

208Y/120V	Phase	480Y/277
Black	A	Brown
Red	B	Orange
Blue	C	Yellow
White	Neutral	Gray
Green	Ground	Green

- D. Conductors No. 8 and larger shall be black with bands of colored nonaging, plastic tape to color code the conductors, utilizing the same scheme as for branch circuits. The bands shall occur within each enclosure where a tap, splice or termination is made.
- E. Color code all control wire insulation and label each termination.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.

- a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- D. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19

## SECTION 26 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in Part 3 "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
  - 1. Test wells.
  - 2. Ground rods.
  - 3. Ground rings.
  - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
  - 5. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include the following in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:
  - 1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS and CEC Article 250.
    - a. Tests shall be to determine if ground resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if they do not.
    - b. Include recommended testing intervals.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the International Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the International Electrical Testing Association to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.
- D. Comply with the California Electrical Code (CEC).

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
  - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
  - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

##### 2.2 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.

1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

## 2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m) in diameter.
- B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
  1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches (1200 mm) long.
  2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 4/0 AWG minimum.
  1. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
  2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
  1. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch (25 mm), minimum, from wall 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, down to specified height above floor, and connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.

3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements and CEC Article 250.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields as recommended by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits sized per C.E.C. Table 250-122.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by CEC:
  1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  2. Lighting circuits.
  3. Receptacle circuits.
  4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  6. Flexible raceway runs.
  7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
  8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.

9. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in  $\frac{3}{4}$ " (19mm) raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
  1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch (6-by-50-by-300-mm) grounding bus.
  2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
- H. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.



- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.
  - 2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches (300 mm) deep, with cover.
  - 1. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service, unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
  - 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
  - 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
  - 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.
- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column and where indicated on the drawings.

1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 4/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
  2. Bury ground ring (where indicated) not less than 24 inches (600 mm) from building foundation.
- J. UFER Ground (Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode): Fabricate according to CEC, using a minimum of 40 feet (12 meters) of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4/0 AWG.
1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet (6 m) long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
  2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
    - a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
  3. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- D. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
  2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
  3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
  4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohms.
  5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.

- 6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.
- E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26

## SECTION 26 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
  - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Steel slotted support systems.
  - 2. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
  - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
  - 2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - 3. Nonmetallic slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Welding certificates.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with California Electrical Code (CEC).

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.

- c. ERICO International Corporation.
  - d. GS Metals Corp.
  - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - g. Wesanco, Inc.
- 3. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
- 4. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
- 5. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
- 6. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with 9/16-inch- (14-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c., in at least 1 surface.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    - c. Fabco Plastics Wholesale Limited.
    - d. Seasafe, Inc.
  - 3. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
  - 4. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
  - 5. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
- C. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated or stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
  - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - 3) Hilti Inc.
    - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
2. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
3. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
4. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
5. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
6. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by CEC. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC, and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in CEC.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts or Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69.
  - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.



### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete or Cast-in-Place Concrete (Limited Applications)" as applicable.
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
  - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturers written instructions.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29

## SECTION 26 05 32 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Nameplates.
- B. Wire and cable markers.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit shop drawings under provisions of Division 01.
- B. Include schedule for nameplates and tape labels.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Nameplates: Engraved three-layer laminated plastic, white letters on a black background.
- B. Wire and Cable Markers: Cloth markers, split sleeve or tubing type.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Degrease and clean surfaces to receive nameplates.
- B. Install nameplates and tape labels parallel to equipment lines.
- C. Secure nameplates to equipment fronts using screws, or rivets. Secure nameplate to inside face of recessed panelboard doors in finished locations.
- D. Embossed tape will not be permitted for any application.

### 3.2 WIRE IDENTIFICATION

- A. Provide wire markers on each conductor in panelboard gutters, pull boxes, outlet and junction boxes, and at load connection. Identify with panel and branch circuit or feeder number for power and lighting circuits, and with control wire number as indicated on schematic and interconnection diagrams equipment manufacturer's shop drawings for control wiring.

### 3.3 NAMEPLATE ENGRAVING

- A. Provide nameplates to identify all circuits in the service distribution and power distribution panelboards; branch circuit panelboards; separately mounted starting switches; disconnecting switches; motor control push-button stations; selector switches; terminal cabinets; telephone cabinets, etc. Clearly identify on the nameplate the equipment such as "Air Handling Unit AH-1" and "Hot Water Cir. Pump P-1" in lieu of abbreviated plan references such as "AH-1" or "P-1".
- B. Provide nameplates of minimum letter height as scheduled below.
- C. Panelboards and Switchboards: 1/4 inch; identify equipment designation, voltage rating, and source.
- D. Individual Circuit Breakers In Panelboards and Switchboards: 1/8 inch; identify circuit and load served, including location.
- E. Individual Circuit Breakers, Enclosed Switches and Motor Starters: 1/8 inch; identify voltage rating, ampere rating and load served including location.
- F. HVAC and Plumbing Control Equipment: 1/8 inch; identify equipment designation and equipment served including location.
- G. Communication Terminal Cabinets: 1/4 inch; identify cabinet designation and type of system.

END OF SECTION 26 05 32

## SECTION 26 05 48 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Isolation pads.
  - 2. Spring isolators.
  - 3. Restrained spring isolators.
  - 4. Channel support systems.
  - 5. Restraint cables.
  - 6. Hanger rod stiffeners.
  - 7. Anchorage bushings and washers.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. The IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.
- D. CEC: California Electrical Code.
- E. CBC: California Building Code.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:

1. Electrical equipment shall be seismically anchored to conform to C.C.R. Title 24, 2022 CBC Section 1617A.1.18 through 1617A.1.26 and ASCE 7-106 Chapter 13, 26 and 30, Anchorage details not shown on the approved plans or otherwise approved by DSA are subject to field approval by the Architect and/or Structural Engineer of record and field approval by DSA. All conduits shall be supported and braced in accordance with SMACNA Guidelines, the CEC and as approved by DSA.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Qualification Data: For Testing Agency.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the CBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPM number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- E. Comply with CEC.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - 2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  - 3. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - 4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - 5. Kinetics Noise Control.
  - 6. Mason Industries.
  - 7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - 8. Vibration Isolation.
  - 9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- D. Pads : Arrange in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment. Refer to drawing details for locations.
  - 1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.

### 2.2 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  - 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - 3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  - 4. Hilti Inc.
  - 5. Loos & Co.; Seismic Earthquake Division.
  - 6. Mason Industries.
  - 7. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
  - 8. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.

- D. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and application requirements shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to DSA.
  - 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least 4 times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- E. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- F. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized steel cables in concealed spaces and ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables in areas exposed to view in public spaces. Both shall have end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivels, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
- G. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod. Do not weld stiffeners to rods.
- H. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchors and studs.
- I. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices.
- J. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- K. Mechanical Anchor: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchors with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
- L. Adhesive Anchor: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## 2.3 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
  - 1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
  - 2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.

3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to DSA.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

#### 3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
  1. Install restrained isolators on electrical equipment.
  2. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by DSA.
- B. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- C. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- D. Drilled-in Anchors:



1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where they terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  7. Measure isolator deflection.
  8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
  9. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after isolated equipment is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
- D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 26 05 48

## SECTION 26 24 16 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.
  - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
  - 3. Load centers.
  - 4. Transient voltage suppression panelboards.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- D. RMS: Root mean square.
- E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
    - a. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
    - c. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.

- d. UL listing for series rating of installed devices.
      - e. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
      - f. Future metering spacing compliance with 2016 Energy/Electrical Codes.
    - 2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
  - C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" Include the following:
    - 1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
      - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
      - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
    - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
    - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  - D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
  - E. Field quality-control test reports including the following:
    - 1. Test procedures used.
    - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
    - 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
  - F. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.
  - G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
    - 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the International Electrical Testing

Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the International Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of panelboards and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in CEC, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- F. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- G. Comply with CEC.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
  2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
  1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
  2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Architect and Owner no fewer than 14 days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Architects and Owners written permission.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, and encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Keys: Six spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Panelboards, Overcurrent Protective Devices, Controllers, Contactors, and Accessories:
    - a. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
    - b. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Protection Div.
    - c. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
    - d. Square D.
  - 2. Transient Voltage Suppression Panelboards:
    - a. Current Technology.
    - b. Liebert Corporation.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets. NEMA PB 1, Type 1.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

- a. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R unless noted otherwise.
  - b. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
  - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - d. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7C.
2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
  3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
  4. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
  5. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
  6. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.
  7. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish over corrosion-resistant treatment or primer coat.
  8. Directory Card: With transparent protective cover, mounted in metal frame, inside panelboard door.
  9. Identifying nameplate with full description as specified in Section 260553.
- C. Phase and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; bonded to box.
  3. Isolated Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; insulated from box.
  4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
  5. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.
- D. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material.
1. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type.
  2. Ground Lugs and Bus Configured Terminators: Compression type.
  3. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
  4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.
- E. Service Equipment Label: UL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with main service disconnect switches.
- F. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

### 2.3 PANELBOARD SHORT-CIRCUIT RATING

- A. UL label indicating connected rating with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices. Include size and type of upstream device allowable, branch devices allowable, and UL connected short-circuit rating. Series rated panels and related circuit breakers are not acceptable.
- B. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

### 2.4 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Omit for fused-switch panelboards.
- B. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Circuit Breaker.
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices:
  - 1. For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on type circuit breakers.
  - 2. For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

### 2.5 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on type circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- B. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

### 2.6 LOAD CENTERS

- A. Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in, full-module circuit breaker.
- B. Conductor Connectors: Mechanical type for main, neutral, and ground lugs and buses.

### 2.7 TRANSIENT VOLTAGE SUPPRESSION PANELBOARDS

- A. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- B. Main Overcurrent Devices: Thermal-magnetic circuit breaker.
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- D. Bus: Copper phase and neutral buses; 200 percent capacity neutral bus and lugs.
- E. Transient Voltage Suppression Device: IEEE C62.41, integrally mounted, plug-in-style, solid-state, parallel-connected, sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules.



1. Minimum Single-Impulse Current Ratings:
  - a. Line to Neutral: 100,000 A.
  - b. Line to Ground: 100,000 A.
  - c. Neutral to Ground: 50,000 A.
2. Protection modes shall be as follows:
  - a. Line to neutral.
  - b. Line to ground.
  - c. Neutral to ground.
3. EMI/RFI Noise Attenuation Using 50-ohm Insertion Loss Test: 55 dB at 100 kHz.
4. Maximum Category C Combination Wave Clamping Voltage: 600 V, line to neutral and line to ground on 120/208 V. and 1000 V, line to neutral and line to ground on 277/480 V. systems.
5. Maximum UL 1449 Clamping Levels: 400 V, line to neutral and line to ground on 120/208 V. and 800 V, line to neutral and line to ground on 277/480 V. systems.
6. Withstand Capabilities: 3000 Category C surges with less than 5 percent change in clamping voltage.
7. Accessories:
  - a. Form-C contacts, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts to reverse position on failure of any surge diversion module.
  - b. Audible alarm activated on failure of any surge diversion module.
  - c. Six-digit transient-counter set to total transient surges that deviate from the sine-wave envelope by more than 125 V.

## 2.8 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  3. Electronic trip-unit circuit breakers shall have RMS sensing; field-replaceable rating plug; and with the following field-adjustable settings:
    - a. Instantaneous trip.
    - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
  4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.

5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
  6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with 5-mA trip sensitivity.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories: Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
1. Lugs: Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
  2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
  3. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
  4. Communication Capability: Universal-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
  5. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
  6. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
  7. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
  9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
  10. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory-assembled to operate as a single unit.
- C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
- D. Fuses are specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses."

## 2.9 CONTROLLERS

- A. Motor Controllers: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, combination controller equipped for panelboard mounting and including the following accessories:
1. Individual control-power transformers.
  2. Fuses for control-power transformers.
  3. Bimetallic-element overload relay.
  4. Indicating lights.
  5. Seal-in contact.
  6. 2 convertible auxiliary contacts.
  7. Push buttons.
  8. Selector switches.
- B. Contactors: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, combination controller equipped for panelboard mounting and including the following accessories:

1. Individual control-power transformers.
  2. Fuses for control-power transformers.
  3. Indicating lights.
  4. Seal-in contact.
  5. 2 convertible auxiliary contacts or as otherwise indicated on drawings.
  6. Push buttons.
  7. Selector switches.
- C. Controller Disconnect Switches: Adjustable instantaneous-trip circuit breaker integrally mounted and interlocked with controller.
1. Auxiliary Contacts: Integral with disconnect switches to de-energize external control-power source.
- D. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held general-purpose controller.
1. Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
  2. Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

## 2.10 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Furnish accessory set including tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Furnish portable test set to test functions of solid-state trip devices without removal from panelboard.
- C. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for panelboard interior, including overcurrent protective devices and other components.

## PART 3 - PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Mount top of trim 74 inches (1880 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mount plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish. Where panelboards are recessed into fire rated walls, notify Architect immediately of condition and provide additional furring of wall (and related drywall) to bring panelboard front flush with finished surface.

- E. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- G. Stub five 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- H. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing in a neat and professional manor.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads (after balancing panelboard loads). Obtain approval from Architect of description or areas served before installing. The Contractor shall be responsible for updating directories to indicate actual area served which is not necessarily the description indicated on the bid documents. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate mounted with corrosion-resistant screws or rivets. Refer to Section 260553 for additional requirements.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

- C. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
- D. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- E. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
  - 1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
  - 2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
  - 3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
  - 4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.
- F. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scanning of each panelboard. Remove panel fronts so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  - 1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies panelboards checked and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of panelboards. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris prior to pulling any conductors; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

END OF SECTION 26 24 16

## SECTION 26 27 26 - WIRING DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Wall switches.
- B. Receptacles.
- C. Device plates and decorative box covers.
- D. Time switches.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. NEMA WD 1 - General-Purpose Wiring Devices.
- B. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Device Configurations.

#### 1.3 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this Section with minimum three years documented experience.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WALL SWITCHES

- A. Single Pole Switch:
  - 1. Hubbell, Model 2121-W.
  - 2. Leviton, Model 5621-2W.
  - 3. Equal by Arrow Hart or Bryant.
- B. Double Pole Switch:
  - 1. Hubbell, Model 2122-W.
  - 2. Leviton, Model 5622-2W.
  - 3. Equal by Arrow Hart or Bryant.
- C. Three-way Switch:

1. Hubbell, Model 2123-W.
  2. Leviton, Model 5623-3W.
  3. Equal by Arrow Hart or Bryant.
- D. Substitutions: Under provisions of Division 01.
- E. Description: NEMA WD 1, heavy-duty specification grade, AC only general-use quiet type rocker witch, UL approved for tungsten lamp loads or inductive loads without derating.
- F. Device Body: White plastic with rocker handle.
- G. Ratings: 20A., 120-277V A.C. or as required to match with specific branch circuit and load characteristics.
- H. Lock type switches shall be Hubbell #1221L only per District standards.

## 2.2 RECEPTACLES

- A. Duplex Convenience Receptacle:
1. Hubbell
  2. Leviton
  3. Arrow Hart
  4. Bryant.
- B. GFCI Receptacle:
1. Hubbell
  2. Leviton
  3. Arrow Hart
  4. Bryant.
- C. Surge Protected Outlets:
1. Hubbell
  2. Leviton
  3. Arrow Hart
  4. Bryant.
- D. Substitutions: Under provisions of Division 01.
- E. Description: NEMA WD 1; heavy-duty general-use receptacle. 20 Amp, 125V, 2-pole, 3-wire style line series.
- F. Device Body: Plastic.
- G. Configuration: NEMA WD 6; type as specified and indicated.
- H. Convenience Receptacle: Type 5-20R

- I. GFCI Receptacle: Convenience receptacle with integral ground fault circuit interrupter to meet regulatory requirements.

## 2.3 WALL PLATES

- A. Plates shall be brushed stainless steel and supplied for every local switch, receptacle, telephone and data outlet, wall speaker outlet, etc.
- B. Weatherproof Cover Plate: Gasketed cast metal with hinged gasketed device cover.
- C. Locking Weatherproof Cover Plate: Pass & Seymour Legrand #4600 Series with mounting plates as required or equal at locations indicated on drawings.
- D. Plates shall be engraved and filled, when used for:
  - 1. More than two gangs.
  - 2. Equipment that cannot be seen from the locations.
  - 3. All lock type switches.
  - 4. All receptacles other than 120 volts.
  - 5. All pilot switches.
  - 6. Switches in locations from which the equipment or circuits controlled cannot be readily seen.
  - 7. Manual motor starting switches.
  - 8. Where so indicated on the drawings.
  - 9. As required on all control circuit switches, such as heater controls, etc.

## 2.4 TIME SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tork.
  - 2. Paragon.
  - 3. Intermatic.
- B. Description: AC electronic time clock, 7 day.
- C. Input voltage: 120V.
- D. Poles: 40A, 120V, number as indicated. (4 pole minimum)
- E. Enclosure: Type as required to meet installation.
- F. Configuration: 365 Day Astronomic, electronic, programmable.
- G. Accessories: Photocell control as indicated.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify outlet boxes are installed at proper height.
- B. Verify wall openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by wall plates.
- C. Verify branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean debris from outlet boxes.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install devices plumb and level.
- C. Install switches with OFF position down.
- D. Install receptacles with grounding pole on top
- E. Connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- F. Install decorative plates on switches, receptacles, etc., and blank outlets in finished areas.
- G. Connect wiring devices by wrapping conductor around screw terminal.
- H. Use jumbo size plates for outlets installed in masonry walls.
- I. Install galvanized steel plates on outlet boxes and junction boxes in unfinished area, above accessible ceilings, and on surface mounted outlets.

### 3.4 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 260533 to obtain mounting heights specified and indicated on drawings.
- B. Install wall switches as indicated on drawings.

- C. Install convenience receptacles 18 inches above finished floor.
- D. Install convenience receptacle 6 inches above backsplash of counter.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each wiring device for defects.
- B. Operate each wall switch with circuit energized and verify proper operation.
- C. Verify that each receptacle device is energized.
- D. Test each receptacle device for proper polarity.
- E. Test each GFCI receptacle device for proper operation.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.

END OF SECTION 26 27 26

## SECTION 26 28 13 - FUSES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in enclosed switches panelboards and switchboards.
2. Plug-fuse adapters for use in Edison-base, plug-fuse sockets.
3. Spare-fuse cabinets.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
  1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
    - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
    - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
  2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
  3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
  5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
  6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 39 "Contract Closeout" include the following:
  - 1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
  - 2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  - 3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
  - 4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Comply with UL 248-11 for plug fuses.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
  - 2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
  - 3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
  - 4. Littelfuse, Inc.
  - 5. .

### 2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

### 2.3 PLUG FUSES

- A. Characteristics: UL 248-11, nonrenewable plug fuses; 125-V ac.

### 2.4 PLUG-FUSE ADAPTERS

- A. Characteristics: Adapters for using Type S, rejection-base plug fuses in Edison-base fuseholders or sockets; ampere ratings matching fuse ratings; irremovable once installed.

### 2.5 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

- A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
  - 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
  - 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
  - 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- high letters on exterior of door.
  - 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
  - 1. Service Entrance: Class L, time delay.
  - 2. Feeders: Class RK1, time delay.
  - 3. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
  - 4. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay Class J, time delay.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install plug-fuse adapters in Edison-base fuseholders and sockets. Ensure that adapters are irremovable once installed.
- C. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s).

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 26 28 13

## SECTION 26 51 00 - INTERIOR LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Division 1 and 26 of the specifications.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 LIGHTING FIXTURES

- A. Lighting fixtures shall be of specification grade and listed or labeled by Underwriters Laboratories (UL) or other approved Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory. Provide lighting fixtures in accordance with the Fixture Schedule.
- B. Recessed lighting fixtures shall be thermally protected.
- C. LED fixtures shall comply with UL Standard 8750, with IES Standards LM-79 and LM-80, and shall have a parts and labor warranty of 5 years minimum on the fixtures and components.
  - 1. User serviceable LED lamps and drivers shall be replaceable from the room side.
  - 2. Dimmable LED fixtures shall have either a 0-10 volt, 3-wire dimming driver, or a two-step (50%-100%) line voltage, two switch controlled dimming driver.

#### 2.2 DRIVERS

- A. LED drivers shall be electronic, labeled as compliant with radio frequency interference (RFI) requirements of FCC Title 47 Part 15, comply with NEMA SSL 1, have a sound rating of "A" and be rated for a THD of less than 20 percent at all input voltages.
- B. Dimmable LED drivers shall be capable of dimming without LED strobing or flicker across their full dimming range.
- C. Drivers shall be rated for the ambient temperatures in which they are located. Outdoor fixtures shall be equipped with ballasts or drivers rated for reliable starting to -20 degrees F. Indoor fixtures located in areas with direct sunlight or above normal ambient temperatures shall have ballasts or drivers rated at 65 degrees C minimum.
- D. Individually fused drivers shall have their fuses accessible from outside of the fixture chassis.

#### 2.3 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Emergency lighting shall consist of normal lighting fixtures with generator or battery-inverter system backup, emergency lighting fixtures with individual battery backup, or sealed beam emergency lighting units in accordance with the Fixture Schedule.
  - 1. Battery-backed LED emergency lighting fixtures shall consist of a normal LED fixture with some or all of the LEDs connected to a battery and charger. The battery shall be nickel cadmium and sized for a minimum of 90 minutes of fixture operation. The charger shall be solid state and provide overload, short circuit, brownout and low battery voltage protection. The battery and charger shall include self-diagnostic and self-exercising circuitry to exercise and test itself for 5 minutes every month and for 30 minutes every 6 months. The fixture shall include a test/monitor module with LED status indicating lights mounted so as to be visible to the public. The fixture shall not contain an audible alarm.
  - 2. Sealed beam emergency lighting units shall consist of sealed beam LED lamps connected to an internally mounted battery and charger. The battery shall be nickel cadmium and sized for a minimum of 90 minutes of battery operation. The charger shall solid state and provide overload, short circuit, brownout and low battery voltage protection. The unit shall be suitable for wall or ceiling mounting as required. It shall include self-diagnostic and self-exercising circuitry to exercise and test itself for 5 minutes every month and for 30 minutes every 6 months. The unit shall include a test/monitor module with LED status indicating lights mounted so as to be visible to the public. The unit shall not contain an audible alarm.

## 2.4 EXIT SIGNS

- A. Exit signs shall be of the LED type.
  - 1. LED's shall be wired in parallel to prevent multi-lamp failure, and shall be concealed within the sign by a clear panel and red optical diffuser. Power consumption shall not exceed 5 watts per face.
  - 2. Exit signs shall have white die cast aluminum or polycarbonate housings with universal mounting brackets; brushed aluminum stencil faces with red letters and multidirectional knockout arrows.
  - 3. Exit signs shall be provided with emergency battery packs and battery chargers when required. Batteries shall be maintenance free nickel cadmium, and shall be mounted within the signs.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Support recessed troffers independently of the ceiling grid system by using two safety wires minimum on diagonally opposite corners of the fixtures. Support recessed downlights by using safety wires or by rigidly attaching the fixtures to the building structure or ceiling grid system. Removable T-bar clips shall not be used to attach fixtures to the ceiling grid system.
- B. Install fixtures level, with no gaps between adjacent fixtures or between fixtures and surrounding surfaces. Lenses, reflectors and trims of fixtures shall be properly and uniformly aligned.



- C. Where fixtures are shown with dual switches, control all inner lamps with one switch and all outer lamps with the other switch. Where dimming or occupancy sensor-controlled fixtures are shown, control the fixtures in accordance with the appropriate wiring diagram or manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Connect night light fixtures and emergency lighting fixtures to the hot (unswitched) side of lighting circuits.
- E. Provide an individual feed with ground conductor from a junction box to each lighting fixture. Lighting fixtures shall not be daisy-chained.
- F. Drops to recessed fixtures may be flexible metallic conduit, or manufactured wiring systems may be used where accessible. Fixtures shall be provided with sufficient length to permit removal and lowering of the fixtures 12" below the ceiling.
- G. Provide green grounding conductors back to the panel ground for lighting circuits. Raceways shall not be used as grounding conductors.
- H. Fixtures shall have their exterior labels removed and shall be thoroughly cleaned. Burned out lamps shall be replaced.
- I. Locate emergency lighting remote battery packs and remote test/monitor modules identically so their status indicating lights are visible to the public and they form a straight line when viewed from the end of the corridor or room. Where a suspended ceiling exists, center the status indicating lights in adjacent ceiling tiles.
- J. Mount sealed beam emergency lighting units where shown and aim their lamps to light the egress path as uniformly as possible.
- K. When emergency lighting fixtures contain audible alarms, disable the alarms in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. A visual inspection shall be performed to verify cleanliness and alignment of the fixtures. Misalignment and light leaks shall be corrected, and rattles due to ventilation system vibration shall be eliminated.
- B. An operational test shall be performed to verify that all fixtures light properly, and are switched according to the drawings.

### 3.3 COMMISSIONING

- A. Perform Commissioning activities per Related Sections above.

END OF SECTION 26 51 00

## SECTION 28 31 00 - VOICE EVACUATION FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 SCOPE

- A. Contractor shall provide expansion of existing Gamewell-FCI E3 Series 24VDC analog addressable fire alarm system/voice evacuation with System Sensor two wire synchronized notification and a LifeGuard Networks IP based building automation and control system. The audible appliances shall be speakers. The Fire Alarm Control Panel (FACP) or panels shall be microprocessor-based, network capable and complete with an integral Digital Alarm Communications Transmitter (DACT) that is UL listed for Remote Station, Proprietary and Central Station fire alarm systems. The FACP shall be compliant with UL 864, 9<sup>th</sup> edition. The fire alarm system shall be connected/integrated to the existing district LifeGuard Networks centralized integration and automation system. Provide interlock with "lock down"
- 1. The fire alarm system shall be provided and installed by a Gamewell-FCI Elite Partner and LifeGuard Networks Authorized Distributor. Systems provided and/or installed by anyone other than an Authorized Distributor shall be considered in non-compliance with this specification and subject to replacement at the expense of the Prime Contractor.
  - a. The Gamewell-FCI Elite Partner and LifeGuard Networks Authorized Distributor shall furnish all labor, materials, appliances, cabling, tools, equipment, facilities transportation and services necessary for and incidental to performing all operations in connection with furnishing, delivery and installation of all equipment, wiring, programming, configuration, testing, training required by this Section, complete as indicated on the applicable Contract Drawings and/or specified herein.
    - 1) This specification provides the requirements for the installation, programming, configuration, testing and maintenance of a complete analog addressable fire alarm system. This system shall include, but not be limited to:
      - (a) Fire Alarm Control Panel (FACP)
        - (1) System cabinet
        - (2) Power supply
        - (b) Annunciator/keypad (if required).
        - (c) Batteries
        - (d) Wiring
        - (e) Conduit
        - (f) Associated peripheral devices
        - (g) Other relevant components and accessories required to provide a complete and operational analog addressable reporting Life Safety System.

- B. The fire alarm system shall be capable of providing, at a minimum, the following:
1. Fire Alarm Control Panel (FACP)
    - a. Integral Digital Alarm Communications Transmitter (DACT).
    - b. Network Interface capability via copper and/or fiber optic network.
  2. Analog addressable initiation devices
  3. Analog addressable control modules
  4. Notification appliances
    - a. Speakers – selectable output with plug-in design.
    - b. Strobes - Compatible with two wire synchronized circuit.
  5. Notification Appliance Circuit (NAC) remote power supply
    - a. Combination horn/strobe two wire circuit.
    - b. Built-in synchronization capabilities
  6. Internet Protocol (IP) connectivity for remote access capability via LAN/WAN network
  7. Voice Evacuation capability
  8. Firefighter Telephone capability
- C. Any material and/or equipment necessary for the proper operation of the system, which is not specified or described herein, shall be deemed part of this Specification.
- D. The Analog Addressable Fire Alarm System specified herein shall be connected to a UL Listed Central Station monitoring company.
1. Contractor shall coordinate with the Owner or his representative to obtain two telephone lines for code required offsite monitoring.
- E. Contractor shall offer code required fire alarm system inspection and maintenance contract.

## 1.2 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Equipment
1. This specification is based on the equipment of manufacturer(s) who have been approved by the Owner and the Manufacturer(s) herein named shall be considered as meeting the requirements of this specification.
  2. The equipment manufacturer shall be a United States manufacturer, who has been regularly engaged in the manufacture of fire alarm systems for at least ten (20) years.
  3. The district has an existing Lifeguard Networks Automation and Control system. The fire alarm contractor shall integrate the new system with the Automation and Control system. The fire alarm contractor shall be a certified Lifeguard Networks dealer.
  4. It is the Contractor's responsibility to meet the entire intent of these specifications. Deviations from the specified items shall be at the risk of the Contractor until the date of final acceptance by the Architect, Engineer and the Owner's representative.
  5. All equipment shall conform to applicable codes and ordinances.
  6. All equipment shall be California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) listed.

7. All equipment shall bear the label of a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) such as Intertek Testing Services NA, Inc. (ITSNA - formerly ETL) or Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) and be listed by their re-examination service.

B. System Supplier/Installer

1. The system Basis of Design Gamewell-FCI Elite Partner and Lifeguard Networks Authorized Distributor, installer to be trained and certified by the Manufacturer in the proper installation, programming, configuration, testing, service and maintenance of each system.
2. Subsequent to a successful bid and upon request of the Owner the System Supplier/Installer shall submit a qualification documentation package which shall include the following:
  - a. Underwriters Laboratories (UL) listing indicating current status as a UL Listed Central Station Fire Service – Local Service (UUFX-L) Installation Company.
  - b. Evidence of current status as the Gamewell-FCI Elite Partner. The evidence shall be a letter from Gamewell-FCI stating the system provider's authenticity as a dealer and specifically mention this project in the body of the letter. The letter must contain contact information so that the owner can verify.
  - c. Certificates indicating that a minimum of four (4) technicians have attended and completed all requirements and received certification from the manufacturer's installation and service school.
  - d. Evidence of current status as the Lifeguard networks Authorized Distributor. The evidence shall be a letter from Lifeguard Networks stating the system provider's authenticity as a dealer and specifically mention this project in the body of the letter. The letter must contain contact information so that the owner can verify.
  - e. Evidence of current State of California Contractor's License, C-10.
  - f. Evidence of current State of California Alarm Company Operator License, ACO.
  - g. A list of twenty (20) completed projects of equal scope, with associated Owners Representative contact names and telephone numbers.
  - h. A minimum of four (4) National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) certificates in "Fire Protection Engineering Technology – Fire Alarm Systems". NICET certificates shall include at a minimum one (1) Level 3 and two (2) Level 2.
3. Per California codes all individuals involved in the installation of the fire alarm system shall hold a valid State of California, Division of Apprenticeship Standards (DAS), Fire/Life Safety Technician Certification.
  - a. Evidence of DAS certification shall be provided immediately upon request at the project site.
4. The System Supplier/Installer shall show satisfactory evidence, upon request, that he maintains a fully equipped service organization capable of furnishing adequate inspection, service and maintenance of the system.
  - a. The System Supplier/Installer shall maintain at his facility the necessary spare parts in the proper proportion as recommended by the manufacturer to maintain and service the equipment being supplied.
5. The System Supplier/Installer shall be prepared to offer a service contract for the maintenance of the system beyond the warranty period.

6. The System Supplier/Installer shall be an established fire alarm systems contractor that has a minimum of (2) offices in Southern California, currently maintains a locally run office (within 100 miles of the job site), and operated business for at least forty (40) years.
7. The System Supplier/Installer shall employ a minimum of five (5) Gamewell-FCI factory trained technicians and maintain a 24 hour emergency service department.
8. The System Supplier/Installer shall designate one person to act as the project manager having total responsibility for coordination, communications and project technical integrity. This project manager shall have a minimum of five (5) years experience as a supervisor and installer of the system specified herein.

### 1.3 RELATED SPECIFICATIONS

- A. The conditions of the General Contract (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions) and the Division 1 - General Requirements specifications are hereby made a part of this Section.
  1. Section 26 01 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements
  2. Section 26 05 00 – Common Work Results for Electrical
  3. Section 26 05 33 – Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems

### 1.4 RELATED WORK BY OTHERS

- A. Reference Part 3, sub-section 3.01 of this specification.

### 1.5 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. In the event of a conflict between this specification and the construction drawings this specification shall take precedence.

### 1.6 APPLICABLE CODES & STANDARDS

- A. 2022 Building Standards Administrative Code.
- B. 2022 California Building Code (CBC).
- C. 2022 California Electrical Code (CEC).
- D. 2022 California Mechanical Code (CMC).
- E. 2022 California Plumbing Code (CPC).
- F. 2022 California Fire Code (CFC).
- G. NFPA Standards
  1. The fire alarm system shall comply with the applicable provisions of the following current National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) standards:
    - a. NFPA 12 Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems

- b. NFPA 12A Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems
- c. NFPA 13 Installation of Sprinkler Systems
- d. NFPA 15 Water Spray Fixed Systems
- e. NFPA 16 Deluge Foam-Water Sprinkler Systems
- f. NFPA 16A Installation of Closed Head Foam-water Sprinkler Systems
- g. NFPA 17 Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems
- h. NFPA 17A Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems
- i. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code
- j. NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm Code:
  - 1) Central Station Fire Alarm Systems
  - 2) Local Fire Alarm Systems
  - 3) Auxiliary Fire Alarm Systems
  - 4) Remote Station Fire Alarm Systems
  - 5) Proprietary Fire Alarm Systems
- k. NFPA 90A, Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
- l. NFPA 101, Life Safety Code - Safety to Life from Fire in Buildings and Structures
- m. NFPA 750 Water Mist Fire Protection Systems
- n. NFPA 2001 clean Agent fire Extinguishing Systems

H. ADA - Americans with Disabilities Act

I. CAC – California Administrative Code, Title 24

J. U.L. Standards

- 1. The system shall comply with the applicable provisions of the following U.L. Standards and Classifications:
  - a. UL 268
  - b. Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Signaling Systems
  - c. UL 464, Audible Signal Appliances
  - d. UL 521, Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems
  - e. UL 864, Control Units for Fire Protective Signaling Systems
  - f. UL 1481 Power Supplies for Fire Alarm Systems
  - g. UL 1971, Emergency Devices for the Hearing Impaired
  - h. UOJZ, Control Units, System
  - i. SYZV Control Units, Releasing Device
  - j. UOXX, Control Unit Accessories, System
  - k. SYSW Accessories, Releasing Device Service

## 1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Manufacture: same as the manufacture of the existing system control units where possible.
- B. Substitutions: see Section 01 60 00 – Product Requirements.

## 1.8 SUBMITTALS

- A. Within thirty-five (30) calendar days after the date of the award of the contract, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect for review, one electronic and two hard copies of a complete Submittal Package. The Submittal Package shall consist of the following sections, with each section separated with index tabs.

1. Title Page

- a. Project Title
- b. Project address
- c. Architect's name and address
- d. Contractor's name and address

2. Index of Submittal Contents

- a. Each Section of the Submittal Package shall be numbered chronologically and shall be summarized in the Index.

3. Certifications

- a. Index of Certification Section Contents
- b. Valid State of California Contractors License
- c. Manufacturer's Certifications
  - 1) Authorized Distributor
  - 2) Factory Trained Technician
- d. UL (Underwriters Laboratories Inc.) Listing
- e. NICET Certifications
- f. California DAS, Fire/Life Safety Technician Certifications

4. Project List

- a. A substantial list (minimum of 20) of completed projects equal in scope to that specified herein.
  - 1) Contact information shall be made available upon request.

5. Product Data

- a. Index of Equipment Data Sheets
- b. Manufacturer's Data Sheets including cable types
- c. Applicable Listings and Approvals
- d. Copy of Manufacturer's 5-year warranty

6. Shop Drawings

- 1) Contractor shall provide written acknowledgement DSA approved plans.
- 2) Shop drawings shall be required only if design changes are being suggested that differ for the DSA approved set of plans.

## PART 2- PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

#### A. Basic Performance

1. The fire detection and alarm system shall continually supervise and monitor the integrity of conductors: initiating device circuits (IDC); notification appliance circuits (NAC); and signaling line circuits (SLC); per the requirements of NFPA 72.
  - a. Loss of signal from any of these circuits will activate a trouble indication, both audible and visual, at the local FACP.
2. The system shall be microprocessor based operating system having the following; capabilities, features and capacities:
  - a. Two intelligent loops expandable to four (4) with supplemental loop module.
  - b. Capability of 159 analog addressable sensors and 159 addressable modules per SLC intelligent loop, as a minimum.
  - c. Intelligent devices shall operate on "standard wire" no special twist or shield shall be required
  - d. Two (2) 24V DC 2A notification circuits capable of Style Z (Class A) or Style Y (Class B)
  - e. Optional relays or LED drivers for graphic annunciation.
  - f. Remote graphic annunciator (NGA) with Microphone.
  - g. DACT capable of sending point information to a Central Station depending on protocol required by the Central Station.
  - h. 80-character backlit LCD display.
  - i. Loss of signal from any of these circuits will activate a trouble indication, both audible and visual, at the local FACP.
3. System shall be fully programmable and configurable on site to accommodate system expansions and facilitate changes in operation.
4. All software programs shall be stored in non-volatile programmable memory within the FACP.
  - a. Loss of primary and secondary power shall not erase the instructions stored in the memory.
  - b. System programming shall be password protected.
5. Alarm, supervisory and trouble signals from analog addressable devices shall be encoded onto NFPA Style 4 (Class B) signaling line circuits (SLC).
6. Initiation device circuits (IDC) shall be wired NFPA Style B (Class B)
7. Notification appliance circuits shall be wired NFPA Style Y (Class B).
8. A single ground or open on any system SLC, IDC or NAC shall not cause a system malfunction, loss of operating power or the ability to report an alarm.
9. Alarm signals arriving at the main FACP shall not be lost due to a power failure.
10. The system shall be provided with sufficient battery capacity to operate the entire system upon loss of 120 VAC power in a normal supervisory mode for a period of twenty four (24) hours with five (5) minutes of alarm indication at the end of this period.



- a. Systems that include voice evacuation shall provide sufficient battery capacity for twenty-four (24) hours with fifteen (15) minutes of alarm in lieu of the five (5) noted above.
11. The system shall automatically transfer to the standby batteries upon power failure. All battery charging and recharging operations shall be automatic. Batteries, once discharged, shall recharge at a rate to provide a minimum of 70% capacity in twelve (12) hours.

B. System Functional Operation

1. The actuation of any approved alarm initiating device shall automatically initiate the following functions:
  - a. Alarm LED on the FACP shall flash.
  - b. Local audible piezo electronic signal in the FACP shall sound.
  - c. The alarm condition description, including the type of point and the location within the protected premises, shall be displayed on the LCD display at the FACP and any remote annunciator(s).
  - d. System shall transmit the condition to a UL Listed Central Station monitoring facility. Supervising station shall be approved per 2022 CFC.
  - e. Printing and history storage equipment shall log the information associated with the condition, including the time and date of the alarm occurrence.
  - f. System output programs configured via control-by-event (CBE) programming to be activated by the particular point in alarm shall be executed, and the associated system output (alarm notification appliances and relays) shall be activated on either local outputs or points located on other network nodes.
2. The actuation of any approved supervisory alarm initiating device shall automatically initiate the following functions:
  - a. Supervisory LED on the FACP shall flash.
  - b. Local audible piezo electronic signal in the FACP shall sound.
  - c. The supervisory condition description, including the type of point and the location within the protected premises, shall be displayed on the LCD display at the FACP and any remote annunciator(s).
  - d. System shall transmit the condition to a UL Listed Central Station monitoring facility. Supervising station shall be approved per 2022 CFC.
  - e. Printing and history storage equipment shall log the information associated with the condition, including the time and date of the alarm occurrence.
  - f. System output programs configured via control-by-event (CBE) programming to be activated by the particular point in alarm shall be executed, and the associated system output (alarm notification appliances and relays) shall be activated on either local outputs or points located on other network nodes.
3. Whenever a trouble condition is detected and reported the FACP shall automatically initiate the following functions:
  - a. Trouble LED on the FACP shall flash.
  - b. Local audible piezo electronic signal in the FACP shall sound.
  - c. The trouble condition description, including the type of point and the location within the protected premises, shall be displayed on the LCD display at the FACP and any remote annunciator(s).

- d. System shall transmit the condition to a UL Listed Central Station monitoring facility. Supervising station shall be approved per 2019 CFC.
- e. Printing and history storage equipment shall log the information associated with the condition, including the time and date of the alarm occurrence.
- f. System output programs configured via control-by-event (CBE) programming to be activated by the particular point in alarm shall be executed, and the associated system output (alarm notification appliances and relays) shall be activated on either local outputs or points located on other network nodes.

C. Remote Monitoring Connection

- 1. The fire alarm system shall be connected via Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT) over telephone lines to a UL Listed Central Station Monitoring Company.
  - a. The fire alarm control panel shall provide an integral Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT) for signaling to a UL Listed Central Station Monitoring Company. The DACT shall contain a "Dialer-Runaway" feature preventing unnecessary transmissions as the result of intermittent faults in the system and shall be Carrier Access Code (CAC) compliant, accepting up to 20-digit central station telephone numbers.
  - b. The fire alarm system shall transmit alarm, supervisory alarm and trouble signals with the alarms having priority over the trouble signal.

D. Internet Protocol (IP) Connectivity for Remote Access

- 1. The system shall be capable of remote access via LAN/WAN network.
  - a. Remote access features and functions shall include the following:
    - 1) Perform programming of the main processor including all system features and functions noted elsewhere in this specification.
    - 2) The capability to perform system diagnostics and access integral system report software regarding the current system status.
  - b. External Device Server
    - 1) Shall support RS-232, RS-422 and RS-485 serial connections
    - 2) Shall configure via HTTP, DHCP, Telnet or serial
    - 3) Shall be capable of Flash ROM upgrades
    - 4) Network Interface – (10Base-T or 10Base-T/100Base-TX) Ethernet
    - 5) Serial Interface – DB25F, RS-232/RS-422/RS-485 serial port with DCE configuration.
    - 6) Shall be capable of modem emulation and accept modem AT commands on the serial port to establish a network connection to the system.
- 2. The contractor shall provide all active electronics, software and peripheral equipment for a complete and operable system.
- 3. Systems not capable of remote access requirements of this specification will not be considered acceptable.

- E. Centralized Integration and Control System – LifeGuard Networks IP Based Building Automation and Control System
1. The contractor shall furnish and install a complete integration/expansion of the existing LifeGuard Networks IP Based Building Automation and Control System.
    - a. The Contractor shall provide all equipment and labor to integrate the new Fire Alarm Controls with the existing District's control server for a complete and operable system. This shall include the following:
      - 1) Provide and install a LifeGuard Networks SY-MTIP IP GatewayAll necessary modifications, programming and upgrades to the existing SY-FSERX server software.
  2. System features
    - a. Communication protocols include RS-485, RS-232, Cellular, Analog Digital, and 2 way audio.
    - b. Serial interface to addressable FACP and/or dry contacts for conventional fire panels.
    - c. Fourteen (14) inputs and eight (8) programmable outputs
    - d. Complete system monitoring and transmission of data via existing network including event based unlimited email notification, itemized system monitoring of each device, wiring and peripherals. System control and response based upon event data.
    - e. Redundant buffer and onboard 2 gigabyte storage
    - f. VOIP Telephony connection of all networked devices
    - g. Six (6) onboard video ports with expansion to twelve (12) with motion control, remote PTZ and remote view.
    - h. Standard 2 Gigabyte memory with expansion capability to 500 Terabytes
    - i. Embedded Script language with logic control
  3. The fire alarm system installing contractor shall employ the services of a certified LifeGuard Networks system installer to install, train district personnel and maintain all current system warranties. Contact LifeGuard Networks at (978) 212-1312 for local authorized service company.

## 2.2 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

### A. Fire Alarm Control Panel (FACP)

1. Gamewell-FCI E3 Series
  - a. California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) Listing No. 7165-1703:0125
  - b. System Cabinet & Inner Door
    - 1) Gamewell-FCI – Model No. E3BB-RD & E3ID2-D
      - (a) The existing system cabinet surface or mounted with a texture finish and shall consist of a back box, an inner door and a door. The cabinet shall be of dead-front steel construction with an inner door to conceal any internal circuitry and wiring. A minimum of a 1-inch wiring gutter space shall be provided behind the mounting plate. Wiring shall be terminated on

removable terminal blocks to allow field servicing of all modules without disrupting system wiring.

c. Intelligent Loop Interface (Motherboard)

1) Gamewell-FCI – Model No. ILI-MB-E3

- (a) The system shall be of multiprocessor design to allow maximum flexibility of capabilities and operation.
- (b) Field Programmable

- (1) The system shall be capable of being programmed by means of a Field Configuration Program (FCP) allowing programming to be downloaded via portable computer from any node on the network.

(a) RS-232C Serial Output

- (1) A supervised RS-232C serial port shall be provided to operate remote printers and/or video terminals, accept a downloaded program from a portable computer, or provide 80 column readout of all alarms, troubles, location descriptions, time, date, etc. The communication shall be standard ASCII code operating from 1200 to 115,200 baud rate.

(b) RS-485 Serial Output

- (1) Each ILI-MB-E3 shall incorporate an RS-485 bus via a ribbon harness for connection of modules inside the same cabinet, and via a four wire quick connector for connection of modules up to 3000 feet from the cabinet. This RS-485 bus shall support up to sixteen (16) ASM-16 auxiliary switch modules, six (6) LCD-E3 main Annunciators and five (5) LCD-7100 annunciators.

(c) Peer-to-Peer panel configuration.

- (1) All Loop Interface Modules shall incorporate its own programming, log functions, Central Processor Unit, and control by event (CBE) programming. In the event that any loop becomes disabled, each remaining loop driver shall continue to communicate with the remainder of the network and maintain normal operation. "Degrade" configurations under these conditions are not acceptable.

(a) Control-by-Event (CBE) Program

- (1) The ILI-MB-E3 shall be capable of programming using Boolean logic including AND, OR, NOT, and TIMING functions to provide complete programming flexibility.

(a) Alarm Verification

- (1) Smoke detector alarm verification shall be a standard option while allowing other devices (i.e.: manual stations, sprinkler flow, etc.) to create an immediate alarm. This feature shall be selectable for

smoke sensors that are installed in environments prone to nuisance or unwanted alarms.

(a) Alarm Signals

- (1) All alarm signals shall be automatically latched or "locked in" at the control panel until the operated device is returned to normal and the control panel is manually reset. When used for sprinkler flow, the "SIGNAL SILENCE" switch may be bypassed, if required by the AHJ.

(a) Electrically Supervised

- (1) Each SLC and NAC circuit shall be capable shall be electrically supervised for opens, shorts and ground faults. The occurrence of any fault shall activate the system trouble circuitry but shall not interfere with the proper operation of any other circuit.
- (2) A yellow "SYSTEM TROUBLE" LED'S shall light and the system audible sounder shall steadily sound when any trouble is detected in the system. Failure of power, open or short circuits on the SLC or NAC circuits, disarrangement in system wiring, failure of the microprocessor or any identification module, or system ground faults shall activate this trouble circuit. A trouble signal may be acknowledged by operating the "TROUBLE ACKNOWLED'SGE" switch. This shall silence the sounder. If subsequent trouble conditions occur, the trouble circuitry will resound. During an alarm, all trouble signals shall be suppressed with the exception of lighting the yellow "SYSTEM TROUBLE" LED'S.

(b) Drift Compensation - Analog Smoke Sensors

- (1) System software shall automatically adjust each analog smoke sensor approximately once each week for changes in sensitivity due to the effects of component aging or environment (i.e.: dust). Each sensor shall maintain its actual sensitivity under adverse conditions to respond to alarm conditions while ignoring the factors which generally contribute to nuisance alarms. The system trouble circuitry shall activate, display "DIRTY DETECTOR" and "VERY DIRTY DETECTOR" indications and identify the individual unit that requires maintenance.

(c) Analog Smoke Sensor Test

- (1) System software shall automatically test each analog smoke sensor a minimum of three times daily. The test shall be a recognized functional test of each photocell (analog photoelectric sensors) and ionization chamber (analog ionization sensors) as required annually by NFPA 72. Failure of a sensor shall activate the system trouble circuitry, display a "Test Failed" indication, and identify the individual device that failed.

(d) Off-Premises Connection

- (1) The fire alarm system shall be connected via Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT) and telephone lines to a central station or remote station. The panel shall contain a disconnect switch to allow testing of the system without notifying the fire department.
- (e) Central Station Option
  - (1) The fire alarm control panel shall provide an integral Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT) for signaling to a Central Station. The DACT shall contain a "Dialer-Runaway" feature preventing unnecessary transmissions as the result of intermittent faults in the system and shall be Carrier Access Code (CAC) compliant, accepting up to 20-digit central station telephone numbers. The fire department shall be consulted as to the authorized central station companies serving the municipality. The fire alarm system shall transmit both alarm and trouble signals with the alarm having priority over the trouble signal. The contractor shall be responsible for all installation charges, while the customer shall be responsible for the line lease charges.
- (f) Network Annunciator Option
  - (1) Each ILI-MB-E3 and associated display shall provide the option of being configured as a network annunciator. The options for annunciation shall default as a regional annunciator with the capability of selecting global annunciation to provide system wide protection as well as Acknowledge, Silence, and Reset capabilities.
- (g) Redundant History Log
  - (1) Each ILI-MB-E3 shall contain a full 4100 event history log supporting local and network functions. In the event that a main processor or network node is lost the entire log shall be accessible at any other Loop Interface board.
- (h) LED'S Indicator and Outputs
  - (1) Each ILI-MB-E3 Loop Interface shall incorporate as a minimum the following Diagnostic LED'S indicators:
    - (2) Power (green)
    - (3) Alarm (red)
    - (4) Supervisory (yellow)
    - (5) General Trouble (yellow)
    - (6) Ground Fault (yellow)
    - (7) Transmit (green)
    - (8) Receive (green)
- (i) Auxiliary Power Outputs
  - (1) Each ILI-MB-E3 Loop Interface shall provide the following supply outputs as follows:
    - (2) 24 VDC Non-resettable, 1 amp. max., power limited.
    - (3) 24 VDC Resettable, 1 amp. max., power limited.

(j) Microprocessor

- (1) The Loop interface shall incorporate a 32 bit RISC processor. An isolated "watchdog" circuit shall monitor the microprocessor and upon failure shall activate the system trouble circuits on the display. The microprocessor shall access the system program, for all control-by-event (CBE) functions. The system program shall not be lost upon failure of both primary and secondary power. Programming shall supporting Boolean logic including AND, OR, NOT, TIME DELAY functions for maximum flexibility.

(k) Auto Programming

- (1) The system shall provide means for all SLC devices on any SLC loop to be pre-programmed into the system. Upon activation of auto programming, only the devices that are present will activate. This allows for a system to be commissioned in phases without the need of additional downloads.

(l) Environmental Drift Compensation

- (1) The system shall provide means for setting Environmental Drift Compensation by device. When a detector accumulates dust in the chamber and reaches an unacceptable level but yet still below the allowed limit, the control panel shall indicate a maintenance alert warning. When the detector accumulates dust in the chamber above the allowed limit, the control panel shall indicate a maintenance urgent warning.

(m) One-Man Walk Test

- (1) The system shall provide both a basic and advanced walk test for testing the entire fire alarm system. The basic walk test shall allow a single operator to run audible tests on the panel. All logic equation automation shall be suspended during the test and while annunciators can be enabled for the test, all shall default to the disabled state. During an advanced walk test, field-supplied output point programming will react to input stimuli such as CBE and logic equations. When points are activated in advanced test mode, each initiating event shall latch the input. The advanced test shall be audible and shall be used for pull station verification, magnet activated tests on input devices, input and output device and wiring operation/verification.
- (2) This test feature is simply intended to provide for certain random spot testing of the system and is not intended to comply with the requirements of testing fire alarm systems in accordance with NFPA 72, as it is impossible to test all of the functions and verify things such as annunciation with only one person.

(n) Signaling Line Circuits

- (1) Each ILI-MB-E3 module shall provide communication with all analog/addressable (initiation/control) devices via two (2) signaling line circuits. Each signaling line circuit shall be capable of being wired Class B, Style 4 or Class A, Style 6. The circuits shall be capable of operating in an NFPA Style 7 configuration when equipped with isolator modules between each module type device and isolator sensor bases. Each circuit shall communicate with a maximum of ninety-nine (99) analog sensors and ninety-eight (99) addressable monitor/control devices. A unique 40 character identifier shall be available for each device. The devices shall be of the Velocity series with the capability to poll 10 devices at a time with a maximum polling time of 2 seconds when both SLC's are fully loaded.
- (o) Notification Appliance Circuits
  - (1) Two (2) independent NAC circuits shall be provided on the ILI-MB, polarized and rated at 2 amperes DC per circuit, individually over current protected and supervised for opens, grounds, and short circuits. They shall be capable of being wired Class B, Style Y, or Class A, Style Z.
- (p) Alarm Dry Contacts
  - (1) Alarm dry contacts (Form C) shall be provided and shall be rated 2 amps @ 30 VDC (resistive) and shall transfer whenever a system alarm occurs.
- (q) Supervisory Dry Contacts
  - (1) Supervisory dry contacts (Form C) shall be provided and shall be rated 2 amps @ 30 VDC (resistive) and shall transfer whenever a system Supervisory condition occurs.
- (r) Trouble Dry Contacts
  - (1) Trouble dry contacts (Form C) shall be provided and shall be rated at 2 amps @ 30 VDC (resistive) and shall transfer whenever a system trouble occurs.
- b. Intelligent Loop Interface (Supplementary board) – Optional
  - 1) Gamewell-FCI – Model No. ILI-S-E3
    - (a) Signaling Line Circuits



- (1) Each ILI-S-E3 module shall provide communication with analog/addressable (initiation/control) devices via two (2) additional signaling line circuits. Each signaling line circuit shall be capable of being wired Class B, Style 4 or Class A, Style 6. The circuits shall be capable of operating in an NFPA Style 7 configuration when equipped with isolator modules between each module type device and isolator sensor bases. Each circuit shall communicate with a maximum of ninety-nine (99) analog sensors and ninety-eight (99) addressable monitor/control devices. A unique 40 character identifier shall be available for each device. The devices shall be of the Velocity series with the capability to poll 10 devices at a time with a maximum polling time of 2 seconds when both SLC's are fully loaded.

c. Voice Gateway Module

1) Gamewell-FCI – INI-VG

- (a) The INI-VG shall incorporate the following features:

- (1) Support up to 150 watts of audio power thru the use of AM-50 series amplifiers
- (2) Support up to 16 switch modules for a total of 256 switches
- (3) Support for 16 messages with up to a 3 minute duration

d. Amplifier Module

1) Gamewell-FCI – AM-50

- (a) The AM-50 shall incorporate the following features:

- (1) 50 watts at 25/70 Vrms per DSA plans
- (2) Two speaker circuits

e. LCD Display Module

1) Gamewell-FCI - Model No. LCD-E3

- (a) The LCD display shall be an 80 character RS-485 based textual annunciator with the capability of being mounted locally or remotely. It provides audible and visual annunciation of all alarms and trouble signals. Dedicated LED's shall be provided for:

- (1) AC Power On (green)
- (2) Alarm (red)
- (3) Supervisory (yellow)
- (4) System Trouble (yellow)
- (5) Power Fault (yellow)
- (6) Ground Fault (yellow)
- (7) System Silenced (yellow)

- (b) The 80-character alphanumeric display shall provide status of all analog/addressable sensors, monitor and control modules. The display

shall be of the liquid crystal type (LCD), clearly visible in the dark and under all light conditions.

(c) The panel shall contain four (4) functional keys:

- (1) Alarm Acknowledge
- (2) Trouble Acknowledge
- (3) Signal Silence
- (4) System Reset/Lamp Test

(d) The panel shall contain three (3) configuration buttons:

- (1) Menu/Back
- (2) Back Space/Edit
- (3) OK/Enter

(e) It shall also have a 12-key telephone style keypad which shall permit selection of functions.

f. Auxiliary Switch Module

1) Gamewell-FCI - Model. No. ASM-16

- (a) Each ASM-16 has sixteen (16) programmable push-button switches.
- (b) Each push-button switch has three (3) associated status LED's (red, yellow, green), configurable to indicate any combination of functions.
- (c) Flexible switch configurations to allow flexible set-up of phone, speaker and auxiliary function circuits.
- (d) An insertable label to identify the function of each switch and LED'S combination.
- (e) Specialty modules that only perform one task such as Speaker, Phone, or Auxiliary are not acceptable.

g. Network Repeater Module

1) Gamewell-FCI – Model No. RPT-E3

- (a) The Intelligent Network Interface shall provide interconnection and protection of remote network nodes. The repeater shall regenerate and condition the token passing, 625 k-baud signal between units. The Repeater shall be available in wire, fiber, or wire/fiber configurations as determined by field conditions.
- (b) Fiber configurations shall utilize "ST" type connectors and be able to operate with up to 200-micron multi-mode fiber, but optimize for 62.5/125. The interface shall have a jumper to allow selection of ground detection of wiring when used in the wire mode. The interface shall have integral LED's to display current status of the board.

### PART 3 - Gamewell-FCI Focal Point - Command and Control System.

3.01 In addition to the existing Focal Point Command and Control System, provide one new

Gamewell-FCI Focal Point Command and Control System.

- 3.02 System shall be U.L. listed.
- 3.03 System shall include the U.L. workstation.
- 3.04 Provide one touch screen monitor with the system.
- 3.05 System shall be installed and programmed at an off-site location.
- 3.06 Location to be determined post bid.
- 3.07 Configure system and software for offsite application.
- 3.08 Provide integration with existing Focal Point system
- 3.09 New system shall incorporate all existing Graphic Mapping from original system.
- 3.10 Provide control functionality of all existing Gamewell-FCI systems.
- 3.11 Setup to include all network configuration at the local and off site locations.
- 3.12 Provide backup capabilities for system screens, user, and history databases.
- 3.13 Provide labeling as directed by owner. Coordinate custom labels and locations with owner, i.e. HAZMAT, handicapped accessible areas, and gas/electric shutoffs.

A. CENTRALIZED AUTOMATION AND CONTROL SYSTEM

- 1. IP Gateway
  - a. LifeGuard Networks - Model No. SY-MTIP
  - b. Communication protocols include RS-485, RS-232, Cellular, Analog Digital, and 2 way audio.
  - c. Serial interface to addressable FACP and/or dry contacts for conventional fire panels.
  - d. Fourteen (14) inputs and eight (8) programmable outputs
  - e. Complete system monitoring and transmission of data via existing network including event based unlimited email notification, itemized system monitoring of each device, wiring and peripherals. System control and response based upon event data.

- f. Redundant buffer and onboard 2 gigabyte storage
  - g. VOIP Telephony connection of all networked devices
  - h. Six (6) onboard video ports with expansion to twelve (12) with motion control, remote PTZ and remote view.
- 1) Standard 2 Gigabyte memory with expansion capability to 500 Terabytes.
  - 1) Embedded Script language with logic control
- 2. The fire alarm system installing contractor shall employ the services of a certified LifeGuard Networks system installer to install, train district personnel and maintain all current system warranties. Contact LifeGuard Networks at (978) 212-1312 for local authorized service company.

#### B. ADDRESSABLE MODULES

- 1. Addressable Monitor Module
  - a. Gamewell-FCI – Model No. AMM-4F
    - 1) California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) Listing No. 7300-1703:0102
    - 2) An addressable monitor module with an initiating circuit wired Class B, Style B shall be furnished to provide an address for individual, normally open (N.O.) contact devices.
- 2. Addressable Output Module
  - a. Gamewell-FCI – Model No. AOM-2SF
    - 1) California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) Listing No. 7300-1703:0102
    - 2) An addressable output module shall be connected to the same signaling line circuit as the analog/addressable monitor devices and shall provide a relay output (Form "C" 2 amp @ 24 VDC, resistive only).

#### C. INITIATING DEVICES

- 1. Addressable Sensors
  - a. Two LEDs providing 360-degree visibility of operating status and alarm indication shall be provided on each sensor. The LEDs shall pulse periodically indicating that the sensor is receiving power and communication is taking place. This feature shall be field programmable. Upon alarm, these LEDs shall light continuously. An alarm output shall be available for remote annunciation.
  - b. Each sensor shall be interchangeable with all other spot type addressable sensors via twistlock mounting base, to ensure matching the proper sensor to the potential hazards of the areas being protected. In all cases the system shall recognize when an improper sensor type has been installed in a previously programmed sensor type location.
  - c. Analog Photoelectric Smoke Sensors
    - 1) Gamewell-FCI – Model No. ASD-PL2F
      - a) California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) Listing No. 7272-1703:0121

- b) Operating temperature rating: 32° F to 120° F (0° C to 49° C)
- c) Air velocity rating: 0-4000 ft./min. (suitable for installation in ducts)
- d) Relative humidity rating: 10-93% (non-condensing)
- e) Maximum recommended spacing in low airflow applications on smooth ceilings is 30'
- f) Analog photoelectronic sensors shall have a low profile and be capable of being set at four sensitivity settings of: "LOW, LOW MEDIUM, MEDIUM, MEDIUM HIGH, and HIGH" levels.
- g) Automatic and manual functional sensitivity and performance tests shall be possible without the necessity of generating smoke. This method shall test all sensor circuitry and a "Failed Test" indication shall display for any failed test.
- h) The system shall check the sensitivity of each sensor periodically. If a sensor alarm threshold sensitivity has changed, due to aging and/or dust accumulation, the system shall automatically compensate for this change (drift compensation).
- i) Each sensor shall allow for the setting of two sensitivity levels. These levels may be programmed so that when the building is occupied, a sensor will be less sensitive than when the building is unoccupied. This feature permits sensors to be more reliable and at the same time reduces/minimizes unwanted alarms. This feature shall also provide for programmable weekend days, where the sensor will remain at an unoccupied sensitivity level.
- j) The sensor screen and cover assembly shall be removable for field cleaning.
- k) This method shall test all sensor circuitry and a "Failed Test" indication shall display for any failed test.
- l) The system shall check the sensitivity of each sensor periodically. If a sensor alarm threshold sensitivity has changed, due to aging and/or dust accumulation, the system shall automatically compensate for this change (drift compensation).
- m) Each sensor shall allow for the setting of two sensitivity levels. These levels may be programmed so that when the building is occupied, a sensor will be less sensitive than when the building is unoccupied. This feature permits sensors to be more reliable and at the same time reduces/minimizes unwanted alarms. This feature shall also provide for programmable weekend days, where the sensor will remain at an unoccupied sensitivity level.
- n) The sensor screen and cover assembly shall be removable for field cleaning.

d. Addressable Thermal Sensor

1) Combination Rate-of-Rise and Fixed Temperature

- a) Gamewell-FCI – Model No. ATD-RL2F / ATD-HL2F Series
  - (1) California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) Listing No. 7270-1703:0115
  - (2) Operating temperature rating: -4° F to 100° F (-20° C to 38° C)
  - (3) Relative humidity rating: 10-93% (non-condensing)
  - (4) UL approved for 50 ft. center to center maximum spacing
  - (5) Addressable thermal sensor shall have a low profile and operate on the combination "rate-of-rise" and "fixed temperature" principles

- (a) Rate-of-rise detection threshold of 15° F (8.3° C) per minute
- (b) Fixed temperature set point: 135° F (57° C)

- (6) The sensor shall contain dual thermistor sensing circuitry for fast response.

2. Manual Fire Alarm Stations

a. Addressable Fire Alarm Station

- 1) Gamewell-FCI – Model No. MS-7AF
- 2) California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) Listing No. 7150-1703:0119
- 3) Furnish and install a manual station (MS-7AF) as indicated on the drawings. Each station shall be of the non-coded double action type and shall be designed for installation in the signaling line circuit of any GAMEWELL-FCI analog addressable control panel. Activation of the station shall cause its assigned address to register at the control panel. The door shall contain an LED which flashes red in normal condition and lights steadily when the station has been activated. The station shall feature screw terminals.

D. NOTIFICATION DEVICES

1. Speaker – Outdoor Weatherproof

a. System Sensor - Model No. SPRK

- 1) California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) Listing No. 7320-1653:0201
- 2) Rotary switch selection for voltage and power.
- 3) Shall be suitable for mounting on the wall.
- 4) Shall be surface mounted.
- 5) Finish shall be red.
- 6) All exterior mounted horns shall be weatherproof and shall be complete with weatherproof backbox.

2. Visual Strobe Appliance – Indoor Wall Mount

a. System Sensor Model No. SR/SCR - Indoor Wall Mount

- 1) California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) Listing No. 7125-1653:0186
- 2) Shall operate on 24 VDC nominal.
- 3) Shall be capable of synchronization.
- 4) Shall be field selectable Multi-candela devices. To minimize spare parts stocking requirements, devices with single candela ratings will not be acceptable on this project.
  - a) Field selectable candela ratings shall be 15, 30, 75 or 110.
  - b) Intensity shall be as specified on the drawings.
- 5) Shall meet the requirements of the ADA and UL 1971.
  - a) The maximum pulse duration shall be 2/10ths of one second
  - b) The flash rate shall be one flash per every second.

- 6) Finish shall be red.
- 7) The appliance shall be semi-flush or surface wall mount as indicated on plans, locate appliance 80" above finish floor to bottom of device, or 6" below the ceiling, whichever is lower.

3. Combination Audible/Visual Horn/Strobe Appliance – Indoor Wall Mount

a. System Sensor - Model No. SPSR/SPSCR

- 1) California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) Listing No. 7125-1653:0201
- 2) Rotary switch selection for voltage and power.
- 3) Shall meet the requirements of Section 3 listed above for visibility.
- 4) Finish shall be red.
- 5) The appliance shall be semi-flush or surface wall mount as indicated on plans, locate appliance 80" above finish floor to bottom of device, or 6" below the ceiling, whichever is lower.

3.14 CABLE/WIRE

A. All fire alarm system cable and/or wire shall be run in conduit or raceways

B. Signaling Line Circuit (SLC) and Annunciator data cable

1. Indoor dry location

a. FALCON WIRE #FPLR

- 1) California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) Listing No. 7161-1358:0100
- 2) 16/2 conductor cable, FPL rated, non-plenum, complete with red PVC jacket

C. Initiating Device Circuit (IDC), Notification Appliance Circuit (NAC) and 24 volt DC auxiliary power

1. Speaker circuits

a. #12 AWG THHN/THWN

- 1) California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) listing not applicable

PART 4– EXECUTION

4.1 DIVISION OF WORK

- A. All equipment shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's installation documentation. Any deviation shall require the Contractor to correct the installation without impact to the construction schedule and at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. While all work included under this specification is the complete responsibility of the contractor, the division of actual work listed following shall occur.

1. All conduits with pull cords, all electrical pull boxes, grounding rods, all outlet boxes, terminal cabinets, backboards, etc., which form part of the rough-in work shall be provided and installed completely by the Electrical Contractor. Coordinate as required for proper installation.
2. The balance of the system, including installation of initiating devices, notification appliances, cabling and equipment, making all connections, etc., shall be performed by the System Supplier/Installer (reference Part 1, Section 1.02 of this specification).
3. All 120 VAC power conductors and conduits associated with power circuits to all low voltage system equipment locations shall be provided and installed by the Electrical Contractor.
4. An insulated stranded copper ground wire shall be provided from each equipment cabinet to the building grounding system, in compliance with CEC Article 250, by the Electrical Contractor.
5. Labeling of pullboxes and terminal cabinets shall be provided and installed by the Electrical Contractor.
  - a. All fire alarm junction boxes shall be painted red.

#### 4.2 INSTALLATION

- A. All work shall be completed in strict accordance with all applicable codes and ordinances, by a Gamewell-FCI Elite Partner.
  1. Per California codes all individuals involved in the installation of the fire alarm system shall hold a valid State of California, Division of Apprenticeship Standards (DAS), Fire/Life Safety Technician Certification.
    - a. Evidence of DAS certification shall be provided immediately upon request at the project site.
    - b. Failure to provide evidence of DAS certification shall mandate immediate removal of said individual from the project site
- B. Cable/Wire
  1. All cable/wire for the fire alarm system shall be new, unless otherwise noted on plans.
  2. Raceways containing conductors serving the fire alarm system shall not contain any other conductors. No AC current carrying conductors shall be allowed in the same raceway with DC fire alarm system conductors.
  3. System cable/wire and equipment installation shall be in accordance with good engineering practices and in accordance with the California Electrical Code (CEC). All cable/wire shall test free from all grounds and shorts.
  4. All fire alarm system cable/wire shall be labeled at all points of termination. All labeling shall be based on the room numbers as provided by the Owner or his representative.
  5. Cable Shielding (for voice evacuation):
    - a. Cable shielding shall be connected to common ground at the main communications system terminal board and shall be free from ground at any other point within the system. Cable shields shall be terminated in same manner as conductors.
6. Underground cables



- a. Any cable/wire pulled through manholes or pullboxes located below grade shall be continuous with no splices. The cable/wire shall be intact with no cuts in the protective outer jacket.
- b. Shall be approved for use in underground applications.

#### 4.3 SYSTEM START-UP

- A. All start-up programming and system commissioning shall be performed by a Gamewell-FCI trained and certified technician.

#### 4.4 SYSTEM VERIFICATION

- A. Subsequent to system start-up the system installer shall perform a 100% pre-test to verify that the following features are functioning properly.
  - 1. All notification appliances
  - 2. All initiation devices
  - 3. All control modules
  - 4. All monitor modules
  - 5. Communication link to monitoring service

#### 4.5 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

- A. The system installer shall, in the presence of the Owner's representative and the Inspector of Record (IOR), perform 100% testing as noted in System Verification above.

#### 4.6 IN SERVICE TRAINING

- A. The Contractor shall instruct personnel designated by the Owner in the proper use, basic care and maintenance of the system. Contractor shall provide up to eight hours of in-service training with this system.

#### 4.7 FACTORY TRAINING & CERTIFICATION

- A. The manufacturer shall provide factory certified training to two (2) fire alarm technicians employed by the school district. These technicians shall be trained and certified as manufacturers certified technicians capable of performing any work on the system after the installation of the system.
- B. All cost for training including travel, lodging, meals and per diem shall be included in the Fire Alarm Contractor's bid for this project.

#### 4.8 CONTRACT CLOSE-OUT DOCUMENTATION

- A. Contractor shall provide the following:
  - 1. One reproducible hard copy of project record drawings.

2. One copy of manufacturer's maintenance and operation manuals.
3. One copy of Contractor's system warranty
4. One copy of Manufacturer's warranty
5. One copy of the NFPA 72 Record of Completion

#### 4.9 WARRANTY

- A. The Contractor shall warrant the equipment to be new and free from defects in material and workmanship, and will, within one year from the date of installation, repair or replace any equipment found to be defective.
  1. This warranty shall not apply to any equipment that has been subject to misuse, abuse, negligence or unauthorized modification.
- B. Equipment provided shall be complete with 7-year manufacturer's product warranty on Fire Alarm Control Panel.
  1. This warranty shall not apply to any equipment that has been subject to misuse, abuse, negligence or unauthorized modification.
  2. Manufacturer's warranty shall be provided with system submittal.

#### 4.10 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

- A. The Gamewell-FCI Elite Partner shall, at the owner's request, make available a service contract offering continuing factory authorized service of this system upon expiration of the initial warranty period.
- B. The system manufacturer shall maintain engineering and service departments capable of rendering advice regarding installation and final adjustment of the system.

END OF SECTION 28 31 00

## SECTION 31 10 00 - SITE CLEARING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, services, testing, transportation and equipment necessary for the completion of all site clearing work as required and as indicated on drawings and specified herein. Work materials and equipment not indicated or specified which is necessary for the complete and proper operation of the work of this Section in accordance with the true intent and meaning of the contract documents shall be provided and incorporated at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Removal of surface debris; removal of paving and curbs; removal of trees, shrubs, and other plant life; topsoil excavation; and repair of damaged vegetation and/or irrigation systems/system components.
- C. Removal of concrete and bituminous surfacing.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 01 71 23: Field Engineering.
- B. Section 01 57 23: Temporary Storm Water Pollution Control.
- C. Section 31 22 00: Grading.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. The work provided herein shall conform to and be in accordance with the Contract Plans, General Conditions/Specifications and Special Provisions, as well as the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction ("GREENBOOK"), 2021 Edition, adopted by the Southern California Chapter, American Public Works Association; herein referred to as the "Standard Specifications".

#### 1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. The Contractor shall obtain all necessary permits, licenses, or agreements required by any legally constituted agency, pay for all fees and give all necessary notices required for the construction of the work.
- B. Perform all work of this Section in strict accordance with applicable Government Codes and Regulations especially meeting all safety standards and requirements of CAL/OSHA, County of Los Angeles and the City of Covina. Provide additional measures, added materials and devices as may be needed as directed by the Owner Representative at no added cost to the Owner.
- C. Comply strictly to Rule 403 Fugitive Dust, South Coast Air Quality Management District.
- D. Coordinate clearing Work with utility companies.

## 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.
- C. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures are in place.
- D. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- E. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.
- F. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the topsoil is dry or slightly moist.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Satisfactory Soil Materials: Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Section 31 22 00 – Grading, part 2.01-D.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that existing plant life designated to remain is tagged or identified.
- B. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- C. Identify a waste area for placing removed materials.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to the requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
- C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.

- D. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect existing structures and site improvements indicated to remain from damage by approved methods and/or as authorized by the Owner Representative. Removal of all protections shall be when work of this Section is completed or when so authorized by the Owner Representative.
- B. Protect Existing Utilities indicated or made known to remain traversing the job-site and serving existing adjacent facilities.
- C. Protect Existing Trees and Shrubs indicated to remain by providing temporary surrounding fencing so located a sufficient distance away so that trees and shrubs will not be damaged by site-clearing operations.
  - 1. Protection Barrier: A protection barrier shall be installed around the shrubs or trees to be preserved. The barrier shall be constructed of a durable fencing material, such as plastic construction fencing, snow fence, or chain link. The barrier shall be placed at or beyond the drip line. "Drip line" as referred to herein means a line which may be drawn on the ground around the tree directly under its outermost branch tips and which identifies that location where rainwater tends to drip from the tree. Placement of barrier to be approved by Owner Representative (Grounds Supervisor). If barrier is placed inside the drip line, then 3/4 inch plywood must be placed over the root zone up to the drip line. The fencing shall be maintained in good repair throughout the duration of the project, and shall not be removed, relocated, or encroached upon without permission of the Owner Representative (Grounds Supervisor).
  - 2. Storage of Materials: There shall be NO storage of materials or supplies of any kind within the area of the protection barriers. Concrete, cement, asphalt materials, block, stone, sand and soil shall not be placed within the drip line of the tree(s).
  - 3. Fuel Storage: Fuel storage shall NOT be permitted within 150 feet of any tree to be preserved. Refueling, servicing and maintenance of equipment and machinery shall NOT be permitted within 150 feet of protected trees.
  - 4. Vehicles/equipment: NO parking or driving of vehicles or storage of equipment shall be permitted within the drip line of any tree to be preserved.
  - 5. Debris and Waste Materials: Debris and waste from construction or other activities shall NOT be permitted within protected areas. Wash down of Concrete, cement or asphalt handling equipment, in particular shall NOT be permitted within 150 feet of protected areas.
  - 6. Grade Changes: Grade changes can be particularly damaging to trees. Any grade changes should be approved by the Owner Representative (Grounds Supervisor) before construction begins and precautions taken to mitigate potential injuries.
  - 7. Damages: Any damages or injuries to the preserved trees (including pruning or cutting of such trees not in conformity with the International Society of Arboricultural Pruning Guidelines and ANSI A300 Pruning Standards) shall be reported immediately to the Owner Representative (Grounds Supervisor). Severed roots shall be pruned cleanly to healthy tissue, using proper pruning tools. Broken branches/limbs shall be pruned according to International Society of Arboricultural Pruning Guidelines and ANSI A300

Pruning Standards. In the event that any damage, injury, improper pruning or cutting of a protected tree is deemed to be so substantial as to require its replacement (such determination to be made in the sole discretion of the Owner Representative), Contractor shall replace such tree with the same species and variety of tree, up to a box size of 48 inches, or if no such replacement is available, with a substitute species or variety as determined in the sole discretion of the Owner Representative. Any replacement tree shall be approved in advance by the Owner Representative. The value of the tree to be replaced shall be determined by a Certified Arborist selected by Contractor from the Owner's approved list of Registered Consulting Arborists. To the extent that the value of the replaced tree as determined by the Certified Arborist exceeds the cost of the replacement tree, Contractor shall be liable to Owner for such difference in value in addition to all costs associated with replacement of the damaged tree.

8. Removal of Existing Tree or Shrub: Prior to removing or cutting any trees designated for removal, the contractor shall coordinate with the Owner's Ground Supervisor. In the event that Contractor, a Subcontractor, Sub-Subcontractor, material supplier or anyone else performing the Work of the Contract willfully, negligently or mistakenly removes any tree or shrub not designated for removal, Contractor shall immediately report such removal to the Owner Representative (Grounds Supervisor). Contractor shall replace such tree with the same species and variety of tree, up to a box size of 48 inches, or if no such replacement is available, with a substitute species or variety as determined in the sole discretion of the Owner Representative. Any replacement tree shall be approved in advance by the Owner Representative. The value of the tree to be replaced shall be determined by a Certified Arborist selected by Contractor from the Owner's approved list of Registered Consulting Arborists. To the extent that the value of the replaced tree as determined by the Certified Arborist exceeds the cost of the replacement tree, Contractor shall be liable to Owner for such difference in value in addition to all costs associated with replacement of the damaged tree.
  9. Unauthorized Tree Removal or Injury: Criminal Penalties: Reference is made to California Penal Code §384a which provides that any person who willfully or negligently cuts, destroys, mutilates or removes any tree or shrub or portion thereof growing on public land without a written permit from the owner of said public land is guilty of a misdemeanor, subject to a fine of up to \$1,000, imprisonment in county jail for up to 6 months, or both. Contractor is advised that, in addition to all remedies provided herein and in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall cooperate with appropriate authorities in prosecuting and enforcing Penal Code §384a and other criminal sanctions as appropriate concerning trees and shrubs located on Owner property.
  10. Preventive Measures: Before construction begins fertilization of the affected areas to be applied at a rate to be determined by the Owner Representative (Grounds Supervisor).
- D. Protect bench marks, survey control points, and existing structures from damage or displacement.
- E. Protection of Persons and Property (existing structures and site improvements):
1. Provide barricades, warning signs at open depressions and holes on adjacent property and public accesses.
  2. Provide operating warning lights during hours from dusk to dawn each day or as otherwise required.
  3. Protect existing remaining structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements other facilities from damage as caused by settlement, undermining, washout or other hazards created by site-clearing operations of this Section.

- F. Use means necessary to prevent dust from becoming a nuisance to the public, to neighbors and to others performing work on or near the job-site.
- G. Maintain access to the job-site at all times.

### 3.4 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Clear areas required for access to site and execution of Work.
- B. Remove all rubbish and debris existing and resulting from work operations of this Section as soon as possible, do not allow to pile up. Do not burn rubbish and debris on the job-site.
- C. Where active utility lines need to be capped or plugged, perform such work in accordance with requirements of the Utility Company.

### 3.5 REMOVAL

- A. Remove debris, rock, and extracted plant life from site.
- B. Excavate and remove associated plumbing piping.
- C. Prior to demolition work, the Contractor shall notify the Owner Representative to identify the existing items for salvage purposes. The materials identified for salvage shall be returned to the Owner in a timely manner agreed upon by the Owner Representative.

### 3.6 CONCRETE AND BITUMINOUS SURFACE REMOVAL

- A. Where noted on the construction drawings, break up and completely remove all existing concrete surfacing, curbs, gutters, walks and bituminous surfacing to limits indicated to be removed. All cutting shall be done to a neat and even line with proper tools or a concrete cutting saw. Minimum depth of cut shall be 1-1/2", unless otherwise specified. Remove any concrete broken beyond the indicated limits to the nearest joint or score line and replace with new concrete to match the existing.
- B. Removed concrete and bituminous materials shall be disposed of off-site unless otherwise noted on the construction drawings. All such items to be removed shall be disposed of off the property in a legal manner.
- C. Bituminous pavement saw cutting shall conform to the provisions of Section 300-1.3.2 (a) of the Standard Specifications. The residue resulting from the saw cutting operations shall not be permitted to flow beyond the specific work location and shall be removed the same day.
- D. Removal of concrete curb / curb & gutter covered by this section shall include saw-cutting and removal of a twelve (12") inch wide section of the adjacent bituminous pavement.
- E. When saw cutting concrete curb / curb & gutter, the cuttings shall be continuously wet vacuumed to prevent the materials from entering catch basins, storm water conveyances, or waters of the State. Vacuumed cuttings shall be disposed of according to applicable regulations.
- F. Concrete curb and concrete curb and gutter shall be removed to the lines, grades and locations shown on the plans in accordance with Section 300-1.3.2 of the Standard Specifications.

- G. Concrete removal in sidewalk and driveway areas shall extend to existing score lines unless specifically indicated otherwise on the Plans or in the Project Special Provisions, or unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.
- H. Reinforcing or other steel may be encountered in portions of concrete to be removed. No additional compensation will be allowed for the removal of concrete containing reinforcing or other steel.
- I. In those areas where existing bituminous surfacing is removed to make way for new planting or lawn areas, remove soil 6" below existing exposed soil surface. Removed soil may be used only as fill under buildings or other areas to be paved, only if approved by the Owner Inspector. Legally dispose of off site, if material is not approved as fill material.

### 3.7 REPAIRS

- A. During demolition and construction, ensure that trees, shrubs and other plant material and vegetation are protected inside and outside of the work zone and that the vegetation is being watered, maintaining the proper moisture content according to the season. Failed vegetation, including sod, due to lack of water, and/or plant material destroyed during construction period are to be replaced to equal or better size and condition at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. If the irrigation system is damaged or modified during construction, it shall be repaired to the Owners standards, and shall be in equal or better condition than prior to damage or modification. All repairs shall be, inspected and approved by the Owner Representative (Grounds Supervisor) prior to backfilling or covering of said repairs. The Owner representative requires forty-eight hours prior notice, when contractor requests inspection of completed repairs. All repairs shall be made so as to ensure proper operation prior to the close of the contract at no additional cost to the Owner.
- C. Controller Wires: If damaged, cut or removed, repair by splicing, soldering and silicone sealing. To ensure proper operation, reconnect the wires to the valve to correspond with the map on the controller to the correct station.
- D. Hydraulic Tubes: If damaged/cut or removed, repair by replacing the tubing using equal or better material.
- E. Valves: If damaged, repair/replace with equal or better material. All valves are to be flushed/cleaned thoroughly.
- F. Mainlines: If damaged, repair/replace with equal or better material. All lines are to be flushed/cleaned thoroughly.
- G. Lateral Lines: If damaged, repair/replace with equal or better material. All lines are to be flushed/cleaned thoroughly.
- H. Irrigation Heads: If damaged, repair/replace with equal or better material. All heads are to be flushed and filters cleaned thoroughly.
- I. Controllers: If damaged repair/replace with equal or better material.
- J. Backflow Prevention Devices: If damaged, repair/replace with equal or better material.
- K. Gate/Ball/Quick Coupler Valves: If damaged repair/replace with equal or better material.



- L. Valve Boxes: If damaged, repair/replace with equal or better material. Concrete boxes and concrete lids with the appropriate markings for identification shall be used. The top of the box shall be buried below finish grade, equal to existing depth or deeper. The top of the valve stems shall be 6" below the underside of the top of the box.
- M. Construction in grass areas: Sod shall be removed by sod cutting at a soil depth of 2", stored on site, and watered on a daily basis. Upon completion of work, stored sod shall be reinstalled over the areas disrupted due to construction. An option may be to bypass cutting the sod, however at the completion of the project, finish grading and installation of new Hybrid Bermuda GN -1 sod over the areas disrupted by construction shall be required.

### 3.8 EXCESS MATERIALS DISPOSAL

- A. Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials, including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other non-recyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

### 3.9 SITE CLEANUP

- A. Cleanup of branches, limbs, logs, or any other debris resulting from any operations shall be promptly and properly accomplished. The work area shall be kept safe at all times until all operations are completed. Under no circumstances shall the accumulation of brush, limbs, logs, or other debris be allowed in such a manner as to result in a hazard to the public. All debris shall be cleaned up each day before the work crew leaves the site, unless permission is given by the Owner to do otherwise. All lawn areas shall be raked, all streets and sidewalks shall be swept, and all brush, branches, rocks or other debris shall be removed from the site. Areas are to be left in a condition equal to or better than that which existed prior to the commencement of operations.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 31 22 00 - GRADING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SUMMARY

- A. The work of this section shall include excavation, unclassified cut, unclassified fill, removing existing unsatisfactory material, preparing areas to be filled, spreading and compacting of fill in the areas to be filled, and all other work necessary to complete the grading of the site. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to place, spread, moisten or dry, and compact the fill in strict accordance with these specifications to the lines and grades indicated on project plans or as directed in writing by the Geotechnical Engineer. Included with this Work are the following:
  - 1. General exterior grading, cutting and filling, including grading for building area, paving, planting areas, banks and hillsides.
  - 2. Excavating, filling, backfilling, and compacting for Project site pavement, planting areas, buildings, and other structures.
  - 3. Base course for walks and pavements.
  - 4. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
  - 5. Excavating and backfilling trenches within buildings lines.
  - 6. Excavating and backfilling for underground mechanical and electrical utilities and appurtenances.
  - 7. Excavating and backfilling for decomposed granite fire access road.
  - 8. Shoring plan guidelines.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section.
  - 1. Section 01 71 23 - Field Engineering.
  - 2. Section 32 12 16 - Asphalt Paving.
  - 3. Section 32 13 13 – Concrete Paving.

#### 1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Excavation consists of the removal of material encountered to subgrade elevations and the reuse or disposal of materials removed.
- B. Subgrade: The uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
- C. Borrow: Soil material obtained off site when sufficient approved soil material is not available from excavations.
- D. Base Course: The layer placed between the subgrade and surface pavement in a paving system.
- E. Drainage Fill: Course of washed granular material supporting slab on grade placed to cut off upward capillary flow of pore water.

- F. Permeable Backfill: Provide permeable backfill material behind retaining structures consisting of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed rock, natural sands, manufactured sand, or combinations.
- G. Unauthorized excavation consists of removing materials beyond indicated subgrade elevations or dimensions without direction by the Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by the Architect, shall be at the Contractor's expense.
- H. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man made stationary features constructed above or below ground surface.
- I. Utilities include underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within building lines.

#### 1.03 SUBMITTALS TO CONSTRUCTION MANAGER

- A. General: Submit the following according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for the following:
  - 1. Each type of plastic warning tape.
  - 2. Filter fabric.
- C. Samples of the following:
  - 1. 12 by 12 inch sample of filter fabric.
  - 2. Contractor shall submit a bulk sample of any imported soil or aggregate material to the geotechnical laboratory at least two working days in advance of earth material placement and compaction.
- D. Test Reports: In addition to test reports required under field quality control, submit the following:
  - 1. One optimum moisture-maximum density curve for each soil sample.
  - 2. Laboratory analysis of each soil material proposed for fill or backfill from borrow sources.
- E. Excavation support & protection (shoring) shop drawings for informational purposes: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer for excavation support and protection systems.

#### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards:
  - 1. 2019 California Building Code, Title 24, Part 2, Volume 2 of 2, Appendix J, Grading.
  - 2. ASTM D422 - Method for Particle Size Analysis of Soils
  - 3. ASTM D1556 - Test Method for Density of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method.

4. ASTM D1557 - Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures Using 10-lb (4.54 kg) and 18-inch (457-mm) Drop.
  5. ASTM D2216 - Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil Aggregate Mixtures.
  6. ASTM D2922 - Test Method for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depths).
  7. ASTM D3017 - Test Method for Moisture Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depths).
  8. ASTM D4318 - Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit and Plasticity Index of Soils.
  9. AASHTO T217 - Determination of Moisture in Soils by Means of a Calcium Carbide Gas Pressure Meter.
  10. ASTM D4829 - Expansion Index Test.
- B. The work provided herein shall conform to and be in accordance with the Contract Plans, General Conditions/Specifications and Special Provisions, as well as the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction ("GREENBOOK"), 2021 Edition, adopted by the Southern California Chapter, American Public Works Association; herein referred to as the "Standard Specifications".
- C. Comply with all requirements of permit for export of soil from site. Permit is to be obtained and paid for by Contractor. Furnish copies of all permits and licenses required by the City of Covina to Owner's representative.
- D. Professional Observation: A soils engineer will be retained by the Owner for purposes of inspection, testing and approval of all work under this section. Perform work of this Section under inspection and approval of the soils engineer. Give soils engineer not less than 48 hours advance notice of readiness for inspection.
- E. The soils engineer will have the authority over all filling, grading, and compaction operations, including interruption of work if deemed necessary due to improper work
- F. Pre-Grading Conference:
1. Before commencing earthwork operations, meet with representatives of the governing authorities, Owner, Architect, consultants, Geotechnical Engineer, independent testing agency, and other concerned entities. Review earthwork procedures and responsibilities including testing and inspection procedures and requirements. Notify participants at least 3 working days prior to convening conference. Record discussions and agreements and furnish a copy to each participant.

#### 1.05 CONSTRUCTION MONITORING

- A. All earthwork and foundation construction should be monitored by a qualified engineer/technician under the supervision of a Geotechnical Engineer, including:
1. Observation of all site preparations;
  2. Observation of shoring installation, if needed:

3. Observation of all site excavations;
  4. Test and approval of all import soil;
  5. Observation of placement of all compacted fills and backfills;
  6. Observation of all surface and subsurface drainage systems;
  7. Observation of all foundation and pile excavations;
  8. Observation of subgrade preparation for paved and building areas.
- B. The Geotechnical Engineer of Record should be notified at least three (3) days in advance of the start of construction. A joint meeting between the Contractor and Geotechnical Engineer is recommended prior to the start of construction to discuss specific procedures and scheduling. The Geotechnical Engineer should be present to observe the soil conditions encountered during construction, to evaluate the applicability of the recommendations presented in the Soils Report to the soil conditions encountered, and to recommend appropriate changes in design or construction if conditions differ from those described herein. The Geotechnical Engineer of Record should inspect and approve all imported backfill material prior to its placement as backfill, approve the subgrade beneath all fills, fill placement and bottom of all foundation excavations before concrete or steel is placed.
- C. The Geotechnical Engineer shall submit compaction reports to the Construction Manager and the Civil Engineer at the completion of the work, including test results and plot plans indicating the locations from which the tested samples of fill were taken. The Geotechnical Engineer shall keep the Construction Manager informed on the progress of the grading work.

#### 1.06 IMPORT AND EXPORT OF EARTH MATERIALS

- A. Fees: Pay as required by government authority having jurisdiction over the area.
- B. Bonds: Post as required by government authority having jurisdiction over the area.
- C. Hauling Routes and Restrictions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction over the area.

#### 1.07 DIG ALERT NOTIFICATION

- A. Before any excavation in or near the public right-of-way, the Contractor must contact the Underground Service Alert of Southern California (Dig Alert) at 811 for information on buried utilities and pipelines.
- B. Delineation of the proposed excavation site is mandatory. Mark the area to be excavated with water soluble or chalk based white paint on paved surfaces or with other suitable markings such as flags or stakes on unpaved areas.
- C. Call at least Two (2) full working days prior to digging.
- D. If the members (utility companies) have facilities within the work area, they will mark them prior to the start of your excavation and if not, they will let you know there is no conflict. A different color is used for each utility type (electricity is marked in red, gas in yellow, water in blue, sewer in green, telephone and cable TV in orange).

- E. The Law requires you to hand expose to the point of no conflict 24" (inches) on either side of the underground facility, so you know its exact location before using power equipment.
- F. If caught digging without a Dig Alert ticket you can be fined as much as \$50,000 per California government code 4216.

#### 1.08 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

- A. Where investigations of subsurface conditions have been made by the Owner with respect to subsurface conditions, utilities, foundation, or other structural designs, and that information is shown in the Plans, it represents only a statement by the Owner as to the character of materials which have actually been encountered by the Owner's investigation. This information is only included for the convenience of Bidders.
- B. Investigations of subsurface conditions are made for the purpose of design only. The Owner assumes no responsibility with respect to the sufficiency or accuracy of borings or of the log of test borings or other preliminary investigations or of the interpretation thereof. There is no guaranty, either expressed or implied, that the conditions indicated are representative of those existing throughout the Work, or any part of it, or that unanticipated conditions may not occur. When a log of test borings is included in the Plans, it is expressly understood and agreed that said log of test borings does not constitute a part of the Contract. The log of test borings represents only an opinion of the Owner as to the character of the materials to be encountered, and is included in the Plans only for the convenience of the Bidders. Making information available to Bidders is not to be construed in any way as a waiver of the provisions of the first paragraph of this Section, and Bidders must satisfy themselves through their own investigations as to conditions to be encountered.

#### 1.09 GRADING

- A. If the Contractor encounters any suspected cultural resource, or unique archaeological or paleontological resource, during the course of construction, the Contractor shall halt or divert work and notify the OWNER Representative immediately. The OWNER will evaluate the situation and if warranted, will consult with a qualified archeologist or paleontologist to determine further actions.
- B. If human remains are encountered unexpectedly during construction excavation and grading activities, the State Health and Safety Code Section 7050.5 requires that no further disturbance shall occur until the County Coroner has made the necessary findings as to origin and disposition pursuant to PRC Section 5097.98, and the Contractor will notify the OWNER Representative immediately. If the remains are determined to be of Native American descent, the coroner has 24 hours to notify the Native American Heritage Commission.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Data: Maps, boring logs, geotechnical and foundation investigation reports, and like reference data, not included in Contract Documents but made available to Contractor by Architect or Owner are for information only, and the Architect and Owner assume no responsibility for any conclusions Contractor may draw from such information. Should questions or issues arise, contact Architect or Owner for clarification.
- B. Contractor shall determine existing conditions under which the Contractor will operate in performing the Work.

- C. A geotechnical investigation report prepared by MTGL Inc, Project No. 2460A27, dated November 28, 2022 has been prepared for this project. Prior to bidding or performing the work of this project, the contractor shall obtain a copy of these reports, and shall thoroughly familiarize himself/herself with its contents. Any information obtained from such reports, or any information given on any drawings as to subsurface soil conditions or to elevations of existing elevations or elevations of underlying rock, is approximate only, is not guaranteed, and does not form a part of the contract, unless specifically referenced in the Contract Documents. The Contractor is required to make a visual inspection of the Project Premises and must (and is permitted to) make whatever tests the Contractor deems appropriate to determine and assess the underground condition of the soil. No claims for allowances or damages because of the Contractor's negligence or failure in acquainting itself with the conditions of the Project Premises as described herein will be recognized by the Owner
- D. Information on Drawings does not constitute a guarantee of accuracy or uniformity of soil conditions over the Project site.
- E. Existing utilities: Locate existing underground utilities in all areas of work prior to excavation or commencement of work. If utilities are to remain in place provide adequate means of protection during earthwork operations.
  - 1. Should uncharted, or incorrectly charted piping or other utilities be encountered during excavation, consult Utility Owner immediately for direction. Cooperate with Owner and Utility companies in keeping respective services and facilities in operation. Repair damaged utilities to the satisfaction of Utility Company.
  - 2. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied or used by Owner, or others, except when permitted in writing by Owner's Representative, and then only after acceptable temporary services have been provided.
  - 3. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies for shut off of services if lines are active.
- F. Noise and Dust Abatement: Exercise all reasonable and necessary means to abate dust, dirt rising and undue noise. Perform necessary sprinkling and wetting of construction site to allay dust as required by applicable codes and ordinances.
- G. Water for Grading: Contractor shall obtain and pay for all water required for his grading operation. This may include, but is not limited to, payment of deposits to utility for construction meter, and payment of all monthly service and water charges. Construction meter shall be in place throughout construction period unless alternative arrangements are made with the City of Covina Water Department to provide construction water for all purposes. Contractor shall be aware of water moratoriums and restrictions, and shall immediately advise Owner of effects on construction schedules.
- H. Existing Conditions: Prior to commencing work at site, verify agreement of existing conditions with indicated conditions. Notify Owner's Representative in writing of discrepancies found. Start of work without notification constitutes acceptance of conditions, without cause for extra compensation.
- I. Field obstructions, grade differences or differences in dimensions may exist that might not have been considered or observed during design of this project. Contractor shall promptly notify the Engineer and the Agency having jurisdiction by telephone and in writing upon discovery of and before disturbing, any physical conditions differing from those

represented by approved plans and specifications. In the event this notification is not performed, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility for necessary revisions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: All soils materials to be used throughout the site shall be approved for use by the Geotechnical testing engineer. Provide approved borrow soil materials from off-site when sufficient approved soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. No earthwork analysis has been completed with respect to the volumes of soils to be excavated, placed, or imported in order to provide the finished grades shown on the plans. The Contractor is solely responsible for verifying the earthwork quantities necessary to complete the project.
- C. Satisfactory Soil Materials: The excavated site soils, free of vegetation, organics, debris, and oversize rock materials may be placed as compacted fill in structural areas after proper processing. Sediments larger than 6.0 inches in the largest dimension should not be placed as fill. Any on-site soils with an expansion index exceeding 50 should not be re-used for compaction under hardscape, concrete slabs or the swimming pool. Soils containing organic materials (roots, grass, plants, etc.) should not be used as structural fill. The extent of removal should be determined by the geotechnical representative based on soil observations during grading.
- D. Base Course Material For Use Under Asphalt and Concrete Pavement: Crushed aggregate base material shall consist of materials that meet the provisions listed below.
  - 1. Crushed Aggregate Base (CAB) per Section 200-2.2, 3/4" maximum of the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction (Green Book).
  - 2. Crushed miscellaneous base (CMB) is not acceptable.
- E. Engineered Fill
  - 1. Refer to the project geotechnical report section 4.01.4 Fill Materials.
- F. Bedding Material for Trenches:
  - 1. Bedding sand shall be as defined by Standard Specifications, Section 200-1.5, and shall be free of expansive material and organic matter. Bedding material for utility lines outside the property lines shall be as required by the agency having jurisdiction. On-site soils are not considered suitable for bedding or shading of utilities.
  - 2. Sand providing a sand equivalent of at least 30. All of the sand bedding shall be compacted to a minimum 90 percent of maximum density as indicated in the Contract Documents by mechanical means. Flooding and jetting shall not be permitted without prior written approval from the Geotechnical Engineer. Where sheeting or shoring is used densification of the bedding shall be accomplished after the sheeting or shoring has been removed from the bedding zone, unless the sheeting or shoring is to be cut off or left in place. Pipe bedding material shall be placed in horizontal layers not exceeding (8) eight inches.
  - 3. The use of gravel is not acceptable unless approved by the civil engineer of record.



G. Imported Fill

1. Refer to the project geotechnical report section 4.01.6 Imported Soils.

H. Backfill Material for Trenches:

1. The on-site soils have been determined to be suitable for being used for backfilling purposes in trenches. Utility trenches should be backfilled with granular materials and mechanically compacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry density of the soils in the upper 12-inches below hardscape base material and 90% minimum below that.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid and alkali-resistant polyethylene film metallic warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick minimum, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep.

1. Tape Colors: Provide tape colors to utilities as follows:
  - a. Red: Fire Water & Electric.
  - b. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
  - c. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
  - d. Blue: Potable Water systems, with "Caution: Water Line Below."
  - e. Green: Sewer systems, with "Caution: Sewer Line Below."
  - f. Green: Storm systems, with "Caution; Storm Drain Line Below."

2.03 EXCAVATION SUPPORT & PROTECTION – SHORING PLAN

- A. The CONTRACTOR shall have at the Worksite, copies or suitable extracts of: Construction Safety Orders, Tunnel Safety Orders and General Industry Safety Orders issued by the State Division of Industrial Safety. The CONTRACTOR shall comply with provisions of these and all other applicable laws, ordinances, and regulations.
- B. Before excavating any trench 5 feet or more in depth, the CONTRACTOR shall submit a detailed plan to the Owner showing the design of shoring, bracing, sloping, or other revisions to be made for the Workers' protection from the hazard of caving ground during the excavation of such trench. If the plan varies from the shoring system standards, the plan shall be prepared by a registered Civil Engineer. No excavation shall start until the OWNER has accepted the plan and the CONTRACTOR has obtained a permit from the State Division of Industrial Safety. A copy of the permit shall be submitted to the OWNER.
- C. The INSPECTOR will provide a competent person trench/excavation certification form to the CONTRACTOR. It shall be completely filled out before any worker has access to trench or excavation and returned to the INSPECTOR before the end of the first working day. The CONTRACTOR shall certify by this form the name of the competent person administering the Work, the soil classification, and the type of excavation protective system provided and/or installed.

- D. The CONTRACTOR shall completely fence all excavations to provided protection against anyone falling into the excavation and to the satisfaction of the INSPECTOR. The fencing shall be in place at all times except when workers are present and actual construction operations are in progress.
- E. The fencing material shall be chain link fabric or welded wire fabric (6x6-W9xW9 minimum) and 6 feet high, constructed according to one of the following:
  - 1. Tensioned fencing material and have top and bottom tension wires securely fastened to driven steel posts or other equally rigid elements at a maximum spacing of 12 feet; or
  - 2. Untensioned fencing materials securely fastened to extended trench shoring elements at a maximum spacing of 8 feet and fastened to continuous top and bottom rails constructed of nominal 2 in x 4 in lumber or equally rigid material. Framed panels with suitable supporting elements fastened together to form a continuous fence may also be used.
- F. Payment for performing all work necessary to provide safety measures shall be included in the prices bid for other items of work except where separate bid items for excavation safety are provided, or required by law.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Protect adjacent property and existing improvements and structures as necessary to prevent undermining, caving of cuts, and miscellaneous damage.
- B. Provide cribbing, sheeting, and shoring necessary to safely retain the earth banks and protect excavations and adjoining grades from caving and other damage resulting from excavating together with suitable forms of protection against bodily injury to personnel employed on the work and the general public. Be responsible for the design, installation, and maintenance of required cribbing and shoring and shall meet the approval of the State Division of Industrial Safety and local governing agencies requirements.
- C. Utility lines and structures shown shall be protected and treated as indicated. Where work not shown is encountered, report it to the Architect before proceeding with excavation. Encase active lines in sleeves where they pass through concrete; remove inactive lines as directed, and plug the remaining ends. Bear the costs for repairs to damaged or broken utilities and any damages related thereto.
- D. Protect existing improvements and adjacent properties from storm damage and flood hazard originating on this project until final acceptance by the Owner. Prevent silt run-off from the limits of work in accordance with governmental requirements.
- E. A minimum 6 foot high, temporary chain link fence with visual screen and gates, (pair 26' wide, minimum) shall be erected prior to any grading operations at the construction limits perimeter. Coordinate the exact location with Architect and OWNER.

#### 3.02 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and subsurface or ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area. Any water entering an excavation shall be immediately pumped out and the exposed excavation allowed to dry.

- B. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from softening and damage by rain or water accumulation.

### 3.03 GRADE STAKES

- A. The Contractor's Surveyor will set grade stakes. The Surveyor shall be a California registered land surveyor or licensed Civil Engineer. The Surveyor shall be hired and paid by the Contractor, and shall be subject to the approval of the OWNER. Contractor shall notify the OWNER at least 48 hours before staking is to be started. The OWNER will determine if work is ready for staking.
- B. All work shall conform to the lines, elevations, and grades shown on the Construction Plans. Three consecutive points set on the same slope shall be used together so that any variation from a straight grade can be detected. Any such variation shall be reported to the Engineer. In the absence of such report, the Contractor shall be responsible for any error in the grade of the finished work.
- C. Protect and maintain stakes in place until their removal is approved by the OWNER. Grade or location stakes lost or disturbed by Contractor, shall be reset by the Surveyor at the expense of Contractor.
- D. Grades for underground conduits will be set at the surface of the ground. The Contractor shall transfer them to the bottom of the trench.

### 3.04 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

- A. All import fill material shall be characterized, handled, and documented in accordance with applicable US EPA and State of California hazardous waste and hazardous materials regulations.
- B. "Contaminated" shall mean any soil or geotechnical material at a concentration, which would require disposal at a regulated facility (i.e., California hazardous or RCRA hazardous).
- C. Owner's Authorized Representative (OAR) must be notified at least 72 hours prior to the disposal of any hazardous waste or hazardous material. No material disposal or reuse can take place without prior written approval of the OAR.
- D. Replacement of earth material, that has been removed due to hazardous waste reasons, shall be placed back to meet the requirements of Section 2.01, F – Engineered Fill.

### 3.05 TEMPORARY EXCAVATIONS

- A. Refer to the project geotechnical report section 4.01.8 Temporary Excavations.

### 3.06 OVEREXCAVATION AND RECOMPACTION

- A. Refer to the project geotechnical report section 4.01.3 Removals, Over-Excavations and Remedial Grading.

### 3.07 TRENCH EXCAVATION, BACKFILL & COMPACTION FOR UTILITIES

- A. Field conditions may require deviations from information indicated on Drawings. Such changes in work shall be covered by a Change Order, indicating an increase or decrease in the Contract sum.

- B. Before excavation, Contractor shall contact the "Underground Service Alert of Southern California" (USASC) for information on buried utilities and pipelines.
- C. When connections are to be made to any existing pipe, conduit, or other appurtenances, the actual elevation or position of which cannot be determined without excavation, the Contractor shall excavate for, and expose, the existing improvement before laying any pipe or conduit. The Engineer shall be given the opportunity to inspect the existing pipe or conduit before connection is made. Any adjustments in line or grade which may be necessary to accomplish the intent of the plans will be made, and the Contractor will be paid for any additional work resulting from such change in line or grade.
- D. Trenches, ditches, pits, sumps, and similar items which are outside the barricaded working area shall be barricaded to conform to Cal OSHA standards.
- E. Trenches over 5'-0" in depth shall conform to the Construction Safety Orders of the California Division of Industrial Safety, see Section 2.3 EXCAVATION SUPPORT & PROTECTION – SHORING PLAN.
- F. Safe and suitable ladders which project 2 feet above the top of the trench shall be provided for all trenches over 4 feet in depth. One ladder shall be provided for each 50 feet of open trench, or fraction thereof, and be so located that workers in the trench need not move more than 25 feet to a ladder.
- G. Where indicated and/or required to excavate in lawn areas, protect adjoining lawn areas outside of the Work area. Replace or install removed sod upon completion of backfill by installing sod level with adjacent lawns. If installation of removed sod fails, furnish sod and install to match existing lawns.
- H. The on-site soils have been determined to be suitable for being used for backfilling purposes in trenches. Utility trenches should be backfilled with granular materials and mechanically compacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry density of the soils in the upper 12-inches below hardscape base material and 90% minimum below that. Backfill shall be placed in layers not exceeding 8" (inches) in thickness.
- I. Backfill over excavations to the required elevations with earth, gravel, sand, or concrete and compact as required. Provide excavations free from standing water by pumping, draining, or providing protection against water intrusion. Slope adjacent grades away from excavations to minimize entry of water.
- J. Do not excavate trenches parallel to footings closer than 18" from the face of the footing or below a plane having a downward slope of 2 horizontal to one vertical, from a line 9" above bottom of footings.
- K. If soft, spongy, unstable, or other unsuitable material is encountered upon which the bedding material or pipe is to be placed, this material shall be removed to a depth ordered by the Engineer and replaced with bedding material suitably densified. Additional bedding so ordered, over the amount required by the Plans or Specifications, will be paid for as provided in the Bid. If the necessity for such additional bedding material has been caused by an act of failure on the part of the Contractor or is required for control of groundwater, the Contractor shall bear the expense of the additional excavation and bedding.
- L. Unless indicated otherwise on the plans are within this specification, excavate trenches to the required depths for utilities, such as pipes, conduit and tanks, with minimum allowances of 6 inches at the bottom and 6 inches at the sides for bedding of unprotected piping or as required for concrete encasement of conduits as indicated on Drawings. Maximum allowances at the sides for trenching shall be 12 inches. Grade bottom of

trenches to a uniform smooth surface. Remove loose soil from the excavation before installing sand bedding or concrete encasement.

- M. Where portions of existing structures, walks, paving, etc. must be removed or cut for pipe or conduit installation, replace the material with equal quality, finished to match adjacent work.
- N. Provide a minimum clear dimension of 6 inches from sides of wall excavation to outer surfaces of buried pipes or conduits installed in the same trench or outside surfaces of containers and/or tanks.
- O. DO NOT place backfill until the bedding and pipe work installed has been inspected, tested and approved by the Inspector. Remove excavated rocky material unsuitable for backfill from the site prior to final backfilling.
- P. Bedding material immediately around a utility line and to a point 12 inches above the top of pipe should consist of sand to support the line and protect it.
- Q. Bedding zone shall be defined as the area containing the material specified that is supporting, surrounding, and extending to 12" (inches) above the top of pipe. Compaction requirements in this area must meet 90%.
- R. Bedding material shall first be placed on a firm and unyielding subgrade so that the pipe is supported for the full length of the barrel. There shall be 6" (inch) minimum of bedding below the pipe barrel and 1" (inch) clearance below a projecting bell for sewer, storm drain and water pipe. The material in the bedding zone shall be placed and densified by mechanical compaction only.
- S. Mechanically compacted backfill shall comply with section 306-1.3.2 of the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction.
- T. Concrete backfill trenches that carry below or pass under footings and that are excavated within 18 inches of footings. Place concrete to level of bottom of footings.
- U. Fill voids with approved backfill materials as shoring bracing and sheeting is removed.

### 3.08 INSPECTION & TESTING AT TRENCHES

- A. Pipe will be inspected in the field before and after laying. If any cause for rejection is discovered in a pipe after it has been laid, it shall be subject to rejection. Any corrective work shall be approved by the Engineer and shall be at NO cost to the Owner.
- B. The Inspector or Geotechnical Engineer will inspect all subgrades and excavations prior to placing bedding & backfill materials.
- C. DO NOT place backfill until the bedding and pipe work installed has been inspected, tested and approved by the Inspector. Remove excavated rocky material unsuitable for backfill from the site prior to final backfilling.
- D. Utility backfill compaction test shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D1557, method "C".
- E. Utility backfill in place density test per ASTM D 1556 (sand cone) or other test method as considered appropriate by the Geotechnical Engineer.
- F. Hydrostatic pressure tests shall be done only after backfill has been placed and final compaction has been achieved.

### 3.09 APPROVAL OF SUBGRADE

- A. Notify Geotechnical Engineer when excavations have reached required over-excavation subgrade.
- B. When Geotechnical Engineer determines that unforeseen unsatisfactory soil is present, continue work only after receiving direction from the Contracting Officer.
- C. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by rain, accumulated water or construction activities as directed by the Soils Engineer.

### 3.10 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill of unauthorized excavation below bottoms of foundations or wall footings will be engineered fill.
- B. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction as directed by the Soils Engineer.
- C. Where indicated widths of utility trenches are exceeded, provide stronger pipe, or special installation procedures, as required by the Geotechnical Engineer.

### 3.11 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. After the site has been stripped of all debris, vegetation and organic materials, excavated on site soils may be reused as engineered fill provided they meet the satisfactory soils material conditions in Section 2.01, part D. High in-site moisture contents will require aeration prior to placement as engineered fill.
- B. Stockpile excavated materials acceptable for backfill and fill soil materials, including acceptable borrow materials. Stockpile soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees. Cover to prevent wind-blown dust.

### 3.12 PLACEMENT OF ENGINEERED FILL

- A. Preparation of the bottom of the excavation:
  - 1. Refer to the project geotechnical report section 4.01.4 Fill Materials.
- B. Compaction Testing:
  - 1. The Geotechnical Engineer's representative shall observe the excavation, filling, and compacting operations and shall make density tests in the fill material so that he can state his opinion as to whether or not the fill was constructed in accordance with the specifications. If the surface is disturbed, the density tests shall be made in the compacted materials below the disturbed zone. When these tests indicate that the density or moisture content of any layer of fill or portion thereof does not meet the specified density or moisture content, the particular layer or portions shall be reworked until the specified density and moisture content have been obtained.
  - 2. Sampling and testing of materials for determination of compliance with the specified compaction requirements will be conducted by the Geotechnical Engineer's representative at any location and time as the Owner may determine.

3. The Contractor shall be responsible for excavation of the test pits and for providing and installing any shoring, ladders, or other equipment necessary to protect the testing personnel. The Contractor shall also suspend operations as necessary and at no cost to the owner for the purpose of conducting such testing.
4. Test pits shall be excavated in the backfill by the Contractor as directed by the Engineer for the purpose of testing the backfill compaction. At the option of Engineer, density tests may be taken on a lift of compacted backfill immediately before placing the next lift.
5. Any settlement noted in backfill, fill, or in structures built over the backfill or fill within the one-year warranty period will be considered to be caused by improper compaction methods and shall be corrected at the Contractor's expense. Structures damaged by settlement shall be restored to their original condition by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.
6. When initial compaction testing performed by the Engineer indicates the required density has not been obtained, the Contractor shall re-compact or replace the backfill as necessary to meet the specified minimum density.
7. The Contractor shall be responsible for rescheduling compaction testing with the Engineer and shall bear all costs for subsequent retesting in the areas of noncompliance. Costs associated with retesting and scheduling delays shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor. The Engineer will deduct the costs for testing of materials and work found to be unacceptable, as determined by the tests performed by the Owner and the costs for testing of material sources identified by the Contractor which are not used for the work, from moneys due or to become due to the Contractor. The amount deducted will be determined by the Engineer.

### 3.13 BACKFILL - GENERAL

- A. Backfill excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
  1. Acceptance of construction below finish grade including, where applicable, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for record documents.
  3. Testing, inspecting, and approval of underground utilities.
  4. Concrete formwork removal.
  5. Removal of trash and debris from excavation.
  6. Removal of temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

### 3.14 GRADING

- A. Rough & Fine Grading: Rough grade area sufficiently high to require cutting by fine grading.

- B. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  - 1. Provide a smooth transition between existing adjacent grades and new grades.
  - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to conform to required surface tolerances.
  - 3. Grade area for paving to a depth below finish grades indicated, equal to base and pavement thickness to be constructed.
  - 4. Cut banks neatly to required finish grades as cut progresses, or leave cuts full and finish grading by mechanical equipment, which will produce finish grades indicated on Drawings.
  - 5. Grade filled banks full and compact beyond grade of finish bank so that when trimmed to finish grades, soil is compacted to density specified for final slope face.
  - 6. Bring areas to be graded to approximate finish grades and then scarify, moisten and roll to obtain required density. Scarify, moisten and roll resulting high and low areas to obtain required finish grades by cutting and filling.
  - 7. Grade future planting areas so that, upon cultivation and fertilization, they will conform to finish grades indicated for planting areas.
  - 8. Protect all utilities.
- C. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Building pad tolerance plus or minus ½ inch (0.05-foot).
  - 2. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus (0.10-foot).
  - 3. Walks: Plus or minus (0.04-foot).
  - 4. Pavements: Plus or minus (0.04-foot).
- D. Grading Inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of ½ inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

### 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The CONTRACTOR shall provide an independent approved California Department of Health Services certified testing laboratory, to perform sampling and testing of import materials in accordance with the terms as specified in Section 01 45 24.
- B. Backfill and compaction of trenches in traffic areas must be in the presence of the project inspector or geotechnical engineer.
- C. A Geotechnical Engineer, designated by the Owner, will be engaged to perform continuous inspection of the placing and compacting of all fills and backfills within the limits of grading of this project. All work shall be done in accordance with the approved plans and these specifications and as recommended and approved by the Geotechnical Engineer. Revised recommendations relating to conditions differing from the approved soils engineering and engineering geology reports shall be submitted to the owner, inspector, architect and the civil engineer. Costs for all such inspections and tests shall be paid by the Owner. The Contractor shall be responsible for notifying the Geotechnical Engineer in advance so that he may be present to perform his services as needed.
- D. The Geotechnical Engineer shall submit compaction reports to the Construction Manager and the Architect at the completion of the work, including test results and plot plans indicating the locations from which the tested samples of fill were taken. The Geotechnical



Engineer shall keep the Construction Manager informed on the progress of the grading work.

- E. Testing Agency Services: Allow testing agency to inspect and test each subgrade and each fill or backfill layer. Do not proceed until test results for previously completed work verify compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Perform field in-place density tests according to ASTM D 1556 (sand cone method) or other test method as considered appropriate by Geotechnical Engineer.
    - a. Field in place density tests may also be performed by the nuclear method according to ASTM D 2922, provided that calibration curves are periodically checked and adjusted to correlate to tests performed using ASTM D 1556. With each density calibration check, check the calibration curves furnished with the moisture gages according to ASTM D 3017.
    - b. When field in place density tests are performed using nuclear methods, make calibration checks of both density and moisture gages at beginning of work, on each different type of material encountered, and at intervals as directed by the Architect.
  - 2. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, perform at least one field in-place density test for every 2,000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
  - 3. Foundation Wall Backfill: In each compacted backfill layer, perform at least one field in place density test for each 100 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests along a wall face.
  - 4. Trench Backfill: In each compacted initial and final backfill layer, perform at least one field in place density test for each 150 feet or less of trench, but no fewer than two tests.
- F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills are below specified density, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to the depth required, recompact and retest until required density is obtained.
- G. Owner's inspector will inspect foundation excavations when completed and ready for forms, after forms are in place, and before first placement of concrete.

### 3.16 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and re establish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
  - 1. Scarify or remove and replace material to depth directed by the Architect; reshape and recompact at optimum moisture content to the required density.
- C. Settling: Where settling occurs during the Project correction period, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional approved material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.

1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to the greatest extent possible.

### 3.17 MAINTENANCE

- A. Install and maintain all erosion control devices, including sandbag and gravel bag dikes, silt fences, de-silting basins, inlet barricades, vehicle wash traps, and other features required per Section 01 57 23 Temporary Storm Water Pollution Control.
- B. Reconditioning Compacted Areas: Where completed compacted areas are disturbed by subsequent construction operations or adverse weather, scarify surface, re-shape to required tolerances, and compact to required density prior to further construction.

END OF SECTION 31 22 00

## SECTION 31 23 33 – TRENCHING AND BACKFILL

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Excavation, bedding, and backfill of underground storm drain, sanitary sewer and water piping and associated structures.

#### 1.2 SECTION EXCLUDES

- A. Trenching and backfill for other utilities such as underground electric, telephone, gas, cable TV, etc.

#### 1.3 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Geotechnical Report: Refer to Geotechnical Consultant.
- B. ASTM:
  - 1. C 33, Specification for Concrete Aggregates.
  - 2. C 150, Specification for Portland Cement.
  - 3. C 260, Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.
  - 4. C 618, Specification for Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.
  - 5. D 1557, Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort.
  - 6. D 2321, Practice for Underground Installation of Flexible Thermoplastic Sewer Pipe.
  - 7. D 2487, Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes.
  - 8. D 3740, Practice for Evaluation of Agencies Engaged in Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction.
  - 9. E 329, Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in the Testing and/or Inspection of Materials Used in Construction.
  - 10. E 548, Guide for General Criteria Used for Evaluating Laboratory Competence.
- C. California Building Code, California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2 - Chapter 18, Foundations, and Retaining Walls, and Chapter 33, Site Work, Demolition and Construction.
- D. Caltrans Standard Specifications:
  - 1. Section 19, Earthwork.
  - 2. Section 26, Aggregate Bases.
  - 3. Section 68, Subsurface Drains.
  - 4. Section 88, Engineering Fabrics.
- E. CAL/OSHA, Title 8.

#### 1.4 Definitions

- A. AC: Asphalt Concrete.

- B. ASTM: American Society for Testing and Materials.
- C. Bedding: Material from bottom of trench to bottom of pipe.
- D. CDF: Controlled Density Fill.
- E. DIP: Ductile Iron Pipe.
- F. Initial Backfill: Material from bottom of pipe to 12-inches above top of pipe.
- G. PCC: Portland Cement Concrete.
- H. RCP: Reinforced Concrete Pipe.
- I. Springline of Pipe: Imaginary line on surface of pipe at a vertical distance of  $\frac{1}{2}$  the outside diameter measured from the top or bottom of the pipe.
- J. Subsequent Backfill: Material from 12-inches above top of pipe to subgrade of surface material or subgrade of surface facility or to finish grade.
- K. Trench Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and within horizontal trench dimensions.
  - 1. Authorized Trench Over-Excavation: Excavation below trench subgrade elevations or beyond indicated horizontal trench dimensions as shown on plans or authorized by the Geotechnical Consultant.
  - 2. Unauthorized Trench Over-Excavation: Excavation below trench subgrade elevations or beyond indicated horizontal trench dimensions without authorization by the Geotechnical Consultant. Unauthorized excavation shall be without additional compensation.
- L. Utility Structures:
  - 1. Storm drainage manholes, catch basins, drop inlets, curb inlets, vaults, etc.
  - 2. Sanitary sewer manholes, vaults, etc.
  - 3. Water vaults, etc.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide an independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548.
- B. Conform all work and materials to the recommendations or requirements of the Geotechnical Report and meet the approval of the Geotechnical Consultant.
- C. Conform all work to the appropriate portion(s) of the Caltrans Standard Specifications, Section 19.
- D. Percentage of compaction specified shall be the minimum acceptable. The percentage represents the ratio of the dry density of the compacted material to the maximum dry density of the material as determined by the procedure set forth in ASTM D 1557.
- E. The Geotechnical Consultant will perform observations and tests required to enable him to form an opinion of the acceptability of the trench backfill. Correct the trench backfill that, in the

opinion of the Geotechnical Consultant, does not meet the requirements of these Technical Specifications and the Geotechnical Report.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Division 01.
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Grading and quality characteristics showing compliance with requirements for the Work.
  - 2. Certify that material meets requirements of the Project.
- C. Samples:
  - 1. If required by the Geotechnical Consultant, provide 40-pound samples of all imported trench bedding and backfill material sealed in airtight containers, tagged with source locations and suppliers of each proposed material. Do not import materials to Project without written approval of the Geotechnical Consultant.
  - 2. Provide materials from same source throughout work. Change of source requires approval of the Geotechnical Consultant and the Owner's Representative's.
- D. Material Test Reports: Provide, from a qualified testing agency, the following test results showing compliance with the project requirements:
  - 1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each imported trench bedding and backfill material.
  - 2. Laboratory compaction curve in conformance with ASTM D 1557 for each imported trench bedding and backfill material

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Promptly notify the Owner's Representative of surface or subsurface conditions differing from those disclosed in the Geotechnical Report. First notify the Owner's Representative verbally to permit verification and extent of condition and then in writing. No claim for conditions differing from those anticipated in the Contract Documents and disclosed in the Geotechnical Report will be allowed unless Contractor has notified the Owner's Representative in writing of differing conditions prior to contractor starting work on affected items.
- B. Protect open, trenches, and utility structure excavations with fences, covers and railings to maintain safe pedestrian and vehicular traffic passage.
- C. Stockpile on-site and imported backfill material temporarily in an orderly and safe manner.
- D. Provide dust and noise control.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE BEDDING AND INITIAL BACKFILL

- A. ASTM D 2321, Class IA, IB or II.
  - 1. Clean and free of clay, silt or organic matter.
- B. Permeable Material: Conform to Section 68-1.025 of Caltrans Standard Specifications, Class 1, Type A or Class 2

- C. Class 2 Aggregate Base: Conform to Section 26 of Caltrans Standard Specifications, 3/4-inch maximum.
- D. Sand: Conform to Section 19-3.025B of Caltrans Standard Specifications.

## 2.2 SUBSEQUENT BACKFILL

- A. Conform to on-site or imported structural backfill in Section 312300, Excavation and Fill.

## 2.3 CONTROLLED DENSITY FILL (CDF) (IN TRENCHES)

- A. Provide non-structural CDF, from bottom of trench to finish subgrade of subbase or base material, that can be excavated by hand and produce unconfined compressive 28-day strengths from 50-psi to a maximum of 150-psi. Provide aggregate no larger than 3/8-inch top size. The 3/8-inch aggregate shall not comprise more than 30% of the total aggregate content.
- B. Cement: Conform to the standards as set forth in ASTM C-150, Type II Cement.
- C. Fly Ash: Conform to the standards as set forth in ASTM C-618, for Class F pozzolan. Do not inhibit the entrainment of air with the fly ash.
- D. Air Entraining Agent: Conform to the standards as set forth in ASTM C-260.
- E. Aggregates need not meet the standards as set forth in ASTM C-33. Any aggregate, producing performances characteristics described herein will be accepted for consideration. The amount of material passing a #200 sieve shall not exceed 12% and no plastic fines shall be present.
- F. Provide CDF that is a mixture of cement, Class F pozzolan, aggregate, air entraining agent and water. CDF shall be batched by a ready mixed concrete plant and delivered to the job site by means of transit mixing trucks.
- G. The Contractor shall determine the actual mix proportions of the controlled density fill to meet job site conditions, minimum and maximum strengths, and unit weight. Entrained air content shall be a minimum of 4.0%. The actual entrained air content shall be established for each job with the materials and aggregates to be used to meet the placing and unit weight requirements. Entrained air content may be as high as 20% for fluidity requirements.
- H. Mix design shall meet the Geotechnical Consultant's approval.

## 2.4 CONCRETE STRUCTURE BEDDING AND BACKFILL

- A. Precast Structures: Same materials to the same heights as specified for pipe bedding and backfill, or other material approved by the Geotechnical Consultant.
- B. Poured-in-Place Structures:
  - 1. Bedding: Bedding shall meet the approval of the Geotechnical Consultant. In general, bedding is not required, pour bases against undisturbed native earth in cut areas and against engineered fill compacted to 90% relative compaction in embankment areas.
  - 2. Side Backfill: On-site or imported structural fill meeting the requirements given in Section 31 23 00.

## 2.5 FILTER FABRIC

- A. Filter Fabric:
  - 1. Filter Fabric: Section 88-1.03 of Caltrans Standard Specifications.
  - 2. Mirifi 140N (Mirifi Inc., Charlotte, NC) (Tel. 800-438-1855) or equal

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 TRENCHING AND EXCAVATION

- A. Existing PCC or AC Areas: Cut PCC or AC to full depth at a minimum distance of 12- inches beyond the edge of the trench.
- B. Excavate by hand or machine. For gravity systems begin excavation at the outlet end and proceed upstream. Excavate sides of the trench parallel and equal distant from the centerline of the pipe. Hand trim excavation. Remove loose matter.
- C. Excavation Depth for Bedding: Minimum of 4-inches below bottom of pipe or as otherwise allowed or required by the Geotechnical Consultant, except that bedding is not required for nominal pipe diameters of 2-inches or less.
- D. Excavation Width at Springline of Pipe:
  - 1. Up to a nominal pipe diameter of 24-inches: Minimum of twice the outside pipe diameter, or as otherwise allowed or required by the Geotechnical Consultant.
  - 2. Nominal pipe diameter of 30-inches through 36-inches: Minimum of the outside pipe diameter plus 2-feet, or as otherwise allowed or required by the Geotechnical Consultant.
  - 3. Nominal pipe diameter of 42-inches through 60-inches: Minimum of the outside pipe diameter plus 3-feet, or as otherwise allowed or required by the Geotechnical Consultant.
- E. Over-Excavations: Backfill trenches that have been excavated below bedding design subgrade, with approved bedding material.
- F. Comply with the Owner's Representative's limitations on the amount of trench that is opened or partially opened at any one time. Do not leave trenches open overnight without the approval of the Owner's Representative.
- G. Where forming is required, excavate only as much material as necessary to permit placing and removal of forms.
- H. Bottoms of trenches will be subject to testing by Geotechnical Consultant. Correct deficiencies as directed by the Geotechnical Consultant.
- I. Grade bottom of trench to provide uniform thickness of bedding material and to provide uniform bearing and support for pipe along entire length. Remove stones to avoid point bearing.

### 3.2 CONTROL OF WATER AND DEWATERING

- A. Be solely responsible for dewatering trenches and excavations and subsequent control of ground and surface water. Provide and maintain such pumps or other equipment as may be necessary to control ground water and seepage to the satisfaction of the Geotechnical Consultant and the Owner's Representative until backfilling is completed.

- B. Dewater during backfilling operation so that groundwater is maintained a least one foot below level of compaction effort.
- C. Obtain the Geotechnical Consultant's approval for proposed control of water and dewatering methods.
- D. Reroute surface water runoff away from open trenches and excavations. Do not allow water to accumulate in trenches and excavations.
- E. Maintain dewatering system in place until dewatering is no longer required.

### 3.3 BRACING AND SHORING

- A. Conform to California and Federal OSHA requirements.
- B. Place and maintain such bracing and shoring as may be required to support the sides of the excavations for the proper protection of workmen; to facilitate the work; to prevent damage to the pipes and appurtenances being constructed; and to prevent damage to adjacent structures or facilities. Remove all bracing and shoring upon completion of the work.
- C. Be solely responsible for all bracing and shoring and, if requested by the Owner's Representative, submit details and calculations to the Owner's Representative. The Owner's Representative may forward the submittal to the Geotechnical Consultant, the Consulting Engineer and/or the California Division of Industrial Safety for their review. The Contractor's submittal shall include the basic design, assumed soils conditions and estimation of forces to be resisted, together with plans and specifications of the materials and methods to be used, and shall be prepared by a civil engineer or structural engineer registered in California. No excavations in trench section or around structures shall precede a response to the submittal by the Owner's Representative.
- D. Be solely responsible for installing and extracting the sheathing in a manner which will not disturb the line, grade, or backfill compaction or operation of the utility being installed or adjacent utilities and facilities.

### 3.4 PIPE BEDDING

- A. Obtain approval of bedding material from the Geotechnical Consultant.
- B. Accurately shape bedding material to the line and grade called for on the Plans. Carefully place and compact bedding material to the elevation of the bottom of the pipe in layers not exceeding 8-inches in loose thickness. Compact bedding material at optimum water content to 90% relative compaction unless specified otherwise on the Plans or by the Geotechnical Consultant. Compact by pneumatic tampers or other mechanical means approved by the Geotechnical Consultant. Jetting or ponding of bedding material will not be permitted.
- C. Upon completion of bedding operations, and prior to the installation of pipe, notify the Geotechnical Consultant, who will inspect the bedding layer. Do not commence pipe laying until the Geotechnical Consultant has approved the bedding.



### 3.5 BACKFILLING

- A. Obtain approval of backfill material from Geotechnical Consultant.
- B. Bring initial backfill up simultaneously on both sides of the pipe, so as to prevent any displacement of the pipe from its true alignment. Carefully place and compact initial backfill material to an elevation of 12-inches above the top of the pipe in layers not exceeding 8-inches in loose thickness. Compact initial backfill material at optimum water content to 90% relative compaction unless specified otherwise on the Plans or by the Geotechnical Consultant. Compact by pneumatic tampers or other mechanical means approved by the Geotechnical Consultant. Jetting or ponding of initial backfill material will not be permitted.
- C. Bring subsequent backfill to subgrade or finish grade as indicated. Carefully place and compact subsequent backfill material to the proper elevation in layers not exceeding 8- inches in loose thickness. Compact subsequent backfill material at optimum water content to 90% relative compaction, except that the upper 36-inches in areas subject to vehicular traffic shall be compacted to at least 95% relative compaction, unless specified otherwise on the Plans or by the Geotechnical Consultant. Compact by pneumatic tampers or other mechanical means approved by the Geotechnical Consultant. Jetting or ponding of subsequent backfill material will not be permitted.
- D. Do not use compaction equipment or methods that produce horizontal or vertical earth pressures which may cause excessive pipe displacement or damage the pipe.
- E. Utility backfill shall be inspected and tested by the Geotechnical Consultant during placement. Cooperate with the Geotechnical Consultant and provide working space for such tests in operations. Backfill not compacted in accordance with these specifications shall be re-compacted or removed as necessary and replaced to meet the specified requirements, to the satisfaction of the Geotechnical Consultant and the Owner's Representative prior to proceeding with the Project.

### 3.6 CLEANUP

- A. Upon completion of utility earthwork all lines, manholes catch basins, inlets, water meter boxes and other structures shall be thoroughly cleaned of dirt, rubbish, debris and obstructions of any kind to the satisfaction of the Owner's Representative.

END OF SECTION 312333

## SECTION 32 13 13 - CONCRETE PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

- A. The CONTRACTOR shall furnish all materials for concrete in accordance with the provisions of this Section and shall form, mix, place, cure, repair, finish, and do all other work as required to produce finished concrete, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Portland cement concrete paving shall be stable, firm, and slip resistant and shall comply with CBC Sections 11B-302 and 11B-403.
- C. The following types of concrete shall be covered in this Section:
  - 1. Portland cement concrete pavement, cement walks, flatwork, curbs, gutters, retaining curbs, swales, trash pick-up areas, ramps, mowing strips, fence post footings, sliding gate concrete, catch basins, pipe bedding and encasements, transition structures, flagpoles and light standard bases and footings, splash blocks, parking bumpers and equipment pads.

#### 1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, Special Conditions and Division 1

#### 1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

- A. Comply with the reference specifications of the GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- B. The work provided herein shall conform to and be in accordance with the Contract Plans, General Conditions/Specifications and Special Provisions, as well as the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction ("GREENBOOK"), 2021 Edition, adopted by the Southern California Chapter, American Public Works Association; herein referred to as the "Standard Specifications".
- C. Comply with the current provisions of the following Codes and Standards.
  - 1. Federal Specifications:
    - a. UU-B-790A (Int.Amd. 1) Building Paper, Vegetable Fiber (Kraft, Waterproofed, Water Repellant and Fire Resistant).
  - 2. Commercial Standards:
    - a. ACI 214 Recommended Practice for Evaluation of Strength Test Results of Concrete.
    - b. ACI 301 Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings.
    - c. ACI 315 Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement.
    - d. ACI 318 Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete.
    - e. ACI 347 Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork.

- f. ACI 350 Recommended Practice for Sanitary Structure.
- g. ASTM C 31 Practices for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
- h. ASTM C 33 Specification for Concrete Aggregates.
- i. ASTM C 39 Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
- j. ASTM C 40 Test Method for Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregates for Concrete.
- k. ASTM C 42 Methods of Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.
- l. ASTM C 78 Specification for Flexural Strength.
- m. ASTM C 88 Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate.
- n. ASTM C 94 Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.
- o. ASTM C 114 Method for Chemical Analysis of Hydraulic Cement.
- p. ASTM C 131 Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Sized Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine.
- q. ASTM C 136 Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregate.
- r. ASTM C 143 Test Method for Slump of Portland Cement Concrete.
- s. ASTM C 150 Specification for Portland Cement.
- t. ASTM C 156 Test Method for Water Retention by Concrete Curing Materials.
- u. ASTM C 157 Test Method for Length Change of Hardened Hydraulic Cement Mortar and Concrete.
- v. ASTM C 172 Specification for Sampling Fresh Concrete.
- w. ASTM C 192 Method of Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory.
- x. ASTM C 260 Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.
- y. ASTM C 289 Test Method for Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method).
- z. ASTM C 311 Method for Sampling and Testing Fly Ash or Natural Pozzolans for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.
- aa. ASTM C 494 Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.

- bb. ASTM C 618 Specification for Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.
- cc. ASTM C 979 Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete
- dd. ASTM D 1751 Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Non-extruding and Resilient Bituminous Types).
- ee. ASTM E 119 Method for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
- ff. ASTM C 1549 Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance.

#### 1.04 CONTRACTOR SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals shall be made in accordance with GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- B. The following submittals and specific information shall be provided.
  - 1. Mix Designs: Prior to beginning the WORK, the CONTRACTOR shall submit to the ENGINEER, for review, and approval, preliminary concrete mix designs for each class and type of concrete specified herein. The mix designs shall be designed by an independent testing laboratory acceptable to the ENGINEER. All costs related to such mix design shall be borne by the CONTRACTOR.
    - a. Each concrete mix submittal shall contain the following information:
      - 1) Slump on which the design is based.
      - 2) Total gallons of water per cubic yard.
      - 3) Brand, type, composition and quantity of cement.
      - 4) Brand type, composition and quantity of fly ash.
      - 5) Specific Gravity and gradation of each aggregate.
      - 6) Ratio of fine to total aggregate per cubic yard.
      - 7) Weight (surface dry) of each aggregate per cubic yard.
      - 8) Brand, type, and ASTM designation, active chemical ingredients and quantity of each admixture.
      - 9) Copy of the Building and Safety Research Report Approval for each concrete admixture.
      - 10) Air content.
      - 11) Compressive strength based on 7 day and 28 day compression tests, including standard deviation calculations, corroborative data (if applicable), and required average comprehensive strength per ACI 318, Section 5.
      - 12) Time of initial set.

- 13) Certification stamp and signature by a Civil or Structural engineer registered in state of California.
  - 14) Certificate of Compliance for Cement.
  - 15) Test Data: ASTM C 1549 Solar Reflectance. Submit test reports of proposed mix certifying solar reflectance meets project requirements.
2. Certified Delivery Tickets: Where ready-mix concrete is used, the CONTRACTOR shall provide certified weighmaster delivery tickets at the time of delivery of each load of concrete. Each certificate shall show the public weighmaster's signature, and the total quantities, by weight of cement, sand, each class of aggregate, admixtures, and the amounts of water in the aggregate and added at the batching plant as well as the amount of water allowed to be added at the site for the specific design mix. Each certificate shall, in addition, state the mix number, total yield in cubic yards, and the time of day, to the nearest minute, corresponding to when the batch was dispatched, when it left the plant, when it arrived at the job, the time that unloading began, and the time that unloading was finished.
  3. When a water reducing admixture is to be used, the CONTRACTOR shall furnish mix designs for concrete both with and without the admixture.
  4. The CONTRACTOR shall furnish a Certificate of Compliance signed by the supplier identifying the type of fly ash and stating that the fly ash complies with ASTM C 618 and these Specifications, together with all supporting test data prior to the use of the fly ash the sample represents. The supporting data shall also contain test results confirming that the fly ash in combination with the cement and water to be used meets all strength requirements and is compatible with air-entraining agents and other admixtures.
  5. The CONTRACTOR shall submit to the ENGINEER for review the design mix for fly ash concrete together with the design mix for portland cement (non-fly ash) concrete as specified in this Section.

#### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing for Portland Cement Concrete shall be sampled and tested in accordance with the ASTM and California Tests listed in the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction, 2015 Edition, Section 201-1.1.5.
- B. Samples for strength tests of each class of concrete placed each day shall be taken not less than once a day, or not less than once for each 50 cubic yards of concrete, or not less than once for each 2,000 square feet of surface area for slabs. Additional samples for seven-day compressive strength tests shall be taken for each class of concrete at the beginning of the concrete work or whenever the mix or aggregate is changed.
- C. The cost of all laboratory tests on cement, aggregates, and concrete, will be borne by the CONTRACTOR.
- D. Concrete for testing shall be supplied by the CONTRACTOR at no cost to the Owner, and the CONTRACTOR shall provide assistance and facilities to the INSPECTOR in obtaining samples, and disposal and cleanup of excess material.

- E. Curbs and gutters shall be staked by a Land Surveyor licensed to practice in the State of California.
- F. Job Mock-Up
  - 1. General
    - a. Make samples on-site; revise as required; obtain Architect's approval, 10 days prior to casting finished work.
    - b. Finished work to match approved samples.
    - c. Approved sample may be incorporated into the work. Retain samples until completion of all concrete work.
    - d. Include typical tooled joint control in sample.
  - 2. Broom Finished Concrete; Exterior Flatwork: Provide sample, 20 s.f. minimum area.
  - 3. "Sacked" Vertical Surface; Exterior Wall: Provide sample, 5 sf. minimum area.
- G. Construction Tolerances: The CONTRACTOR shall set and maintain concrete forms and perform finishing operations so as to ensure that the completed work is within the tolerances specified herein. Surface defects and irregularities are defined as finishes and are to be distinguished from tolerances. Tolerance is the specified permissible variation from lines, grades, or dimensions shown. Where tolerances are not stated in the specifications, permissible deviations will be in accordance with ACI 347.
- H. Construction tolerances shall not violate dimensions, grades, slopes required by CBC for accessibility requirements. Adjust work accordingly to comply with requirements.
- I. The following construction tolerances are hereby established and apply to finished walls and slab unless otherwise shown:

Item	Tolerance
Variation of the constructed linear outline from the established position in plan.	In 10 feet: 1/8-inch; In 20 feet or more: 1/4-inch
Variation from the level or from the grades shown.	In 10 feet: 1/8-inch; In 20 feet or more: 1/4-inch
Variation from the plumb	In 10 feet: 1/8-inch; In 20 feet or more: 1/4-inch
Variation in the thickness of slabs and walls.	Minus 1/8-inch; Plus 1/4-inch
Variation in the locations and sizes of slabs and wall openings.	Plus or minus 1/8-inch

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS

#### CONCRETE PAVING

- A. Materials shall be delivered, stored, and handled so as to prevent damage by water or breakage. Only one brand of cement shall be used. Cement reclaimed from cleaning bags or leaking containers shall not be used. All cement shall be used in the sequence of receipt of shipments.
- B. All materials furnished for the work shall comply with the requirements of Sections 201, 203, and 204 of ACI 301, as applicable.
- C. Storage of materials shall conform to the requirements of Section 205 of ACI 301.
- D. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other acceptable panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces. Conform to Section 303-5.2 of the Standard Specifications.
  - 1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves of a 100-foot or less radius.
- E. Reinforcing Materials: As follows:
  - 1. Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615 deformed grade 60 billet steel, plain finish, unless otherwise specified on Construction Document. Fabrication, sampling and jobsite handling shall conform to the requirements in ASTM Designation: D 3963, except the 2 samples shall be 30 inches long.
  - 2. Dowels:
    - a. Dowel bars shall be plain round smooth conforming to the requirements in ASTM Designation: A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 except that the two samples required in ASTM Designation: D 3963/D 3963M shall be 18 inches long. Dowel bars shall be free from burrs or other deformations detrimental to free movement of the bars in the concrete
    - b. Dowel bars shall be lubricated with a bond breaker over the entire bar. A bond breaker application of petroleum paraffin based lubricant or white-pigmented curing compound shall be used to coat the dowel bars completely prior to placement. Oil and asphalt based bond breakers shall not be used. Paraffin based lubricant shall be Dayton Superior DSC BB-Coat or Valvoline Tectyl 506 or an approved equal. Paraffin based lubricant shall be factory applied. White pigmented curing compound shall conform to the requirements of ASTM Designation: C 309, Type 2, Class A, and shall contain 22 percent minimum nonvolatile vehicles consisting of at least 50 percent paraffin wax. Curing compound shall be applied in 2 separate applications, the last application not more than 8 hours prior to placement of the dowel bars. Each application of curing compound shall be applied at the approximate rate of one gallon per 15 square yards.
  - 3. Epoxy for bonding tie bars and dowel bars to portland cement concrete shall be a two-component, epoxy-resin, conforming to the requirements of ASTM Designation: C 881, Type V, Grade 3 (Non-Sagging), Class B or C. The class used shall be dependent on the internal temperature of the hardened concrete at the time the epoxy is to be applied. Class B shall be used when the internal temperature is from 40 °F to 60 °F. Class C shall be used when the internal temperature is above 60 °F, but not higher than recommended by the manufacturer. A copy of the manufacturer's recommended installation procedure shall be provided to the Engineer at least 7 days prior to the start of work. Epoxy shall be applied in conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

- a. Simpson Strong-Tie Set-XP Epoxy Adhesive (or approved equal) ICC-ES ESR-2508.

F. Concrete Materials: As follows:

1. Cement shall be standard brand portland cement conforming to ASTM C 150 for Type II. Portland cement shall contain not more than 0.60 percent alkalis. The term "alkalis" referred to herein is defined as the sum of the percentage of sodium oxide and 0.658 times the percentage of potassium oxide ( $\text{Na}_2\text{O} + 0.658 \text{K}_2\text{O}$ ). These oxides shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 114. A single brand of cement shall be used throughout the work, and prior to its use, the brand shall be acceptable to the ENGINEER. The cement shall be suitably protected from exposure to moisture until used. Cement that has become lumpy shall not be used. Sacked cement shall be stored in such a manner so as to permit access for inspection and sampling. Certified mill test reports for each shipment of cement to be used shall be submitted to the INSPECTOR.
2. Concurrent with strength design criteria, concrete shall also be proportioned to provide the requisite durability to satisfy the exposure conditions imposed by either environment and/or service. Durability, in this context, refers to the ability of the concrete to resist deterioration from the environment or service in which it is placed. Concrete proportioned in accordance with ACI 318, chapter 4, Durability Requirements, will meet this criteria.
3. Combined Aggregate: 1" maximum coarse aggregate size conforming to Grading C of Standard Specifications Section 201-1.3.2(A). Aggregates shall be obtained from pits acceptable to the INSPECTOR, shall be non-reactive, and shall conform to ASTM C 33.
4. Water: Shall be potable, clean, and free from objectionable quantities of silty organic matter, alkali, salts and other impurities. The water shall be considered potable, for the purposes of this Section only, if it meets the requirements of the local governmental agencies.
5. "Pea gravel" mix is not acceptable, unless specifically approved in writing by the Civil Engineer of Record prior to construction.

G. Admixtures:

1. The ENGINEER may require the use of admixtures or the CONTRACTOR may propose to use admixtures to control the set, effect water reduction, and increase workability. In either case, the addition of an admixture shall be at the CONTRACTOR's expense. The use and continued use of an admixture shall be approved by the ENGINEER. Admixtures specified herein, other than calcium chloride, shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C 494. The required quantity of cement shall be used in the mix regardless of whether or not an admixture is used. Admixtures shall contain no free chloride ions, be non-toxic after 30 days, and shall be compatible with and made by the same manufacturer as the air entraining admixture.
2. These admixtures shall not be used in greater doses than those recommended by the manufacturer or permitted by the ENGINEER. The permitted dosage of the admixture shall not exceed that which will result in an increase in the driving shrinkage of the concrete in excess of 20 percent when used in precast or prestressed concrete, or 10 percent when used in any other structural concrete. The strength of concrete containing the admixture in the amount of proposed



shall, at the age of 48 hours and longer be not less than that of similar concrete without the admixture. The admixture shall not adversely affect the specified air content, unless permitted by the ENGINEER.

3. Set controlling admixture shall be either with or without water-reducing properties. Where the air temperature at the time of placement is expected to be consistently over 80 degrees F, a set retarding admixture such as [Sika Chemical Corporation's Plastiment], [Master Builder's Pozzoloth 300R], or equal shall be used. Where the air temperature at the time of placement is expected to be consistently under 40 degrees F, a set accelerating admixture such as [Sika Chemical Corporation's Plastocrete 161FL], [Master Builder's Pozzoloth 50C], or equal shall be used.
4. Low range water reducer shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type A. It shall be either a hydroxylated carboxylic acid type or a hydroxylated polymer type. The quantity of admixture used and the method of mixing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
5. High range water reducer shall be sulfonated polymer conforming to ASTM C 494, Type F or G.
  - a. If the high range water reducing agent is added to the concrete at the batch plant, it shall be second generation type, [Daracem 100, as manufactured by W.R. Grace & Co.]; [Pozzoloth 430R, as manufactured by Masterbuilders]; or equal. High range water reducer shall be added to the concrete after all other ingredients have been mixed and initial slump has been verified.
  - b. If the high range water reducer is added to the concrete at the job site, it shall be used in conjunction with a low range water reducer and shall be [Pozzoloth 400N and Pozzoloth MBL82, as manufactured by Masterbuilders]; [WRDA 19 and WRDA 79, as manufactured by W.R. Grace & Co.]; or equal. Concrete shall have a slump of 3-inches  $\pm$  1/2-inch prior to adding the high range water reducing admixture at the job site. The high range water reducing admixture shall be accurately measured and pressure injected into the mixer as a single dose by an experienced technician. A standby system shall be provided and tested prior to each day's operation of the job site system.
6. Air-entraining agent meeting the requirements of ASTM C 260, shall be used. Sufficient air-entraining agent shall be used to provide a total air content of 3 to 4 percent; provided that, when the mean daily temperature in the vicinity of the worksite falls below 40 degrees F for more than one day, the total air content provided shall be 5 to 6 percent. The Owner reserves the right, at any time, to sample and test the air-entraining agent received on the job by the CONTRACTOR. The air-entraining agent shall be added to the batch in a portion of the mixing water. The solution shall be batched by means of a mechanical batcher capable of accurate measurement.
7. Calcium Chloride: Except as otherwise provided herein, calcium chloride will not be permitted to be used in concrete.
8. Fly ash/pozzolan shall conform to ASTM C 618 and the following supplementary requirements:
  - a. Class F fly ash

o Loss on ignition,	maximum 4 percent
o SO <sub>3</sub> content,	maximum 3 percent
o Moisture content,	maximum 1 percent

- b. Class F fly ash, as a percent by weight of total cementitious material, shall not exceed 15 percent
- c. When Sulfate Resistant or Special Exposure Concrete is specified, test results shall be submitted to the Engineer as specified in Section 2-5.3 of the Standard Specifications. The test result shall show that the fly ash to be used is effective in contributing to sulfate resistance in conformance with ASTM C618, Table 3 (optional physical requirements) as tested in accordance with ASTM C 1012. The data submitted shall be less than 6 months old.

H. Curing Materials:

- 1. Concrete curing compound shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C309 Type 1-D (clear or translucent with a fugitive dye), Class B (Resin Type Only), except the loss of water shall not exceed 0.15 kilograms per square meter in 24 hours nor 0.45 kilograms per square meter in 72 hours when tested in accordance with ASTM C 156. The CONTRACTOR shall provide, when requested by the ENGINEER, certified copies of vendor's test report showing compliance with ASTM C 309 and these specifications. The testing and the report shall be supplied without cost to the Agency. All compounds shall be furnished by the CONTRACTOR in sealed original containers labeled in accordance with ASTM C 309 and with the date of manufacture.
- 2. Polyethylene sheet for use as concrete curing blanket shall be white and conform to ASTM C 171. The loss of moisture when determined in accordance with the requirements of ASTM C 156 shall not exceed 0.055 grams per square centimeter of surface.
- 3. Polyethylene-coated burlap for use as concrete curing blanket shall conform to ASTM C 171. The loss of moisture, when determined in accordance with the requirements of ASTM C 156, shall not exceed 0.055 grams per square centimeter of surface.

I. Expansion Joint Filler Material

- 1. Expansion Joint Filler: Fiber expansion joint, W.R. Meadows, or approved equal, 3/8-inch thick material conforming to ASTM D 1751.
- 2. Silicone Joint Sealant: Premium-grade, high-performance, moisture-cured, single-component, polyurethane-based, non-sag elastomeric sealant. Meets Federal specification TT-S-00230C. Meets ASTM C-920, Type S, Class 25 or 35; Grade NS, Use T or NT, Shore A Hardness (21 day) 35-45. A Certificate of Compliance for the silicone sealant shall be furnished to the Engineer. The Certificate shall also be accompanied with a certified test report of the results of the required tests performed on the sealant material within the previous 12 months prior to proposed use. The Certificate and accompanying test report shall be provided for each lot of silicone joint sealant prior to use on the project.
  - a. Sika Corporation, Sikaflex-2C or approved equal.

J. Related Materials: As follows:

1. Damp-proofing agent shall be an asphalt emulsion, such as [Sonneborn Hydrocide 660], [Flintkote C-13-E Foundation Coating], or equal.
  2. Epoxy adhesives shall be the following products for the applications specified:
    - a. For bonding freshly-mixed, plastic concrete to hardened concrete, [Sikadur Hi-Mod Epoxy Adhesive, as manufactured by Sika Chemical Corporation]; [Concresive 1001-LPL, as manufactured by Adhesive Engineering Company]; or equal.
    - b. For bonding hardened concrete or masonry to steel, [Colma-Dur Gel], [Sikadur Hi-Mod Gel], or equal.
- K. Light Duty Concrete Mix Design: At a minimum, concrete for in light duty areas shall conform to the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction, Section 201-1.1.2, mix class 560-C-3250:
1. Compressive Strength: minimum of 3,250 psi at 28 days compressive strength.
  2. Slump Limit: 4 inches at point of placement.
  3. Cement per cu yard (sacks): 6.0 (minimum).
  4. Air Content: 4% +/- 1% percent
- L. Slurry Mix Design:
1. Compressive Strength: 100 psi at min. 28 days compr. strength.
  2. Slump Limit: 5 inches at point of placement.
  3. Cement per cu yard (sacks): 1.0
  4. Aggregate Gradation: "E" per S.S.P.W.C. table 201-1.3.2(A).
  5. Air Content: 4% +/- 1% percent.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 PREPARATION OF SURFACES FOR CONCRETING

- A. General: Earth surfaces shall be thoroughly wetted by sprinkling, prior to the placing of any concrete, and these surfaces shall be kept moist by frequent sprinkling up to the time of placing concrete thereon. The surface shall be free from standing water, mud, and debris at the time of placing concrete.
- B. Subgrade Preparation:
  1. Refer to Table 1 on C2.2 for requirements.
- C. The compacted surface shall be firm, hard and unyielding. The term "firm, hard and unyielding" as used in S.S.P.W.C. Section 301-1.3 shall mean that when the heaviest construction and hauling equipment used on the project drives over the subgrade, no permanent deformation shall occur either before or during pavement construction. On areas where the underlying material appears to be wet or soft, or where it deflects under wheel loads, the Contractor shall employ excavation and work techniques which do not worsen the subgrade condition.

- D. The above subgrade preparation recommendations are based on the assumption that soils encountered during field exploration are representative of soils throughout the site. However, there can be unforeseen and unanticipated variations in soils between points of subsurface exploration. For this reason, the actual scarification depths will have to be determined on the basis of in-grading observations and testing performed by representatives of the project geotechnical consultant.
- E. A California Licensed Surveyor (LS) must provide grade stakes and elevations for the Geotechnical Engineer to verify that any over-excavation depths, shown on the construction drawings for concrete pavement structural sections, have been achieved prior to re-compaction.
- F. Joints in Concrete: Concrete surfaces upon or against which concrete is to be placed, where the placement of the old concrete has been stopped or interrupted so that, as determined by the ENGINEER, the new concrete cannot be incorporated integrally with that previously placed, are defined as construction joints. The surfaces of horizontal joints shall be given a compacted, roughened surface for good bond. Except where the Drawings call for joint surfaces to be coated, the joint surfaces shall be cleaned of all laitance, loose or defective concrete, and foreign material. Such cleaning shall be accomplished by sandblasting followed by thorough washing. All pools of water shall be removed from the surface of construction joints before the new concrete is placed.
- G. Embedded Items: No concrete shall be placed until all formwork, installation of parts to be embedded, reinforcement steel, and preparation of surfaces involved in the placing have been completed and ACCEPTED by the INSPECTOR at least 24 hours before placement of concrete. All surfaces of forms and embedded items that have become encrusted with dried grout from concrete previously placed shall be cleaned of all such grout before the surrounding or adjacent concrete is placed.
- H. All inserts or other embedded items shall conform to the requirements herein.
- I. All reinforcement, anchor bolts, sleeves, inserts, and similar items shall be set and secured in the forms where shown or by shop drawings and shall be acceptable to the INSPECTOR before any concrete is placed. Accuracy of placement is the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR.
- J. Where concrete is to be cast against old concrete, (greater than 60 days of age), the surface of the old concrete shall be thoroughly cleaned and roughened by sand-blasting, exposing the aggregate. In concrete shear-walls, suspended slabs and roof slabs, the interface surface at construction joints shall be roughened to a full amplitude of one quarter inch. The hardened surface shall be cleaned of all latent foreign material and washed clean, prior to the application of an epoxy bonding agent.
- K. No concrete shall be placed in any structure until all water entering the space to be filled with concrete has been properly cut off or has been diverted by pipes, or other means, and carried out of the forms, clear of the work. No concrete shall be deposited underwater nor shall the CONTRACTOR allow still water to rise on any concrete until the concrete has attained its initial set. Water shall not be permitted to flow over the surface of any concrete in such manner and at such velocity as will injure the surface finish of the concrete. Pumping or other necessary dewatering operations for removing ground water, if required, will be subject to the review of the ENGINEER.
- L. Corrosion Protection: Pipe, conduit, dowels, and other ferrous items required to be embedded in concrete construction shall be so positioned and supported prior to placement of concrete that there will be a minimum of 2-inches clearance between said

items and any part of the concrete reinforcement. Securing such items in position by wiring or welding them to the reinforcement will not be permitted.

- M. Openings for pipes, inserts for pipe hangers and brackets, and the setting of anchors shall, where practicable, be provided for during the placing of concrete.
- N. Anchor bolts shall be accurately set, and shall be maintained in position by templates while being embedded in concrete.
- O. Cleaning: The surfaces of all metalwork to be in contact with concrete shall be thoroughly cleaned of all dirt, grease, loose scale and rust, grout, mortar, and other foreign substances immediately before the concrete is placed.

### 3.02 HANDLING, TRANSPORTING, AND PLACING

- A. General: Placing of concrete shall conform to the applicable requirements of ACI 301 and the requirements of this Section.
- B. The total elapsed time between the addition of water at the batch plant and the completion of the discharge of the P.C.C. from the mixer shall not exceed 90 minutes. All P.C.C. remaining in the mixer after said 90-minute time limit shall be rejected and removed from the project site.
- C. Non-Conforming Work or Materials: Concrete which upon or before placing is found not to conform to the requirements specified herein shall be rejected and immediately removed from the work. Concrete which is not placed in accordance with these Specifications, or which is of inferior quality, shall be removed and replaced by and at the expense of the CONTRACTOR.
- D. Whenever batch trucks or other paving equipment cause rutting of the subgrade or subbase in concrete placement areas, inspectors shall immediately stop construction. Construction shall not be allowed to resume until distorted subgrade or subbase is repaired. Contractors and inspectors should locate by proof rolling, any questionable unstable areas in advance to avoid distortion under equipment. Wet, unstable areas must be dried out or replaced before starting placement of asphalt. Locating wet or soft areas in advance can be accomplished by testing finished subgrade or subbase with a loaded truck. Construction of concrete pavement should not proceed unless testing gives a reasonable indication that distortions will not occur during construction of overlying pavement. When repair, aeration, and recompaction are required to correct damage from Contractor's operation, all necessary repair will be done at Contractor's expense. However, if the Engineer determines that additional depth of aeration and recompaction are needed, that should be paid by change order.
- E. All pull boxes, meter boxes, valve covers and manholes shall be adjusted to proposed finish grade prior to placement of the concrete.
- F. Dowel Placement:
  - 1. Dowel bars shall be centered on the joint within a tolerance of  $\pm 2$  inches in the longitudinal direction directly over the contact joint or sawcut for the transverse weakened plane joints, as shown on the plans. Prior to placement of dowel bars, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer a written procedure to identify the transverse weakened plane joint locations relative to the middle of the dowel bars and the procedure for consolidating concrete around the dowel bars.

2. Dowel bars shall be placed at longitudinal joints as shown on the plans. Dowel bars shall be placed as shown on the plans by using mechanical insertion. When dowel bars are placed by mechanical insertion, the concrete over the dowel bars shall be reworked and refinished so that there is no evidence on the surface of the completed pavement that there has been any insertion performed. When drill and bonding of dowel bars is performed at contact joints, a grout retention ring shall be used.
- G. Concrete shall not be placed until the forms and reinforcement have been inspected, all preparations for the placement have been completed, and the preparations have been checked by the project inspector, all subject to the observation of the engineer or architect.
- H. Casting New Concrete Against Old: An approved epoxy adhesive bonding agent shall be applied to the old surfaces according to the manufacturer's written recommendations. This provision shall not apply to joints where waterstop is installed.
- I. Conveyor Belts and Chutes: All ends of chutes, hopper gates, and all other points of concrete discharge throughout the CONTRACTOR'S conveying, hoisting and placing system shall be so designed and arranged that concrete passing from them will not fall separated into whatever receptacle immediately receives it. Conveyor belts, if used, shall be of a type acceptable to the INSPECTOR. Chutes longer than 50 feet will not be permitted. Minimum slopes of chutes shall be such that concrete of the specified consistency will readily flow in them. If a conveyor belt is used, it shall be wiped clean by a device operated in such a manner that none of the mortar adhering to the belt will be wasted. All conveyor belts and chutes shall be covered. Sufficient illumination shall be provided in the interior of all forms so that the concrete at the places of deposit is visible from the deck or runway.
- J. Placement in Slabs: Concrete placed in sloping slabs shall proceed uniformly from the bottom of the slab to the top, for the full width of the pour. As the work progresses, the concrete shall be vibrated and carefully worked around the slab reinforcement, and the surface of the slab shall be screeded in an up-slope direction.
- K. Temperature of Concrete: The temperature of concrete when it is being placed shall be not more than 90 degrees F nor less than 40 degrees F in moderate weather, and not less than 50 degrees F in weather during which the mean daily temperature drops below 40 degrees F. Concrete ingredients shall not be heated to a temperature higher than that necessary to keep the temperature of the mixed concrete, as placed, from falling below the specified minimum temperature. If concrete is placed when the weather is such that the temperature of the concrete would exceed 90 degrees F, the CONTRACTOR shall employ effective means, such as precooling of aggregates and mixing water using ice or placing at night, as necessary to maintain the temperature of the concrete, as it is placed, below 90 degrees F. The CONTRACTOR shall be entitled to no additional compensation on account of the foregoing requirements.
- L. Cold Weather Placement: Earth foundations shall be free from frost or ice when concrete is placed upon or against them. Fly ash concrete shall not be placed when the air temperature falls below 50 degrees F.
- M. A transverse construction joint shall be constructed, including dowel bars, at the end of each day's work or where concrete placement is interrupted for more than 30 minutes, to coincide with the next contraction joint location. If sufficient concrete has not been mixed to form a slab to match the next contraction joint, when an interruption occurs, the excess concrete shall be removed and disposed of back to the last preceding joint. The cost of removing and disposing of excess concrete shall be at the Contractor's expense. Excess

material shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be disposed of. A metal or wooden bulkhead (header) shall be used to form the joint. The bulkhead shall be designed to accommodate the installation of dowel bars.

N. Broom Finish Type:

1. Surfaces Sloped Less than 6%: Provide a medium salt (medium broom) finish by drawing a soft bristle broom across concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform fine line texture.
2. Surfaces Sloped greater than 6%: Provide a slip resistant (heavy broom finish) by striating surface 1/16 inch to 1/8 inch deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

O. Joints:

1. Joints in concrete flatwork and curbs shall be constructed per the construction documents.

P. Protection: In hot, dry, and windy weather protect concrete from rapid moisture loss before and during finishing operations with an evaporation-control film. Apply according to manufacturer's instructions after screeding and bull floating, but before floating.

3.03 LIGHT STANDARD BASES, FLAGPOLE BASES, POST BASES AND SIMILAR SITE STRUCTURES

- A. Forms: Suitable material and type, size, shape, quality and strength to insure construction as designed, true to line and sufficiently rigid to resist deflection during placing of concrete. Clean forms of all dirt, mortar and foreign matter before use.
- B. Reinforcement: Place accurately and hold in position, using metal chairs, spacers, metal hangers, supporting wires and other devices of sufficient strength to resist crushing under full load. Clean reinforcing steel of mortar, oil, dirt, loose mill scale loose or thick rust and coatings.
- C. Coordinate installation of conduits, cast in place items and other inserts.
- D. Finish: Grind or sack as required as determined by the Architect to produce a smooth, straight, plumb and acceptable finish without burrs or form marks. For horizontal surfaces: provide float finish.
- E. Curing: Cure surfaces utilizing one of the following methods:
  1. Spraying: Spray water over slab areas and maintain wet for 7 days.
  2. Spread polyethylene film over slab areas, lapping edges and sides, minimum 6 inches and sealing with pressure sensitive tape; cover with plywood or otherwise protect film from damage; maintain in place for 7 days.
  3. Apply liquid curing compound at rate of 200 square feet per gallon, using power sprayer equipped with agitator. Do not apply liquid curing compound to surfaces scheduled to receive paving units or finish of any kind.

3.04 TAMPING AND VIBRATING

- A. As concrete is placed in the forms or in excavations, it shall be thoroughly settled and compacted, throughout the entire depth of the layer which is being consolidated, into a

dense, homogeneous mass, filling all corners and angles, thoroughly embedding the reinforcement, eliminating rock pockets, and bringing only a slight excess of water to the exposed surface of concrete during placement. Vibrators shall be high speed power vibrators (8000 to 10,000 rpm) of an immersion type in sufficient number and with (at least one) standby units as required.

- B. Care shall be used in placing concrete around waterstops. The concrete shall be carefully worked by rodding and vibrating to make sure that all air and rock pockets have been eliminated. Where flat-strip type waterstops are placed horizontally, the concrete shall be worked under the waterstops by hand, making sure that all air and rock pockets have been eliminated. Concrete surrounding the waterstops shall be given additional vibration, over and above that used for adjacent concrete placement to assure complete embedment of the waterstops in the concrete.
- C. Concrete in walls shall be internally vibrated and at the same time rammed, stirred, or worked with suitable appliances, tamping bars, shovels, or forked tools until it completely fills the forms or excavations and closes snugly against all surfaces. Subsequent layers of concrete shall not be placed until the layers previously placed have been worked thoroughly as specified. Vibrators shall be provided in sufficient numbers, with standby units as required, to accomplish the results herein specified within 15 minutes after concrete of the prescribed consistency is placed in the forms. The vibrating head shall be kept from contact with the surfaces of the forms. Care shall be taken not to vibrate concrete excessively or to work it in any manner that causes segregation of its constituents.

### 3.05 CURING

- A. Comply with 2019 California Building Code, Title 24, Part 2, Volume 2, Section 1905A.11.
  - 1. Begin final curing procedures immediately following initial curing and before concrete has dried. Continue final curing for at least seven (7) days in accordance with ACI 301 procedures. Avoid rapid drying at end of final curing period.
- B. Curing Methods: Perform curing of concrete by curing as herein specified.
  - 1. Provide moisture-curing by the following methods:
    - a. Keep concrete surface continuously wet by covering with water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Covering concrete surface with specified absorptive cover, thoroughly saturating cover with water and keeping continuously wet. Place absorptive cover to provide coverage of concrete surfaces and edges, with 4 inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  - 2. Provide curing and sealing compound to exposed exterior slabs, walks, and curbs, as follows:
    - a. Apply specified curing and sealing compound to concrete slabs as soon as final finishing operations are complete (within 2 hours). Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power-spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's directions. Re-coat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.



- b. Do not use membrane curing compounds on surfaces which are to be covered with coating material applied directly to concrete, liquid, floor hardener, waterproofing, dampproofing, membrane roofing, flooring (such as ceramic or quarry tile, glue-down carpet), painting, and other coatings and finish materials, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
- C. Concrete slabs and paving shall be properly cured and protected against damage and defacement of nature during construction operations. If weather is hot or surface has dried out, spray surface with fine mist of water starting not later than two hours after final troweling. Surface of finish shall be kept continuously wet for at least ten days. Wetting is considered emergency work and shall be performed on weekends and holidays if necessary.
- D. The CONTRACTOR shall protect all concrete against injury or damage from excessive heat, lack of moisture, overstress, or any other cause until final acceptance by the Owner. Particular care shall be taken to prevent the drying of concrete and to avoid roughening or otherwise damaging the surface. Any concrete found to be damaged, or which may have been originally defective, or which becomes defective at any time prior to the final acceptance of the completed work, or which departs from the established line or grade, or which, for any other reason, does not conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, shall be satisfactorily repaired or removed and replaced with acceptable concrete at the CONTRACTOR'S expense. Exclude traffic from concrete paving for at least 7 days after placement.
- E. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete paving not more than 2 days prior to date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

### 3.06 PUMPING OF CONCRETE

- A. General: If the pumped concrete does not produce satisfactory end results, the CONTRACTOR shall discontinue the pumping operation and proceed with the placing of concrete using conventional methods.
- B. Pumping Equipment: The pumping equipment must have 2 cylinders and be designed to operate with one cylinder only in case the other one is not functioning. In lieu of this requirement, the CONTRACTOR may have a standby pump on the site during pumping.
- C. The minimum diameter of the hose (conduits) shall be 4-inches.
- D. Pumping equipment and hoses (conduits) that are not functioning properly, shall be replaced.
- E. Aluminum conduits for conveying the concrete will not be permitted.
- F. Proportioning: Minimum compressive strength, cement content, and maximum size of aggregates shall be as specified herein.
- G. Gradation of coarse aggregates shall conform to ASTM C 33 and shall be as close to the middle range as possible.
- H. Gradation of fine aggregate shall conform to ASTM C 33, with 15 to 30 percent passing the number 50 screen and 5 to 10 percent passing the number 100 screen. The fineness modulus of sand used shall not be over 3.00.
- I. Water and slump requirements shall conform to the requirements of this Section.

- J. Cement and admixtures shall conform to the requirements of this Section.
- K. Field Control: Concrete samples for slump per ASTM C 143 and test cylinders per ASTM C 31 and C 39.

### 3.07 TREATMENT OF SURFACE DEFECTS

- A. As soon as forms are removed, all exposed surfaces shall be carefully examined and any irregularities shall be immediately rubbed or ground in a satisfactory manner in order to secure a smooth, uniform, and continuous surface. Plastering or coating of surfaces to be smoothed will not be permitted. No repairs shall be made until after inspection by the ENGINEER. In no case will extensive patching of honeycombed concrete be permitted. Concrete containing minor voids, holes, honeycombing, or similar depression defects shall have them repaired as specified herein. Concrete containing extensive voids, holes, honeycombing, or similar depression defects, shall be completely removed and replaced.
  - 1. All repairs and replacements herein specified shall be promptly executed by the CONTRACTOR at its own expense.
- B. Defective surfaces to be repaired shall be cut back from trueline a minimum depth of 1/2-inch over the entire area. Feathered edges will not be permitted. Where chipping or cutting tools are not required in order to deepen the area properly, the surface shall be prepared for bonding by the removal of all laitance or soft material, and not less than 1/32-inch depth of the surface film from all hard portions, by means of an efficient sandblast. After cutting and sandblasting, the surface shall be wetted sufficiently in advance of shooting with shotcrete or with cement mortar so that while the repair material is being applied, the surfaces under repair will remain moist, but not so wet as to overcome the suction upon which a good bond depends. The material used for repair purposes shall consist of a mixture of one sack of cement to 3 cubic feet of sand. For exposed walls, the cement shall contain such a proportion of Atlas white portland cement as is required to make the color of the patch match the color of the surrounding concrete.
- C. Holes left by tie-rod cones shall be reamed so as to leave the surfaces of the holes clean and rough. These holes then shall be repaired in an approved manner with non-shrink grout. Holes left by form-tying devices having a rectangular cross-section, and other imperfections having a depth greater than their least surface dimension, shall not be reamed but shall be repaired in an approved manner with non-shrink grout.
- D. All repairs shall be built up and shaped in such a manner that the completed work will conform to the requirements of this Section, as applicable, using approved methods which will not disturb the bond, cause sagging, or cause horizontal fractures. Surfaces of said repairs shall receive the same kind and amount of curing treatment as required for the concrete in the repaired section.
- E. Prior to filling any structure with water, all cracks that may have developed shall be repaired to the satisfaction of the ENGINEER. This repair method shall be done on the water bearing face of members. Prior to backfilling, faces of members in contact with fill, which are not covered with a waterproofing membrane, shall also have cracks repaired as specified herein.
- F. The finished surface shall be free from humps, sags, blemishes or other irregularities.

### 3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Correction of Mix Design for Failed Concrete Tests: If the compressive cylinder strength test for in place PCC yields test results below the specified 28-day PCC compressive

strength and the Engineer determines a corrective change is necessary, the Contractor shall, at its own expense, make corrective changes in the mix proportions. The Engineer shall approve the changes in the mix proportions or PCC placement procedures, before any additional PCC is placed on the job.

- B. Flood Tests: Before final acceptance, and after concrete has thoroughly cured, all concrete pavement, including swales and curb & gutter, shall be water tested to ensure proper drainage as directed by the Inspector. The Contractor shall provide water for this purpose. The flooding shall be done by water tank truck. Concrete work where water ponds and does not run off in a reasonable amount of time (1-hour), shall be removed to the nearest score or joint line and replaced to provide proper drainage. Full compensation for complying with this requirement shall be considered as included in the Contract Unit Price for cement concrete pavement.

### 3.09 CARE AND REPAIR OF CONCRETE

- A. General: The CONTRACTOR shall protect all concrete against injury or damage from excessive heat, lack of moisture, overstress, or any other cause until final acceptance by the Owner. Particular care shall be taken to prevent the drying of concrete and to avoid roughening or otherwise damaging the surface. Any concrete found to be damaged, or which may have been originally defective, or which becomes defective at any time prior to the final acceptance of the completed work, or which departs from the established line or grade, or which, for any other reason, does not conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, shall be satisfactorily repaired or removed and replaced with acceptable concrete at the CONTRACTOR'S expense.
- B. The contractor shall barricade and protect placed Portland Cement Concrete from all damage, marks, mars and/or graffiti. Any Portland Cement Concrete damaged, defaced, discolored or defective shall be replaced at the contractor's expense.

END OF SECTION 32 13 13